

THROUGH THE KIND GIFT OF

R. D. MEHTA, Esq., C.I.E.

Selections from Avesta and Old Persian

(First Series).

PART 1.

EDITED WITH TRANSLATIONS AND NOTES

BY

IRACH JEHANGIR SORABJI TARAPOREWALA. B.A., PH.D.

Barrister-at-Law,

Professor of Comparative Philology in the University of Calcutta.



CALCUTTA

PUBLISHED BY THE CALCUTTA UNIVERSITY AND PRINTED AT THE
BAPTIST MISSION PRESS.

1922.

TO
LITTLE SRAOSHA.

CONTENTS.

| | <i>Page</i> |
|---|-------------|
| FOREWORD .. | ix |
| LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS | xi |
| I. Haoma Yašt (Yasna IX) .. | 2 |
| II. Sraoša Yašt (Yasna LVII) .. | 51 |
| III. To the Fravašis (Yasna XXVI) | 89 |
| IV. Tandarostī (Yasna LX) .. | 105 |
| V. The Zoroastrian Creed (Yasna XII) | 123 |
| VI. Kəm-nā Mazdā (Vendidād VIII. 20-21) .. | 139 |
| VII. The Three Prayers (Yaθā, Aθəm and Yeϥhē hātām) | 151 |
| VIII. Bayān Yašt (Yasna XIX-XXI) | 163 |
| IX. Airyōmā-iśyō (Yasna LIV) .. | 205 |
| X. The Vara of Yimā (Vendidād II. 21-43) | 215 |

FOREWORD.

When I took over charge of the Chair of Comparative Philology in the University of Calcutta in September 1917, the thought occurred to me that the subject might best be illustrated for our Indian students through the medium of Sanskrit and Avesta. Latin and Greek are out of question in India and so the linguistic group nearest to Sanskrit (viz. the Iranian) was chosen. I set myself to prepare a course of Selections from Avesta and Old Persian and the present book is the outcome of this effort.

My first thanks go to Sir Asutosh Mookerjee. With characteristic insight he grasped my views on the subject and helped me very materially in getting the courses altered to suit the new requirements. For this, and far more for his continued encouragement and for the great interest he has always shown in my work, I give him my heartfelt thanks.

In the second place my thanks are due to my respected co-religionist, Mr. R. D. Mehta, C.I.E., of Calcutta, for very generously offering to pay the cost of printing this volume. He also has all along given me encouragement and support.

In the third place I have to record the debt I owe to my teachers in Avesta: Professor Bartholomae of Heidelberg and Professor Jolly of Würzburg. The former, than whom I found no better teacher, first initiated me into the study of Iranian Languages and the latter has always been my best friend and critic ever since my student days in the University of Würzburg. Nor must I forget here to mention Dr. P. Giles, Master of Emmanuel College, Cambridge, whose lectures on the Comparative Grammar of Indo-European Languages first taught me what the Science of Language means, and Professor E. J. Rapson of Cambridge, who was the first to teach me the critical methods of modern Western scholarship and has ever since been my revered guide and friend. I must also mention here Professor Geldner of Marburg, with whom I stayed but one day, but whose inspiring words have guided me through all my subsequent studies.

Next in order come my friends and critics who have always helped me greatly during the progress of this work. Foremost among them is Shams-ul Ulma Dr. J. J. Modi of Bombay, who has been always ready with his friendly but incisive criticism. He has certainly not spared me in any sense and I acknowledge it here with deep gratitude. My next valued critic has been Pandit Vidhusēkhara Bhattachārya of the Viśva-bhārati at Śantiniketan. In both these erudite scholars I found, besides mere criticism, true friendship and a constant desire to help.

Last of all I owe to my pupils more than I can express in words. Their presence in my lectures, their frank questions and the interest they have always shown in their work have constituted the best reward for my work and have always led me on to greater effort.

The delay caused in the publishing of this work has been due to the great difficulty of composing a work of this kind, which needed types of such varied languages. To begin with, an entirely new set of types had to be cast. For all this work (the first of its kind undertaken in India, I believe), the Baptist Mission Press, Calcutta, deserves the greatest credit. It has been decided now to publish ten out of the eighteen "Selections" of the *First Series* as "Part 1". The rest will come out, let me hope, within a short interval from now. This will form Part 2, and it will also include an essay entitled "An Introduction to Iranian Studies," referred to in the footnotes as "Introduction."

One word more. I have my own notions of life and other deeper questions which are embraced under the term "religion." These form the "coloured glasses" through which I view my own Scriptures. I could not have avoided my own ideals even though I had desired to do so; but I must claim that I have tried to be as fair in my interpretations as was possible for me to be. I do not think I have in any case twisted either the sense of a word or the grammar to suit my special notions. There is one thing, however, of which I am absolutely convinced and it is that all religions have their roots in Wisdom, not in Ignorance.

I. J. S. TARAPOREWALA.

THE UNIVERSITY,
CALCUTTA,

1st May, 1922.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

| | |
|--|---|
| abl(ative) | Dar(mesteter, Prof. J.), <i>Z(end) A(vesta)</i> |
| acc(usa ^{ti} ve) | dat(ive) |
| adj(ective, -ectival, -ectivally) | dec(ension) |
| adv(erb, -erbial, -erbially) | def(inite) art(icle) |
| Af(ghan) | dem(onstrative) |
| <i>Ātrīn(gān)</i> | den(ominative) |
| <i>Ahu(navaii Gāēā)</i> | des(iderative) |
| A(n)g(lō)S(axon) | Dhalla (Dr. M. N.). <i>Z(oroastrian)</i> |
| aor(ist) | <i>Theo(logy)</i> |
| āp(αξ λεγόμενον) | <i>Din(kart)</i> |
| Arm(enian) | du(al) |
| Ar(yan) | enc(litic) |
| <i>A(tharva) V(eda)</i> | <i>Ency(clopedia) Brit(annica)</i> |
| ātm(anepada) | Eng(lish) |
| Av(esta) | f(eminine) or fem(inine) |
| <i>Av(esta) Pah(lavi and Ancient) Per(sian) Studies</i> , in honour of Dastur Pashotanji Behramji Sanjana) | f(oo)tn(ote) |
| | Fr(ench) |
| Barth(olomae, Prof. Chr.). (<i>Altiranisches</i>) <i>W(örter)b(uch)</i> . | fut(ure) |
| <i>H(and)b(uch der a(lt)ir(anischen Dialekte)</i> | <i>Gāē(āē, -ic)</i> |
| <i>Zum (altiranischen) W(örter)b(uch)</i> | G(āēic) A(vesta) |
| Beh(istun Inscription) [The Roman figure is the column and the Arabic figure the line] | Geld(ner Prof. Karl) |
| ben(edictive) | gen(itive) |
| <i>B(hagavad-)g(ītā)</i> | Ger(man) |
| <i>Brāh(manās)</i> | Giles (Dr. Peter), (<i>Manual of Comparative Phil(ology)</i>) |
| Browne (Prof. E. G.), <i>Lit(erary) His(tory of Persia)</i> | gloss(ary) |
| <i>Bun(dahishn)</i> | Goth(ic) |
| caus(al) | Gr(ee)k |
| cl(ass) | Grass(mann, Hermann), <i>W(örter)b(uch zum Rigveda)</i> |
| com(parative) | Guj(arati) [P(arsi) Guj(arati)] |
| comp(ound) | <i>Hāē(ox) Nask)</i> |
| conj(ugation) | Har(lez, C. de), <i>Man(uel de la Langue de l')Av(esta)</i> |
| conj(unction) | Haug (Martin), (<i>Essays on the Religion of the Parsis</i>) |
| <i>Col(lected) S(ane)k(ri)t (Writings of the Parsis)</i> | imp(erative) |

- imp(er)f(ect)
 indef(inite)
 ind(icative)
 l(ndo)-E(uropean)
 inf(initive)
 insc(ription)
 ins(trumental)
 inten(sive)
 inter(rogative)
 (An) *Introduction (to Iranian Studies)*
 [to be included in Part 2]
- Jack(son, Prof. A. V. W.), *A(vesta)*
G(rammar)
A(vesta) R(eader)
Per(sia, Past and Present)
Z(oroaster)
J(ournal of the) A(merican) O(riental)
S(ociety)
- Kan(ga, Kavasji Edalji), (*Avesta*) *Dic-*
tionary)
A(vesta) G(rammar)
G(āthā) b(ā) M(āenī)
Ij(ashne tathā) Vis(parad)
Kh(ordeh) A(vesta) b(ā) M(āenī)
Ven(dūdād)
 Kurd(ish)
- Lat(in)
 lit(eral, -erally).
 Lith(uanian)
 loc(ative)
- M(ahā)bh(ūrata)*
 m(asculine) or mas(culine)
 Mills (Rev. L. H.), (*The Five Zoroastrian*)
G(āthās)
 Modi (Dr. J. J.), (*A Dict(ionary of Aves-*
tic Proper Names)
 M(ou)lt(on, Rev. J. H.), *E(arly) R(eli-*
gious) P(oetry of Persia)
E(arly)Z(oroastrianism)
- Nair(yosang Dhaval, Dastur)
 neg(ative)
 n(euter) or neu(ter)
Nir(angistān)
- nom(inative)
Ny(āish) [The members are as in Dar-
 mesteter's translation]
- obj(ect, -ective)
 O(ld) Bul(garian)
 O(ld) H(igh) G(erman)
 O(ld) Per(sian)
 opt(ative)
 ori(gin, -ginal, -ginally)
 Oss(etie)
- Pah(lavi)
 par(asmaipada)
 pass(ive)
 p(ast) p(ar)t(icip)le)
 Paz(and)
 p(er)f(ect)
 per(son)
 Pers(ian) or Per(sian)
 p(lu)p(er)f(ect)
 plu(ral)
 Prak(rit)
 prep(osition)
 pres(ent)
 pri(mary)-suf(fix)
 pron(oun, -ominal)
 Pun(egar, Khodabux Edalji), (An unpub-
 lished MS. translation of the *Gāthās*)
Pur(sishnīhā)
- Raghu(varṣa)*
 ref(lexive)
 Reich(elt, Dr. Hans), (*Awestisches Ele-*
mentarbuch)
A(vesta) R(eader)
 rel(ative)
R(ig) V(eda)
 Russ(ian)
- S(acred) B(ooks of the) E(ast Series)
 S(ans)k(ri)t
 Sec(ondary)-suf(fix)
Sele(ctions from Avesta and Old Persian),
 (by I. J. S. Taraporewala) [Part I is
 the *First Series* (i-xviii) and Part II is
 the *Second Series* (xix-xxvii)]
Shāh(nāmah) of Firdausi

Shakes(peare)

s(in)g(ular)

Spæn(tomaiti Gāṇā)

Sp(iegel, Friederich)

subj(ect)

sub(junctive)

sup(erlative)

tad(dhita)

Taitt(īrīya) Brāh(maṇa)

trans(lation, -lates)

Ukt(avaiti Gāṇā)

Vah(iśtōṣṭi Gāṇā)

v(aries) l(ectionis)

var(iant)

Ved(ic)

Ven(dīdād)

Vis(pared)

voc(ative)

Vahu(χṣaṇra Gāṇā)

Whit(ney, W. D.), (*Sanskrit Grammar*)

Yas(na)

Y(aś)t [The numbers are as in Darmes-
teter's translation]

Y(ounger) A(vesta)

Z(roaster, -croastrian)

The declensional forms of nouns, etc., are generally indicated by two figures, the first denoting the case and the second the number. (The cases are in the following order: 1. nom., 2. acc., 3. ins., 4. dat., 5. abl., 6. gen., 7. loc., and 8. voc.)

Similarly for verbal forms the first figure indicates the person and the second the number.

Other abbreviations not in this list are self-evident.

I.

NOTE.

The text used here is that of Geldner. But there are a few variations I have ventured to make. I indicate below the chief points to be observed in the text as printed here.

1. Wherever I have made any notable change in a word, I have indicated it in a footnote, and in most cases the reading I have adopted is also mentioned by Geld. in his v.l.

2. In metrical passages I have followed Geldner's divisions as far as possible, and I have like him indicated defective lines or *pādas* by +. It will be noted that the putting of this + is not the same as in Geldner's text. I have tried to follow my own ear in this respect as far as I have understood the theory of Avesta metre.

3. Words which seem to be in excess of metrical requirements I have enclosed within brackets (). Here too I have followed my own ear rather than copy Geld. entirely.

4. Occasionally I have tried to scan rhythmically (*not* strictly metrically) * passages which Geld. prints in prose. Such passages I have put down continuous as in Geld., but have indicated the divisions by upright lines |. I have occasionally used brackets here too to indicate what seem to me extra words. I have indicated such passages by putting § at the beginning.

5. In some places I have ventured to suggest other readings and they are discussed in the notes in the proper places.

6. I have made full use of European punctuation and other symbols.

As regards the translation I have tried to be literal as far as possible. Compound words and single words of Av. translated by a phrase in Eng. have been indicated by joining up the parts by means of hyphens.

* See Appendix to the Introduction.

I.

Haoma Yašt—Yasna IX.

1. hāvanim¹ ā² ratūm³ ā⁴
 Ātrem⁸ pairi-yaoždaθentem⁹
 + ā¹³-dim¹⁴ peresaṭ¹⁵ (Zaraθu-
 štrō)¹⁶: “kō¹⁷, nare¹⁸, ahī¹⁹?
 “astvato²⁴ sraēštem²⁵ dādaresa²⁶,

2. āaṭ¹ mē² aēm³ paityaoχta⁴
 “azem⁸ ahmi⁹, Zaraθuštra¹⁰,
 “ā¹⁴-mām¹⁵ yāsaṇuha¹⁶, Spitama¹⁷,
 “aoi²² mām²³ staomaine²⁴ stūldi²⁵,

3. + āaṭ¹ aoχta² Zaraθuštrō³: (nē-
 mo⁴ Haomāi⁵!)
 “kase⁶-θwām⁷ paoiryō⁸, Haoma⁹,
 mašyō¹⁰
 “kā¹⁴ ahmāi¹⁵ ašiš¹⁶ erenāvi¹⁷?

4. āat¹ mē² aēm³ paityaoχta⁴
 “Vīvaṇhā⁵ mām⁹ paoiryō¹⁰ mašyo¹¹
 “hā¹⁵ ahmāi¹⁶ ašiš¹⁷ erenāvi¹⁸,
 “yat²³ hē²⁴ puθrō²⁵ us-zayata²⁶,
 “χ^varenaṇuhastemō³¹ zātanām³²,
 “yat³⁵ kerenaot³⁶ aiñhe³⁷ χṣaθrāda³⁸
 “aṇhaošemne⁴² āpa⁴³-urvaire⁴⁴;

5. “Yimahe¹ χṣaθre² aurvahe³
 “nōiṭ⁹ zaurva¹⁰ āñha¹¹, nōiṭ¹² me-
 reθyus¹³,
 “pāncadasa¹⁸ fracarōiθe¹⁹
 “yavata²⁵ χṣayoiṭ²⁸ hwāθwō²⁷

Haomō⁵ upāiṭ⁴ Zaraθuštrēm⁷,
 + gaθās¹⁰-ca¹¹ srāvayan̄tem¹².

yim²⁰ azem²¹ vispahe²³ aṇhēus²³
 + χ^vahe²⁷ gayehe²⁸ χ^vanvatō²⁹
 (amešahe³⁰).”

Haomō⁵ aša^va⁶ dūraošō⁷:

Haomō¹¹ ašava¹² dūraošō¹³.

frā¹⁸-mām¹⁹ hunvaṇuha²⁰ χ^vare-
 tōe²¹,

+ yaθa²⁶ mā²⁷ (aparaciṭ)²⁸ Sao-
 šyantō²⁹ stavān³⁰.”

astvaiθyāi¹¹ hunūta¹² gaēθyāi¹³?
 ciṭ¹⁸ ahmāi¹⁹ jasaṭ²⁰ āyaptēm²¹?”

Haomō⁵ ašava⁶ dūraošō⁷:

astvaiθyāi¹² hunūta¹³ gaēθyāi¹⁴;
 taṭ¹⁹ ahmāi²⁰ jasaṭ²¹ āyaptēm²²:
 yō²⁷ Yimō²⁸ Xšaētō²⁹, hwāθwō³⁰,
 hvare-daresō³³ mašyānām³⁴;
 amaršenta³⁹ pasu⁴⁰-vīra⁴¹,
 χ^vairyān⁴⁵ χ^vareθem⁴⁶ ajaya-
 mnem⁴⁷.

nōiṭ⁴ aotem⁵ āñha⁶ nōiṭ⁷ gare-
 mem⁸,

nōiṭ¹⁴ araskō¹⁵ daēvō¹⁶-dātō¹⁷:

+ pita²⁰-puθras²¹-ca²² raoḍaōšva²³
 (katarasoṭ²⁴)

Yimō²⁸ Vīvaṇuhātō²⁹ puθrō³⁰.”

I.

Haoma Yašt—Yasna IX.

1. At², + the hour³ (of) early-morning¹ Haoma⁵ came-up⁶ to Zaraθuštra⁷, (who was), preparing-for-worship⁹ the fire⁸ and¹¹ (was) chanting¹² the Gāθās¹⁰. Unto¹³ him¹⁴ asked¹⁵ Zaraθuštra¹⁶: “Who¹⁷, O Hero¹⁸, art thou¹⁹, whom²⁰ I²¹ see²⁸ the noblest²⁵ of all²² material²⁴ creation²³, shining²⁹ with (thine) own²⁷, eternal³⁰ life²⁹?”

2. Thereupon¹ tiffs³ Haoma⁵, the righteous⁶, of-far-spreading-radiance⁷, replied⁴ unto me²: “I⁸ am⁹, O Zaraθuštra¹⁰, Haoma¹¹, the righteous¹², of far-spreading-radiance¹³. Fix-(thy)-desires-earnestly¹⁴, ¹⁶ upon me¹⁵, O Spitama¹¹; worship¹³, ²⁰ me¹⁹ (in order) to enjoy²¹ (of-me); hymn²², ²⁵ me²³ in hymn(s)-of-praise²⁴, as²⁸ the other²⁸ Saosyants²⁹ have (in the past) praised³⁰ me²⁷.”

3. Thereupon¹ said² Zaraθuštra³: “Salutation⁴ unto Haoma⁵! Which⁶ mortal¹⁰, O Haoma⁹, (was) the first⁸ (who) worshipped¹² thee⁷ for (the sake of) the material¹¹ world¹³? What¹⁴ blessing¹⁶ unto him¹⁵ was granted¹⁷? What¹⁸ profit²¹ to him¹⁹ accrued²⁰?”

4. Thereupon¹ this³ Haoma⁵, the righteous⁶, of-far-spreading-radiance⁷, replied⁴ unto me²: “Vivaphvat⁸ (was) the first¹⁰ mortal¹¹ (who) worshipped¹³ me⁹ for (the sake of) the material¹² world¹⁴. This¹⁵ blessing¹⁷ unto him¹⁶ was granted¹⁸, this¹⁹ profit²² to him²⁰ accrued²¹: namely²³ to him²⁴ a son²⁵ was born²⁶, who²⁷ (was) Yima²⁸ the King²⁹, the magnificent³⁰, the most-resplendent³¹ of (all) created-beings³², (who shone forth) among mortals³⁴ like-unto-the-sun-in-appearance³³. Who³⁵ made³⁶ during his³⁷ rule³⁸ (both) animals⁴⁰ (and) human-beings⁴¹ undying³⁹, (and) waters⁴³ (and) vegetation⁴⁴ ever-fresh⁴²; (there was) inexhaustible⁴⁷ food⁴⁶ for feeding⁴⁵ (his subjects).

5. “During the rule² of the illustrious³ Yima¹ (there) was⁶ neither⁴ (excessive) cold⁵ nor⁷ (excessive) heat⁸, neither⁹ was¹¹ (there) old-age¹⁰ nor¹² death¹³, nor¹⁴ (was there) envy¹⁵ created¹⁷ of-the-Daēva¹⁶. Father²⁰ and²² son²¹ moved-about¹⁹ each²⁴ (seeming only) fifteen¹⁸ in appearance²³ as long as²⁵ Yima²⁸ the magnificent²⁷, the son³⁰ of Vivaphvat²⁹ reigned²⁶.”

6. “kase¹-θwām² bityō³, Haoma⁴,
mašyō⁵

“kā⁹ ahmāi¹⁰ ašiš¹¹ erenāvi¹² ?

7. āat¹ mē² aēm³ paityaoχta⁴

“Āōwyō³ mām⁹ bityō¹⁰ mašyō¹¹

“hā¹⁵ ahmāi¹⁶ ašiš¹⁷ erenāvi¹⁸

“yat²³ hē²⁴ puθrō²⁵ us-zayata²⁶

8. “yo¹ janat² Añim³ Dahākem⁴

“χēvas⁷-ašim⁸, hazaṇrā⁹-yao-
χētīm¹⁰,

“ayem¹⁵ gaēθāvyo¹⁶, drvaṇtem¹⁷.

“yām¹⁵ aš¹⁹-aojastēmām²⁰ dru-
jēm²¹

“aoi²⁶ yām²⁷ astvaitīm²⁸ gaēθēm²⁹

9. “kase¹-θwām² θrityō³, Haoma⁴,
mašyō⁵

“kā⁹ ahmāi¹⁰ ašiš¹¹ erenāvi¹² ?

10. āat¹ mē² aēm³ paityaoχta⁴

“+θritō³ (Sāmanām⁹ sevištō¹⁰) θri-
tyō¹¹ mām¹² mašyō¹³

“hā¹⁷ ahmāi¹⁸ ašiš¹⁹ erenāvi²⁰,

“yat²⁵ hē²⁶ puθra²⁷ us-zayōiθe²⁸

“tkaēšō³² anyō³³ dātō-rāzō³⁴,

“yava³⁹, gaēsuš⁴⁰, gaḍavarō⁴¹.

11. “yō¹ janat² ašim³ srvarem⁴,

“yim¹⁰ višavaṇtem¹¹, zairitem¹²,

“ārštyō¹⁷-bareza¹⁸ zairitem¹⁹ :

“ayanha²³ pitūm²⁴ pacata²⁵

“tafsat²⁹-ca³⁰ hō³¹ mairyō³²,
χ^visat³³-ca³⁴ ;

“yaēšyāntīm³⁹ āpem³⁹ parāṇhāt⁴⁰ ;

“naire⁴⁴-manā⁴⁵ Keresāspō⁴⁶.”

astvaiθyāi⁶ hunūta⁷ gaēθyāi⁸ ?

ciṭ¹³ ahmāi¹⁴ jasat¹⁵ āyaptēm¹⁶ ?”

Haomō⁵ ašava⁶ dūraošō⁷ :

astvaiθyāi¹² hunūta¹³ gaēθyāi¹⁴ ;

taṭ¹⁹ ahmāi²⁰ jasat²¹ āyaptēm²² :

vīsō²⁷ sūrayā²⁸ θraētaonō²⁹.

θrizafnem⁶, θrikamereðem⁶,

aš¹¹-aojaṇhem¹², daēvim¹³ dru-
jeⁿ¹⁴,

fraca²² kerentat²³ Angro²⁴-Mai-
nyuš²⁵

mahrkai³⁰ Ašahe³¹ gaēθanām³².”

astvaiθyāi⁶ hunūta⁷ gaēθyāi⁸ ?

ciṭ¹³ ahmāi¹⁴ jasat¹⁵ āyaptēm¹⁶ ?”

Haomō⁵ ašava⁶ dūraošō⁷ :

astvaiθyāi¹⁴ hunūta¹⁵ gaēθyāi¹⁶,

taṭ²¹ ahmāi²² jasat²³ āyaptēm²⁴ :

Urvaxšayō²⁹ Keresāspas³⁰-ca³¹ ;

āat³⁶ anyō³⁶ uparō³⁷-kairyō³⁸,

yim⁶ aspō⁶-gare⁷, nere⁸-ga-
rēm⁹,

yim¹³ upairi¹⁴ viš¹⁵ araodaṭ¹⁶

yim²⁰ upairi²¹ Keresāspō²²

ā²⁶ rapiθwinem²⁷ zrvānem²⁸ ;

frāš³⁶ ayanhō³⁶ frasparat³⁷,

parāš⁴¹ taršto⁴² apatacat⁴³

6. (Zaraθuštra asked:) “Which¹ mortal⁵, O Haoma⁴, (was) the second³ (who) worshipped⁷ thee² for (the sake of) the material⁸ world⁸? What⁹ blessing¹¹ unto him¹⁰ was granted¹²? What¹³ profit¹⁶ to him¹⁴ accrued¹⁵? ”

7. Thereupon¹ this³ Haoma⁵, the righteous⁶, of-far-spreading-radiance⁷, replied⁴ unto me²: “Āθwya⁸ (was) the second¹⁰ mortal¹¹ (who) worshipped¹³ me⁹ for (the sake of) the material¹² world¹⁴. This¹⁵ blessing¹⁷ unto him¹⁶ was granted¹⁸, this¹⁹ profit²² to him²⁰ accrued²¹: namely²³ unto him²⁴ a son²⁵ was born²⁶, Oraētaonā²⁹ of the valiant²⁸ race²⁷.

8. “Who¹ slew² the dragon³ Dahāka⁴, three-jawed⁵, three-skulled⁶, six⁷-orbed⁸, (and) of-a-thousand⁹ wiles¹⁰, the very¹¹ strong¹² devilish¹³ Druj¹⁴, (who was) evil¹⁵ unto the living¹⁶ (-creatures and) unbelieving¹⁷; whom¹⁸ Aprō²⁴ Mainyu²⁵ hewed²³ out²² (as) by-far¹⁹ the strongest²⁰ Druj²¹ against²⁶ this²⁷ material²⁸ world²⁹, for the destruction³⁰ of the creations³² of Aša³¹. ”

9. (Zaraθuštra asked:) “Which¹ mortal⁵, O Haoma⁴, (was) the third³, (who) worshipped⁷ thee² for (the sake of) the material⁸ world⁸? What⁹ blessing¹¹ unto him¹⁰ was granted¹²? What¹³ profit¹⁶ to him¹⁴ accrued¹⁵? ”

10. Thereupon¹ this³ Haoma⁵ the righteous⁶, of-far-spreading-radiance⁷, replied⁴ unto me²: “Orita⁸, the most powerful¹⁰ of the Sāma⁹ (family was) the third¹¹ mortal¹³ (who) worshipped¹⁵ me¹² for (the sake of) the material¹⁴ world¹⁶. This¹⁷ blessing¹⁹ unto him¹⁸ was granted²⁰, this²¹ profit²⁴ to him²² accrued²³: namely²⁵, to him²⁶ were born²⁸ two sons²⁷, Urvaxšaya²⁹ and³¹ Kərəsāspa³⁰; the one³³ a Teacher³² (and) Lawgiver³⁴, and³⁵ the other³⁶ a supremely³⁷-energetic³⁸, youthful³⁹, curly-haired⁴⁰ mace-wielder⁴¹. *

11. “Who¹ † slew² the horned⁴ dragon³, who⁵ (was) horse⁶-devouring⁷ (and) man⁸-devouring⁹, who¹⁰ (was) poisonous¹¹ (and) green¹², (and) upon¹⁴ whom¹³ ‡ the poison¹⁵ rose¹⁶ green¹⁹ to the-height¹⁸-of-a-spear¹⁷; upon²¹ whom²⁰ Kərəsāspa²² cooked²⁵ (his) food²⁴ in an iron²³ (pot) || at²⁶ the time²⁸ (of) midday²⁷; and³⁰ that³¹ serpent³² grew-hot²⁹ and³⁴ began-to-sweat³³, (and) forth³⁵ from (under) the iron³⁶ (pot) sprang away³⁷, (and) upset⁴⁰ the boiling³⁹ water³⁹: startled⁴², Kərəsāspa⁴⁵, (even through) of-manly⁴⁴-heart⁴⁵, fled away⁴³ in-the-opposite-direction⁴¹. ¶ ”

* i.e. warrior.

† Kərə-āspa.

‡ i.e. all over its body.

|| K. apparently mistook the sleeping monster for a green hillock.

¶ But he came back after he had recovered from his surprise and ultimately slew the monster (Yt. XIX. 41-4).

12. "kase¹-θwām² tūiryō³, Hao-
ma⁴ mašyō⁵

"kū⁶ ahmāi¹⁰ ašiš¹¹ erenāvi¹² ?

13. āat¹ mē² aēm³ paityaoχta⁴

"Pouruṣaspō⁵ mām⁹ tūiryō¹⁰
mašyō¹¹

"hā¹⁵ ahmāi¹⁶ ašiš¹⁷ erenāvi¹⁸,

"yat²³ hō²⁴ tūm²⁵ us-zayaṇha²⁶,

"nmānaha³⁰ Pouruṣaspahe³¹,

14. "srūtō¹ Airyene² Vaējahe³

"Ahunem⁷-Vairim⁸ frasrāvayō⁹,

"+(aparem)¹² χraoždyehya¹³ fras-
rūti¹⁴.

15. "tūm¹ zomar-gūzo² * ākere-
navō³

"yōi⁷ para⁸ ahmāt⁹ virō¹⁰-raoḡa¹¹

"yō¹⁵ aojištō¹⁷, yō¹⁸ tanōišō¹⁹,

"yō²⁴ aš-verēθrajāstemō²⁶

16. āat¹ aoχta² Zaraθuštrō³,

"hūdātō⁸ Haomō⁹, arsdātō¹⁰,

"hukerefš¹⁴, hvareš¹⁵, vereθrajā¹⁶,

"yaθa²⁰ χ^varente²¹ vahištō²²

17. nī¹-tē², zāire³, maḡem⁴
mruyē⁵,

nī¹⁰ dasvare¹¹, nī¹² baēšazem¹³,

nī¹⁸ aojō¹⁹ vīspō²⁰-tanūm²¹,

nī²⁶ tat²⁷ yaθa²⁸ gaēθāhva²⁹

θbaēšō³²-taurvā³³ drujem³⁴-vanō³⁵.

astvaiθyāi⁶ hunūta⁷ gaēθyāi⁸ ?

ciṭ¹³ ahmāi¹⁴ jasaṭ¹⁵ āya-
ptem¹⁶ ? "

Haomō⁵ ašava⁶ dūraoḡō¹ :

astvaiθyāi¹² hunūta¹³ gaēθyāi¹⁴.

taṭ¹⁹ ahmāi²⁰ jasaṭ²¹ āyaptem²² :

tūm²⁷, erezvō²⁸ Zaraθuštra²⁹,

vidaēvō³², Ahura³³-tkaēšō³⁴.

tūm⁴ paōiryō⁶, Zaraθuštra⁸,

vībereθwanṭem¹⁰ āχtūirim¹¹,

vīspe⁴ daēva⁵, Zaraθuštra⁸,

+ (a)patayen¹² paiti¹³ āya¹⁴
zemā¹⁵;

yō²⁰ θwaχšistō²¹, yō²² āsištō²³,

abavat²⁸ Mainivā²⁷ dāmān²³."

"nemō⁴ Haomāi⁵ ! vajhuš⁶
Haomō⁷,

vajhuš¹¹-datō¹² † baēšazyō¹³

zairi¹⁷-gaonō¹⁸ nāmyāsuš¹⁹;

urunaē²³-ca²⁴ pāθmainyō-
temō²⁵."

nī⁶ amem⁷, nī⁹ vereθraγnem⁹,

nī¹⁴ fradaθem¹⁵, nī¹⁶ varedaθem¹⁷.

nī²² mastīm²³ vīspō²⁴-paēsaγ-
hem²⁵;

vasō-χsaθrō³⁰ fracarāne³¹

* Geld, reads -gūro but I have chosen the reading given by Kan, Reich, and others.

† I have made this a compound.

12. (Zaraθuštra asked :) “Which¹ mortal⁵, O Haoma⁴, (was) the fourth³ (who) worshipped⁷ thee² for (the sake of) the material⁶ world⁸? What⁹ blessing¹¹ unto him¹⁰ was granted¹²? What¹³ profit¹⁶ to him¹⁴ accrued¹⁵?”

13. Thereupon¹ this³ Haoma⁶ the righteous⁶, of-far-spreading-radiance⁷, replied⁴ unto me²: “Purušaspa³ (was) the fourth¹⁰ mortal¹¹ (who) worshipped¹³ me⁹ for (the sake of) the material¹² world¹⁴. This¹⁵ blessing¹⁷ unto him¹⁶ was granted¹⁸; this¹⁹ profit²² to him²⁰ accrued²¹: namely²³, to him²⁴ thou²⁵ wast born²⁶, thou²⁷, O righteous²³ Zaraθuštra²⁹, in the house³⁰ of Purušaspa³¹, (thou who art) opposed-to-the-Daēvas³² (and) follower of-the-Law³⁴-of-Ahura³³.

14. “Famed¹ through (all) Airyana² Vaejah³, thou⁴, O Zaraθuštra⁶, (wast) the first⁵, (who) recited-aloud⁹ the Ahuna⁷-Vairya³, with-the-proper-divisions¹⁰ (of metre and syllables), four-times¹¹, (and yet) another¹² (time) with-a-louder¹³ chant¹⁴.

15. “Thou¹, O Zaraθuštra⁶, caused³ all⁴ the Demons⁶ to-hide-under-the-earth², who⁷, before⁸ this⁹ * ran-about¹² upon¹³ this¹⁴ earth¹⁵ in-human-shape¹¹, (thou) who^{16, 15} (art) the strongest¹⁷ (and) bravest¹⁹, who^{20, 22} (art) the most active²¹ (and) the swiftest²², (and) who²⁴ hast become²⁶ in-the-highest-degree-victorious²⁵ among the creatures²³ of the (two) Spirits²⁷.”

16. Thereupon¹ Zaraθuštra³ said²: “Salutation⁴ unto Haoma⁶! Haoma⁷ (is) excellent⁸, well-created⁸ (is) Haoma³, truth-created¹⁰ (also); created-by-excellence¹² (and) health-giver¹³; well-shaped¹⁴, working-for-good¹⁵ (and) victorious¹⁶; golden¹⁷-hued¹⁸ (is he) with-bending-twigs¹⁹; just-as²⁰ (he is) best²² for (the body of) the drinker²¹, (so) also²⁴ (he) best-points-out-the-way²⁵ unto (his) soul²³.”

17. I ask⁵ of thee², O Golden-hued³ for¹ fervour⁴, for⁶ power⁷ (and) for⁹ success⁹ (as well); for¹⁰ health¹¹ (and) for¹² the means-of-gaining-health¹³; for¹⁴ advancement¹⁵ (and) for¹⁶ increase¹⁷; for¹⁸ strength¹⁹ of-(this)-whole²⁰ body²¹, (as well as) for²² wisdom²³ all²⁴-embracing²⁵; —for^{†26} (all) this²⁷, (I ask) so that²³ in (all) lands²⁹ I may move-about³¹ free-at-will³⁰, overcoming³³-opposition³², (and) conquering³⁶-the-unbeliever³⁴.

* Z.'s advent.

† I have translated by “for” the particle *nī*, which, though not quite literally accurate, serves to bring out well the sense of the repetition of the *nī* in the original.

18. ni¹ tat², yaθa³ taurvayeni⁴
 daēvanām⁸ mašyānām⁹-ca¹⁰
 sāθrām¹⁴ kaoyām¹⁵ karafnām¹⁸-ca¹⁷,
 ašemaoyanām²¹-ca²² bizangranām²³,
 haēnyās²⁸-ca²⁹ pereθu³⁰-ainikayās³¹

vīspanām⁵ tbišvatām⁶ tbaēšās⁷
 yāθwām¹¹ pairikanām¹²-ca¹³
 mairyanām¹⁸-ca¹⁹ bizangra-
 nām²⁰,
 vehrkanām²⁴-ca²⁵ caθware²⁶-
 zangranām²⁷,
 davāiθyās³² patāiθyās³³.

19. imem¹ θwām² paoirīm³
 yānem⁴,
 vahištēm⁸ ahūm⁹ ašaonām¹⁰,
 imem¹⁴ θwām¹⁵ bitīm¹⁶ yānem¹⁷,
 drvatātēm²¹ aiñhāsē²²-tanvō²³.
 imem²⁴ θwām²⁵ θritīm²⁶ yānem²⁷,
 dareγō³¹-jitīm³² uštānahe³³.

Haoma⁵, jaiḍyemi⁶, dūraoša⁷:
 raocanhem¹¹ vīspō¹²-χ¹³ āθrem¹⁸.
 Haoma¹⁸, jaiḍyemi¹⁹, dūraoša²⁰:
 Haoma²⁸, jaiḍyemi²⁹, dūraoša³⁰:

20. imem¹ θwām² tūirīm³ yā-
 nem⁴,
 + yaθa⁸ aēšō⁹ (amavās¹⁰) θrāfēdō¹¹
 tbaēšō¹⁵-taurvās¹⁶ drujem¹⁷-vanō¹⁸.
 imem¹⁹ θwām²⁰ puχdem²¹ yānem²²,
 + yaθa²⁶ vereθraja²⁷ vanat²⁸.
 pešanō²⁹
 tbaēšō³³-taurvās³⁴ drujem³⁵-vanō³⁶.

Haoma⁵, jaiḍyemi⁶, dūraoša⁷:
 fraχštāne¹² zemā¹³ paiti¹⁴,
 Haoma²³, jaiḍyemi²⁴, dūraoša²⁵:
 fraχštāne³⁰ zema³¹ paiti³²

21. imem¹ θwām² χštūm³ yānem⁴,
 paurva⁸ tāyūm⁹, paurva¹⁰ gaðem¹¹,
 mā¹⁵-ciš¹⁶ paurvō¹⁷ būiḍyaēta¹³ nō¹⁹

Haoma⁵, jaiḍyemi⁶, dūraoša⁷:
 paurva¹² vehrkem¹³ būiḍyōimai-
 ðe¹⁴:
 vīspe²⁰ paurva²¹ būiḍyōimai-
 ðe²².

22. + Haomō¹ aēibiš² yōi³ aurvañ-
 tō⁴
 zāvare⁸ aojās⁹-ca¹⁰ baχšaiti¹¹.
 Haomō¹² āzīzanāitibiš¹³
 uta¹⁷ ašava¹⁸-frazaiñtim¹⁹.
 Haomō²⁰ taē-ciγ²¹ yōi²² katayō²³
 spānō²⁷ mastīm²⁸-ca²⁹ baχšaiti³⁰.

hita⁵ taχšēnti⁶ arenāum⁷,
 daðaiti¹⁴ χšaētō¹⁵-puθrim¹⁸,
 naskō²⁴-frasāñhō²⁵ āñhente²⁶,

18. (And I ask) for¹ (all) this² so that³ I may overcome⁴ the enmity⁷ of all⁵ (my) enemies⁶,—(both) of Daēvas⁹ and¹⁰ of mortals⁹, of wizards¹¹ and¹³ of witches¹², of tyrants¹⁴ wilfully-blind¹⁶ and¹⁷ wilfully-deaf¹⁶, and¹⁹ of two-legged²⁰ serpents¹⁸, and²² of two-legged²³ distorters-of-the-Truth²¹, and²⁵ of four²⁶-legged²⁷ wolves^{24*}, also²⁹ (that I may overcome) the armies²⁸ (of all such foes) roaring³² (and) rushing-onwards³³ in-a-wide³⁰-battle-array³¹.

19. This¹ (is) the first³ gift⁴, O Haoma⁵ of-far-spreading-radiance⁷, (that) I request⁶ (of) thee²: the best⁸ world⁹ for the righteous¹⁰, bright¹¹ (and) all¹² glorious¹³. This¹⁴ (is) the second¹⁶ gift¹⁷, O Haoma¹⁸ of-far-spreading-radiance²⁰, (that) I request¹⁹ (of) thee¹⁵: health²¹ for this²² body²³ (of mine). This²⁴ (is) the third²⁶ gift²⁷, O Haoma²⁸ of-far-spreading-radiance³⁰, that I request²⁹ (of) thee²⁵: long³¹-continuance³² of (my) vital-force³³.

20. This¹ (is) the fourth³ gift⁴, O Haoma⁵ of-far-spreading-radiance⁷, (that) I request⁶ (of) thee²: that³ I, happy⁹ (and) powerful¹⁰, my-task-accomplished¹¹, may progress¹² through¹⁴ the world¹³ overcoming¹⁶-opposition¹⁵, conquering¹⁸-the-unbeliever¹⁷. This¹⁹ (is) the fifth²¹ gift²², O Haoma²³ of-far-spreading-radiance²⁵, (that) I request²⁴ (of) thee²⁰: that²⁶ I, victorious²⁷ (and) battle²⁹-winning²⁸, may progress³⁰ through³² the world³¹ overcoming³⁴-opposition³³, conquering³⁶-the-unbeliever³⁵.

21. This¹ (is) the sixth³ gift⁴, O Haoma⁵ of-far-spreading-radiance⁷, (that) I request⁶ (of) thee²: may we become aware¹⁴ beforehand⁸ (of) the robber⁹, beforehand¹⁰ (of) the murderer¹¹, (and) beforehand¹² (of) the wolf¹³. Let not¹⁵ any¹⁶ (of our foes) become aware¹⁸ beforehand¹⁷ (of) us¹⁹, (but) may we become aware²² beforehand²¹ (of) all²⁰.

22. Haoma¹ granteth¹¹ strength⁹ and¹⁰ courage⁹ unto those² who³ urge⁶ well-trained⁵ steeds⁴ to victory⁷. Haoma¹² bestoweth¹⁴ on women (who are) bearing¹³ the-birth-of-a-brilliant¹⁶-son¹⁶ (and) a righteous¹⁸ progeny¹⁹ as well¹⁷. Haoma²⁰ granteth³⁰ wisdom²⁷ and²⁹ fervour²⁸ unto all-those²¹ householders²³ who²² are occupied²⁶ in teaching²⁵ the scriptures²⁴.

* By wolves are meant all wild animals harmful to mankind.

23. Haomō¹ tās-ciṭ² yā³ kaininō⁴
haiθim⁸ rādem⁹.ca¹⁰ baχšaiti¹¹,

āṇhaire⁶ daregem⁶ aγrvō⁷
mošu¹² jaiḍyamnō¹³ huχratuš¹⁴.

24. + Haomō¹ tem-ciṭ², yim³ Kere-
sānim⁴,
yō⁵ raosta⁹ χšaθrō¹⁰.kāmya¹¹,
“apām¹⁶ āθrava¹⁷ aiwištis¹⁸
“hō²² vīspe²³ vereiḍinām²⁴ vanāt²⁵,

apa⁶.χšaθrem⁵ nišādayat⁷,
yō¹² davata¹³: “nōit¹⁴ mē¹⁵
vereiḍyē¹⁹ daiṇhava²⁰ carāt²¹;
nī²⁶ vīspe²⁷ vereiḍinām²⁸ janāt²⁹.”

25. ušta¹-tē², yō³ χ⁷ā⁴ acojaṇha⁵
ušta⁹-tē¹⁰, apivatahe¹¹
ušta¹⁴-tē¹⁵, nōit¹⁶ pairi¹⁷-frāsa¹⁸

vasō-χšaθro⁶ ahi⁷, Haoma⁸:
pourvacām¹² erežuχdanām¹³;
erežuχdem¹⁹ peresaha²⁰ vācim²¹.

26. § frā¹-tē² Mazdā³ barat⁴
stehr-paēsaṇhem⁷, Mainyū⁸.
tāstem⁹,

paurvanim⁵ aiwyāṇhanem⁶

āat¹³ aiṇhe¹⁴ ahi¹⁵ aiwyāstō¹⁶
drājaṇhe²⁰ aiwiḍaitis²¹.ca²²

vaṇuhim¹⁰ daēnām¹¹ Māzdaya-
snim¹².

baršnuš¹⁷ paiti¹⁸ gairinām¹⁹
+ gravas²³.ca²⁴ mēθrahe²⁵.

27. Haoma¹, | nmānō²-paite³, vīs⁴-paite⁵, | zantū⁶-paite⁷, daiṇhu⁸-
paite⁹, | spanaṇha¹⁰ vaēdyā¹¹.paite¹²!
amāi¹³.ca¹⁴ θwā¹⁶ verēθraynāi-ca¹⁷ māvōya¹⁸ upa-mruyē¹⁹ tanuyē²⁰
θrimāi²¹.ca²² yat²³ pouru²⁴.bao-
χšnahe²⁵.

28. vī¹-nō² tbišvatām³ tbaēšēbīš⁴,
+ yō⁹ ciš¹⁰.ca¹¹ ahmi¹² nmāne¹³,
yō¹⁴ aiṇhe¹⁵ vīsi¹⁶, yō¹⁷ ahmi¹⁸ zantvō¹⁹, yō²⁰ aiṇhe²¹ daiṇhvo²²,
aēnaṇhā²³ asti²⁴ mašyō²⁵,
pairi³⁰-šē³¹ uši³² verenūiḍi³³

vī⁵ manō⁶ bara⁷ gramentām⁸,
geurvaya²⁶.hē²⁷ pādave²⁸ zāvare²⁹
skendem³⁴ šē³⁵ manō³⁶ kerenū-
iḍi³⁷.

29. mā¹ zbaraθaēibya² fratuyā³,
mā⁷ zām⁸ vaēnōit⁹ ašibya¹⁰,
yō¹⁶ aēnaṇhaiti¹⁸ nō¹⁷ manō¹⁹,

mā⁴ gavaēibya⁵ aiwi-tūtuyā⁶;
mā¹¹ gēm¹² vaēnōit¹³ ašibya¹⁴,
yō¹⁹ aēnaṇhaiti²⁰ nō²¹ kēhrpem²².

23. Haoma¹ doth grant¹¹ unto all-those² who³ have remained⁶ virgins⁴ for-a-long-time⁸ without-husbands⁷, faithful⁹ and¹⁰ loving⁹ (bridegrooms), as-soon-as¹² the Wise-One¹⁴ is-entreated¹³.

24. Him-indeed², who³ (was) Kərəsāni⁴, did Haoma¹ cast down⁷ from⁶- (his)-power⁶, (him) who³ was-swelled-up⁹ in (his) pride¹¹ of sovereignty¹⁰, (and) who¹² (had) bragged¹³ "Never¹⁴ henceforth¹⁶ in my¹⁶ land²⁰ shall (any) priest¹⁷ go-about²¹ for spreading¹⁹ religious-teachings¹⁸; (otherwise) he²² might overcome²⁵ the whole²³ of (my) grandeur²⁴, (he) might strike²⁹ down²⁶ the whole²⁷ of (my) greatness²⁸."

25. Hajl¹ to thee²! O Haoma³, who³ through (thine) own⁴ power⁵ art⁷ thine-own-master⁶. Hail⁹ to thee¹⁰! who dost understand¹¹ the truthful-word¹³ full-spoken¹². Hail¹⁴ to thee¹⁵! never¹⁶ dost thou question²⁰ the word²¹ true-uttered¹⁹ by cross¹⁷-questioning¹⁸.

26. Forth¹ for thee² did the Almighty³ bring⁴ the first⁵ (sacred)-girdle⁶, star-begemmed⁷, woven⁹-by-the-(two)-Spirits⁸—(the girdle which is) the excellent¹⁰ religion¹¹ (of) Mazda-worship¹². Since-then¹³ invested¹⁸ with this¹⁴ (girdle) thou hast been¹⁵ (dwelling) upon¹⁸ the mountain¹⁹ heights¹⁷, through-all-ages²⁰ (entrusted with *) the words²¹ and²² meanings²³ as well²⁴ of the Scriptures²⁵.

27. O Haoma¹! Lord³-of-the-house², Lord⁶-of-the-village⁴, Lord⁷-of-the-province⁶, Lord⁹-of-the-land⁸, (and) through thy holiness¹⁰ Lord¹²-of-(all)-Wisdom¹¹! Thee¹⁵ I invoke¹⁹ for courage¹³ and¹⁴ for victory¹⁶ as-well¹⁷ for my¹⁸ body²⁰, and²² for strength²¹ that²³ bringeth-salvation²⁵-to-many²⁴.

28. Away¹ from the hatred⁴ of the enemies³, (and) away⁵ from (that) of the wicked⁸ do thou remove⁷ our² mind⁶; and¹¹ whosoever¹⁰ the mortal²⁵, who⁹ in this¹² house¹³, who¹⁴ in this¹⁵ village¹⁶, who¹⁷ in this¹⁸ province¹⁹, (or) who²⁰ in this²¹ land²², is²⁴ full-of-evil²³, from (both) his²⁷ nether-limbs²⁹ (do thou) take-away²⁶ strength²⁹, turn³³ his³¹ intellect³² upside-down³⁰, (and) reduce³⁷ to-disorder³⁴ his³⁵ mind³⁶.

29. Give³ not¹ strength³ to (his two) crooked-shanks², nor⁴ power-grant⁴ to (his two) paws⁶: let him not⁷ view⁹ (this) earth⁸ with (his) eyeballs¹⁰, let him not¹¹ behold¹³ the creation¹² with (his) eyeballs¹⁴, who¹⁵ works-harm¹⁶ (to) our¹⁷ mind¹⁹, who¹⁹ does-injury²⁰ (to) our²¹ body²².

⁶ The words in the brackets are a translation of *aiwyāsto* ¹⁶ which bears a double sense. See notes.

30. paíti¹ ažiōiš² zairitahē³,
 kehrpem⁷ nāšēmnāi⁸ ašaone⁹,
 § + paiti¹⁴ gaḍahe¹⁵ vīvarezdavatō¹⁶
 kehrpem¹⁹ nāšēmnāi²⁰ ašaone²¹,

simahē⁴ višōš⁵-vaēpahē⁶,
 Haoma¹⁰ zāire¹¹, vadare¹² jaiši¹³;
 + xrvīšyatō¹⁷ zazarāno¹⁸,
 Haoma²² zāire²³, vadare²⁴ jaiši²⁵;

31. § paiti¹ mašyehē² drvatō³,
 kehrpem⁷ nāšēmnāi⁸ ašaone⁹,
 § + paiti¹⁴ ašēmaoγahē¹⁵, anašao-
 nō¹⁶,

+ sāstarš⁴, aiwi-vōiždayantahē⁵
 kamereḍem⁶,
 Haoma¹⁰ zāire¹¹, vadare¹² jaiši¹³;
 + ahūm¹⁷-merencō¹⁸, aiñhā¹⁹
 daēnayā²⁰

māš²¹ vaca²² daθānahe²³,
 kehrpem²⁷ nāšēmnāi²⁸ ašaone²⁹,

nōit²⁴ šyaonāiš²⁵ apayantahē²⁶,
 Haoma³⁰ zāire³¹, vadare³² jaiši³³.

32. § paiti¹ jahikayāi² yātumai-
 tyāi³

maoḍanō-kairiyāi⁴ upāštā-bai-
 ryāi⁵,

yeñjhe⁶ frafravaiti⁷ manō⁸
 kehrpem¹³ nāšēmnāi¹⁴ ašaone¹⁵,
 + (yaṭ²⁰ hē²¹) kehrpem²² nāšēmnāi²³
 ašaone²⁴,

yaθa⁹ awrem¹⁰ vātō¹¹-šūtem¹²,
 Haoma¹⁶ zāire¹⁷, vadare¹⁸ jaiši¹⁹;
 Haoma²⁵ zāire²⁶, vadare²⁷ jaiši²⁸.

30. Against¹ the serpent², green³, dreadful⁴ (and) poison⁵-breathing⁶, smite¹³, O golden¹¹ Haoma¹⁰, (thy) weapon¹² for protecting³ the body⁷ of the righteous⁹. Against¹⁴ the murderer¹⁵, acting-contrary¹⁶ (to the Law), blood-thirsty¹⁷ (and) fuming¹⁸, smite²⁶, O golden²¹ Haoma²², (thy) weapon²⁴ for protecting²⁰ the body¹⁹ of the righteous²¹.

31. Against¹ the unbelieving³ mortal,² the oppressor⁴ (proudly) raising-up⁵ (his) wicked-head⁶, smite¹³, O golden¹¹ Haoma¹⁰, (thy) weapon¹² for protecting³ the body⁷ of the righteous⁹. Against¹⁴ the unrighteous¹⁶ distorter-of-Truth¹⁵, the soul¹⁷-destroyer¹⁸, (who though) bearing²³-in-mind²¹ the commandment²² of this¹⁹ (true) religion²⁰ (still) never²⁴ applies²⁶ * (it) through (his) actions²⁵, (against him) smite³³, O golden³¹ Haoma³⁰, (thy) weapon³² for protecting²³ the body²⁷ of the righteous²⁹.

32. Against¹ the wicked-woman², full-of-wiles³, voluptuous⁴ (and) lustful⁵, whose⁶ mind³ tosses-about⁷ like⁹ a wind¹¹-driven¹² cloud¹⁰, smite¹⁹, O golden¹⁷ Haoma¹⁸, (thy) weapon¹³ for protecting¹⁴ the body¹³ of the righteous¹⁵; indeed²⁰ (against) her²¹ do thou smite²⁶, O golden²⁶ Haoma²⁵, (thy) weapon²⁷ for protecting²³ the body²² of the righteous²⁴.

* Lit. "not applying."

NOTES.

- (1) Kanga: Khordeh Avestā bā Māeni (5th ed.), pp. 333 ff.
- (2) Reichelt: Avestisches Elementarbuch, pp. 388 ff.
- (3) „ Avesta Reader, pp. 1-3 and 94-100.
- (4) Bartholomae: Handbuch der altiranischen Dialekte, pp. 177 ff.
- (5) Mills, S.B.E., vol. xxxi, pp. 230 ff.

Haoma.—The word is the same as the Skt. *सोम*, and essentially expresses the same idea as in the Veda. But there can be traced in the Av. a twofold conception of the name. In the first place it is the name of a Being or a Divinity occupying a definite place in the Av. Pantheon, and in the second place it is the name of a Plant used in the sacrificial ritual. In our present selection (Yas. IX) the first conception is predominant. The second conception, however, predominates in Yas. X.* There are other places too in Av. where *Haoma* is mentioned, notably in Yas. LVII (19-20)† where the former conception is predominant. In one or two other places there is the mention of perhaps another *Haoma*. Thus in Yas. XI. 7,‡ there is a warrior of that name mentioned, who worshipped *Dravāspa* || and *Aži* and through the help thus secured made captive *Frayrasyāna* (فراسياب—*Afrāsiyāb* of Shah.), the arch-enemy of *Kava-Husrava* (کیخسرو—*Kai-Khushrū* of Shah.). This *Haoma* is also mentioned in Shah., but it is probable that he is identical with the *Haoma* of our present piece. There is a fourth *Haoma* mentioned in the Av. in Yt. XIII. 116 but beyond his mere name as a holy man there is no further detail given.¶

The Divinity *Haoma* is mentioned in close connection with *Haoma* the plant. In fact it would not be too far wrong to say that he was responsible for introducing the *Haoma* cult among the Aryans, and it is very likely that the plant used at the sacrificial ritual derived its name from him. He is specially distinguished by his epithets *dūraoša* (of far spreading radiance) and is also called *frāšmi* (the Renovator). In another place he is called *χσαθρυα* (क्षत्रिय)—the King; which reminds one of the Ved. *सोमो राजा*. It is notable also that though the majority of the epithets used for *Haoma* the Divine Being are such as can be only applied to the Plant by a stretch of imagination,** still there are two at least used in Yas. IX. 16 (*zairigaonō* and *nāmyāsuš*) and one in Yas. LVII. 19 (*zairi-dōiθrō*) which can only apply to the Plant. But it may be noticed by referring to the text that in the first case both the words could be left out without any injury to the whole, and in the second case the epithet is distinctly disturbing the metre and is palpably a later insertion. In course of time we do find that the plant is coming more and more to the front and the person who introduced it is getting forgotten. It were well if the upholders of the “Personification-theory” would bear this fact constantly in mind.

* Sel. XIX, Part II. It may be here noted that the *Haoma* Yašt as used in Z. ritual is made up of both the Yasnas IX and X. † Sel. II, below. ‡ Sel. XX, Part II.

¶ See Yt. IX. 18. (Sel. XXII, Part II).

¶ Modi, Dict.

** For a fuller discussion of this point see Introduction.

1. *hāvanīm*—2/1 adj. Note the -i when in Skt. we get -i. This is the rule in Av. for the 2/1 of nouns in -i and -u. "Morning" lit., "the time of the Haoma Sacrifice," *अवनिम्*. From *√hu*—*हृ*. The day among the Zoroastrians is divided into five periods or *gāhs* (in Av. *asnya*—*अस्य*) each having a special prayer appropriate to it, and each being associated with certain Powers. These are, beginning with midnight:

(i) *uṣahina*—*√uṣ*, to shine (cf. *उषस्*)—from midnight till dawn; associated with *Barajya* (Increaser of corn) and *Nmānya* (Lord of the house).

(ii) *hāvani*—*√hu*—(*हृ*)—from dawn to midday—associated with *Sāvahī* (Increaser of Prosperity) and *Visya* (Lord of the village).

(iii) *rapithwāna*—from *ayara*, day and *piθwa* middle, (cf. Eng. *pith*),—from midday to 3 P.M. In the last five months of the Z. year this period too is called *hāvani*, sometimes also "the second *hāvani*." This is associated with *Frādat-fōu* (Increaser of cattle) and *Zarātuma* (Lord of the province).

(iv) *uzayeirina*—origin doubtful—from 3 P.M. to sunset; associated with *Frādat-vira* (Increaser of mankind) and *Dax̌yumat* (Lord of the country).

(v) *aiwisrūθrēma*—*aiwi* (*अभि*) and *√sru*, (*सृ*)—from sunset to midnight; associated with *Frādat-huṣyāiti* (Increaser of all good creation) and *Zarathuštrōtama* (lit., the holiest *Zarathuštra*, i.e. the Supreme Head of Religion).

ā—*अ* at, upon, during.

ratūm—2/1 m. Note -ū. Time, *अतु*. There is another word *ratu* which means a leader (almost always in the spiritual sense). Kan. thinks that both these have come from *√ar*, *अर*, to go. (Dict. pp. 439f.).

Haomō—1/1 m. *होमः*. The *visarga* if preceded by *a* is represented in Av. combined with the preceding *a* as *o*. The name is used partly for the *Haoma* plant and sometimes for the *Yazata* (or *देवता*) presiding over the *Haoma* sacrifice. See Introductory note.

upāit—3/1 impf. *√i* (*इ*) with *upa*, (*उप*)—came up to, *उपैत्*

Zarathuštrēm—2/1 m. The name of the Prophet of Irān has been variously explained by Western scholars from *zaraḥa* (*√zar*—*जर*) old and *uštra*, (*उष्ट्र*) camel or from *zaraḥa* (*हरित*) tawny and *uštra*, i.e. either "the keeper of old camels" or "the keeper of tawny camels." Parsi writers rather would like to have the word mean "he who has the golden radiance" * (*zaraḥa*—*हरित*—golden and *uštra*—*√uṣ* to shine—radiance). For details of his life, etc., see the various books on the subject notably Jackson's *Zoroaster*.† His date seems to have been now fixed at much earlier than 660 B.C. which used to

* Lassen and Windischmann translate the name "golden-star."

† The origin of the name is fully discussed in an Appendix in that book, pp. 147 ff.

be given in older works, though Jack. seems to favour the older view. See Introduction.

Ātrem. (v.l. *Ātarem*, *Āθrem*) 2/1 m.—Fire. Probably the word is connected with अथर्व. The Pers. آتش (*ātish*), fire, is from 1 l *Ātarš*. The Ved. अताम (later अतामन) is also probably connected.

pairi-yaozdabentem—2/1 pres. pt. par. of *yaozdā* to purify (lit. prepare for worship) with *pairi* (परि). The *yaozdā* itself is a comp. verb made up of \sqrt{yaz} (यज्) and $\sqrt{dā}$ (धा). The root *dā* is often thus compounded with nouns or with other roots, e.g. $\chi ru\dot{z}dā$ (क्रुध् + धा) to harden, $ni-\chi^v abdā$ (नि + खप् + धा) to lull to sleep, *pazdā* (पद् + धा) to stamp on the ground, *māzdā* (मन् + धा) to pay heed to, etc. In Skt. there is only one such example of a word with धा quotable—अधा, though other comp. verbs are not uncommon. See Whit. §§ 1090 ff. The *dā* may have a caus. value.* (Jack. A.G. § 692).

gāθās-ca—2/3 f. गाथाश्च. The enclitic particle *ca* is always joined on to the previous word and where the visarga (I-E. -s) is at the end of the previous word the Sandhi shows the -s; e.g. *Haomō* (हामः) but *Haomas-ca* (होमश्च), *gaθā*—गाथाः but *gaθās-ca*—गाथाश्च. The *gāθās* are the oldest portions of the Av. scriptures. They are metrical and are supposed to have been the words of Z. himself. See Introduction and also the introductory notes to the Gāθic selections.

srāvayantem—2/1 pres. pt. caus. par.— \sqrt{sru} (श्रु)—श्रावयन्तम् lit. to cause to hear, i.e. to recite. This caus. form, *srāvaya*, is regularly used in this sense throughout the Av. In P. Guj. we have retained the same word श्रावुं e.g. श्रावौवाद् श्राववा (to chant the (marriage-) blessings).

ā-dim (v.l. *°dēm*)—आ-तम्—*dim* is an obsolete form for 2/1 of the pron. 3 per. (*tēm*). There are several other forms (also enclitic like *dim*) used for the 2/1 of the 3 per. pron. They are *hīm*, *im*. In O. Pers. *sim* is also found. In some Prak. dialects the form सौम् or शौम् is found.

parəsai—3/1 Impf. augment omitted. The augment is more often omitted in Av. than not. अश्अन्. $\sqrt{parəs}$, Pers. پرسیدن (*pursidan*) to ask.

• *kō*—कः—who.

narə—8/1—ने नर. The word is used more in the sense of the Skt. वीर.

ahi—2/1 Pres. अहि—(thou) art. \sqrt{ah} —अस to be.

yim—2/1 m.—whom. The form must have been originally **yom* (यम्) but generally in the neighbourhood of the palatal sounds *y*, *c*, *j* and *z* the -em changes to -im e.g. *vācim* (वाचम्), *bajina* (भाजन), *drujim* (द्रुजम्), but *drujəm* also is found.

azəm—अहम्—I.

vispahe—6/1 m.—of all, of the whole—विश्वस्य.

aṇḍuś—6/1 m. of *aṇhu*, life, creation. There is a variant form of the word *aṇhu* also found frequently, namely *ahu* (अह). The *ṇ* inserted before the *h* is governed by rather complex rules, and in the declension we find both the variants *ahu* and *aṇhu* used side by side. So also *vohu* and *vayhu* (वह). But *Ahura* (अहुर) has only one form.*

astvatō—6/1 m. of *astvaṭ* (अस्थित्, lit. "possessing bones," i.e. the corporeal or material world; always used as opposed to spiritual and referring to things on the physical plane.

sraēštām—2/1 adj. sup.—best, noblest—अष्टम्. The *ṛ* and *ṣ* of Skt. are regularly represented in Av. by the diphthongs *aē* and *aō*. Cf. the modern London dialect of English which pronounces "*laidi*" for "*lady*" and "*raud*" for "*road*".

dādarəsā (v.l. *dādarəsəm*)—1/1 pīt. *√darəs* (दृश्) to see—दृश्ये. In Av. as also in Ved. the perfect does not necessarily have a past significance. The idea is more that of being *परीक्ष*, i.e. happening in the presence of the speaker. Note also the long vowel *dā*°.

χ^vahe—6/1 of *χ^va*—one's own—अस्व. The *ṣ* of Skt. is represented by *h* in Av. and the *ś* by *hva* (G.A.) which becomes *χ^va* (Y.A.). The *h* in the *hva* is a strong spirant which makes the transition to *χ^va* easier.† Pers. *khūd* (self has the *khva*) which is Av. *χ^va* (cf. *स्वतः*).

gayehe—6/1 of *gaya*, life *√gi* to live. Cf. *जीव*, *Bíos*.

χ^vanvatō—6/1 pres. pīt. *√χ^van*—shining. The gen. here is used almost adjectively: according to strict syntax we should get *χ^vanvantəm*. The genitive case is used in Av., as also in Veda, very freely in place of other cases.‡ Here *χ^vahe gayehe* should be in the ins. but both are in the genitive and the *χ^vanvatō* in the genitive is due to case attraction.

amaššahe—6/1 of *amašša*, immortal, undying—अमृतस्य; adj. to *gayehe*. The equation Skt. *rt* = Av. *š* was first given by Bartholomae, e.g. *अन* (× *अन*)—*ašša*, मर्त्यः—*maššyō*. (Here the *š* for *ṣ* is due to the *y*).

2. *āat*—Thereupon—आत् (अथ).

mē—4/1—to me—मे (मद्यत्). The *-ē* final is a sign of the older dialect where all final vowels are long. In Y.A. all final vowels except *ō* are shortened. Thus we get in Y.A. the form *me*. The dialect of this piece is about midway between G.A. and Y.A.

aēm—1/1—This. Anticipates *Haomō* in the next *pāda*. (Reich. § 569).

paityaoṣta (v.l. *paiti-aōṣta*)—3/1 aor. atm. *√vac* with *paiti* प्रणि—replied. In Skt. it would be par. प्रत्यवोचत्. The atm. form shows, as might be expected, the weak grade with *samprasāraṇa*, cf. उक्त.

ašava—1/1—Righteous, lit., "possessing *asha*"—अशवा. Note the short final *-a*.

* Jack. A.G., §§ 108-129.

† Jack. A.G., § 130.

‡ सम्प्रसारणान्ये षष्ठी.

dūraoṣō—1/1. The word is a comp. and various meanings are suggested of its second component *aoṣa*. The first part is *dūra* (दूर) far, wide-spreading. *aoṣa* may mean (1) radiance $\sqrt{uṣ}$ to shine, or (2) sickness— $\sqrt{uṣ}$ to be faint, to be weak, or (3) death—also from $\sqrt{uṣ}$ to be weak, to faint. Thus the meanings of the compound would be, respectively, (1) “of-far-spreading-radiance” (Barth.) * or (2) “warding off sickness” (Kan.); or (3) “warding off death” (Wolff). All these make good sense and any of them may be the correct one.

ahmi—1/1 pres. \sqrt{ah} —अस्मि—(I) am.

ā . . . *yāsaṇuha*—2/1 imp. atm. $\sqrt{yās}$ (to desire), with *ā*—desire ardently, आयाचस्व. The Skt. याच् to beg is cognate, and probably ईप् (इच्छ) to wish is also connected. Note the equation (*a*)*ṇuha* = (अ) स्त.

mām—2/1—me—माम्.

Spitamā—8'1—A patronymic name of Z. from* his ancestor of that name. The geneology is given thus in Bun. and other works:—

Zaratuštra—*Pouruṣaspa*—*Paetiraspa*—*Aurvaṭ-aspa*—*Haecaṭ-aspa*—*Ca-ṣṇuṣ*—*Paetiraspa*†—*Hardarṣna*—*Haridar*—*Spitamā*. The name of *Spitamā* was used as a family name by his descendants; hence Z. is often called *Spentamāna*. The meaning of the name seems to be “the holiest, the noblest” from \sqrt{spi} (स्वि) to be white, to be pure (Kan.), hence it may be translated by the Skt. * चित्तम (= चेतनम). †

frā . . . *hunvaguha*—2/1 imp. atm. \sqrt{hu} (हृ) with *frā* (प्र)—प्रहृणुष्व Press out.

χ^varətē—4/1 of *°rati*—for drinking. A verbal infinitive. The meaning is the same as the Skt. पौनये. $\sqrt{χ^var}$ (*hvar*) to eat. Cf. Pers. *khur-**dan*) to eat.

aoi . . . *stūdi* (v.l. *avi*, *auī*, *ave*)—2/1 Imp. par. $\sqrt{stū}$ (स्तु) with *aoi* (अभि)—praise अभिस्तुष्वि (Ved., later °वि). *aoi* is spelt elsewhere as *awi*, *aiwi*, *aibi*, etc. The ending -*di* is I-E. and is found in Veda—Grk. -*θi*—later Skt. वि. The -*वि* survives in the later रवि.

staomaine—7/1 of *°man*—in (a) hymn of praise (Kan.). स्तोमनि. Reich. takes it as a dat. inf. and trans. the sentence; “praise me that I may be praised.”

yaθa—just as—यथा—Note the final -*a*.

aparaci—1/3—others—अपरेचिन्. The enclitic -*ci* is added more often in Av. than in Skt. and to a greater variety of stems, cf. *azem-ci*, *taē-ci* (below 22), etc.

Saoṣyantō—1/3 fut. pt. par. $\sqrt{ṣu}$ to work, to do good, to worship,—

* Hb. air. D., but in Wb. he supports the third interpretation.

† Note the element -*aspa* in these names, implying that it was a family of warriors.

‡ *Spāna* and *Spanta* are cognate. See below 22.

𑀧𑀸 (?)—*Saošyant* is the name given to an order of Beings who appear in the world from time to time to fight the evil and to re-establish the law of *Aša* (Righteousness) in the world. The sense is not restricted to the future alone but may refer to the past as well. Hence the word may be used, as here, in the general sense of "those who work for the good of humanity," i.e. Prophets and Teachers of the Law. In a stricter sense, especially when used in the singular, the name denotes a special Teacher who is to appear in the future and re-inaugurate the golden age, somewhat like the *Kalki-avatāra* of the Hindus. This *Saošyant* is said to be the seed of Z. who is to be born in the future.*

stavān—3/3 subj. par. स्तवान्—used in a general sense in a relative clause—did praise. Reich. takes the word in the sense of the future taking *Saošyantō* literally in the future sense translating *stavān* as "shall praise thee."

3. *nəmō*—Salutation—नमः

Haomāi—4/1—to Haoma—होमाय

kasā—1/1—a variant of *kō*, who. The word occurs also as *kas*, or *kaš* when used in a compound or with enclitics, e.g. *kasnā*, *kaste*, etc. The *kasā θwām* seems to be a similar use though *θwām* is not enclitic. The -a- inserted is merely to ease the pronunciation.

paoiryō—1/1—first, almost used adverbially. पूर्वः

mašyō—1/1—mortal—मर्त्यः

astvaiθyāi—4/1 f.—material—अस्थिवत्यै

hunūta—3/1 impf. atm., augment dropped. Worshipped, lit. pressed out. Note the atm. In the Av. the atm. is used far more frequently in its original sense than in Skt., the sense namely, of the subject of the verb, profiting by the action (cf. the "middle voice" in Grk.). Another point to note is the long -nū where the Skt. would show the short vowel—अनुन. This is due to the strong stress accent in Av. which developed in place of the original pitch accent of the I-E. *Ursprache*, which latter has been preserved almost intact in the Vedas. The Av. even in the earliest period tended to have the stress-accent shifted to one fixed syllable, viz. the penult, hence the long -nū in the present case.

gaēθyāi—4/1 of °θi f.—for (the sake of) the world. √gī (cf. *gayehē* above). Pers. گیتی (*gītī*) world.

kā—1/1 f.—what? का.

ahmāi—4/1—to him—अहमे.

ašiš—1/1 f.—blessing—आशिः. Note the quantity of the vowels which very often do not quite correspond between Av. and Skt.

* Modi. Dict., under *Zarathuštra*, also *Saošyant*.

arənāvi—3/1 pass. aor. \sqrt{ar} —to give, to grant—was granted. The Skt. word **अर** is connected with this. This is a special form of the aor. See Whit. §§ 842 ff., Reich. § 232.

ciṭ—1/1 n. a variant (palatalised *) of *ka*—What? The m. form is *ciś* which is found in the Veda in the phrases **साक्षिः** and **वक्षिः**. The *ciṭ* shows the final *-ṭ* after analogy of *yaṭ*, *taṭ*, etc. Cf. Lat. *quid*. Skt. shows the **चित्** only as the indefinite enclitic particle in **वक्षित्**, etc.

jasat—3/1 aor. augmentless. \sqrt{jas} —to come—came, accrued. The root is connected with the Skt. **जस्**.

āyaptəm—2/1 n.—profit. \sqrt{ap} (**आप्**) to obtain with *ā*—**आप्तम्**. The *-y* is euphonic to avoid the hiatus.

4. *Vivāṇhā*—1/1 of *Vivāṇhvaṭ*—**विवस्वन्**—Father of *Yima* (**यम**) and grandson of *Hoshang*, who was the grandson of *Gaya-Māretan* the first human being. In the Veda also **यम** is called **वैवस्वन्**. The name is also written *Vivāṇhana* or *Vivāṇhuṣā*.

hā—1/1 f.—this, **हा**.

taṭ—1/1 n. t.—this, **तत्**.

yaṭ—conj., exactly as in Skt.—namely, that.

hē (v.l. *hi*)—6/1 of the dem. pron. enc.—his, **हस्य**. There is a variant *šē* also found in Av. Cf. Prāk. **हे**. See below 28.

puθrō—1/1—Son, **पुत्र**.

us-zayata—3/1 impf. atm. \sqrt{zan} (**जन्**) to be born, with *ut*, augmentless—was born—**उद्जायत**.

yō—1/1 rel. pron.—who. **य**.

Yimō—1/1—**यम**. The names in Av. and Veda are identical in every respect. Literally it means a twin, probably because there is mention of his twin sister *Yamī*, though in the Z. literature she is not mentioned till much later. This is evidently an old Aryan legend of the first progenitors of mankind. *Yama's* rule was the golden age of the world (cf. Ven. II, Sel. X below). But he was also the first human being who died and after his death he became the ruler of the dead. Cf. RV. X. 14.

χšaētō—1/1—Ruler. $\sqrt{\chiši}$ (**क्षि**) to rule. *Yima* always has the title *χšaēta* added to his name and this full name *Yimō-χšaētō* (*Yima the King*) has given the Persian name **جمشید** (*Jamshid*) found in Shah. The O. Pers. form of *χšaētō* is *χšaēyaθiya* found constantly in the Cuneiform Inscriptions, where also it means King or Ruler.

hwāθwō—1/1 adj.—Magnificent—**हु** (**हु**) and *vāθwa* prosperity (from \sqrt{van} to win, to conquer, to protect, to prosper). The word may mean “possessing great prosperity or magnificence” or “possessing large flocks”

* Owing to the palatal vowel *i*, by the law of Gollitz.

or "having a large retinue" (Kan.). It may also mean "the good protector" (सुरक्षक).

χ^varənaṇḥvastəmō—1/1 sup. of *χ^varənaṇḥvant*—most illustrious, most resplendent. Lit., most possessed of *χ^varənaṇḥ* ($\sqrt{\chi^v ar}$ —खर to shine). This *χ^varənaṇḥ* has almost exactly the same sense as the वेजस् of Skt. literature. The words खर, खर्य, खरे, Lat. *sol*, Grk. ἥλιος, Pers. *khoreh**, are cognate.

zātanām—6/3 of *p^rpt.* of \sqrt{zan} (जन्) to be born—Of those born, i.e. of created things—जातानाम्.

hvara-darəsō—1/1—Comp. of *hvara* the sun and *darəsa* appearance—having the appearance of the sun. Note the retention of *hv* in this word.

mašyānām—6/3 of *mašya*—Of mortals, among mortals—मर्त्यानाम्.

yaf—1/1 n. rel. pron.—This refers to *Yima*. In Av. the neu. rel. pro.† is often used for all genders and numbers as a sort of general relative. (Kan. A.G. § 604).

kərənaot—3/1 impf. augmentless of \sqrt{kar} to do—made. In the Av. as in Veda the \sqrt{kar} (कृ) is used in the कृ- class. (कृ कर्षीन्).

aīḡhe (v.l. *aḡhe*, *aṇhe*)—6/1 of dem. pro. m.—his (own)—अयम्. The regular G.A. form is *ahyā* and in Y.A. *ahe* for the m. The form *aīḡhe* is formed after the analogy of the fem. *aīḡhā* (अय्याः) where owing to the epenthetic *i*, the *ḡ* change to *ḡ*. The two nasals *ḡ* and *ḡ* are hard to distinguish in pronunciation and in actual practice are not sounded differently. The *ḡ* is the guttural nasal = Skt. ङ and the *ḡ* has a slightly palatalised value and occurs with an *i* or *e*, i.e. with palatal vowels. Sometimes however mss. show wrongly the *ḡ* even when the palatal vowel is dropped, e.g. *aḡhe*, *aḡhā*, etc. Note also the reflexive sense of the dem. pron. when referring to the subj. of the principal sentence.‡

χšaθrāda—5/1 of *χšaθra* (अथ)—Power, rule, kingdom. The form of the abl. ending *-āda* is peculiar to Av. This is really made up of the regular ending *-āḡ + ā* (a postposition) which when joined together give *-āḡā*, subsequently *-āda*. Skt. अथादा = अथाम् + आ. But the postposition *ā* was invariably used with the abl. form, especially if it had a sense other than the regular abl. sense of "from." Thus the *-āda* became a regular ending for the abl. by the enclitic postposition *ā* being incorporated with the original ending. Another point to note about the abl. ending is, that the *-āḡ*, which originally, as also in Skt., belonged to the stems in *-a* (अ) only, was in the Av. extended to all nouns, thus completely replacing the original, I.-E. *-as* (अस्).|| The sense of the abl. here may be taken as (1) referring to space, "in his kingdom," (2) referring to time, "during his rule," or (3) causal, "owing to his rule."

* The Per. word means वेजस्.

† Kan. calls the *yaf* "the relative particle."

‡ Reich. § 568

|| Jack. A.G. § 222.

amarəšanta (v.l. *amarəšanta*, *amarəšinta* Kan.)—2/2 fut. pt. √*mar* (मृ) to die with negative prefix *a-* (अ)—undying, immortal.—अमरिषणा (Ved.).

pasu-vira, a *dvandva* comp., 2/2—animals and men—पशुवैरा (Ved.).

aghaošamne—2/2 pres. pt. atm. f. of √*huš* (हृष्) to dry up with negative prefix *a-* not drying up, ever fresh—अघुषमाणे.

āpa-urvaire, a *dvandva* comp. 2/2—waters and vegetation. The original words are *āpa* and *urvarā*. *āpa* is Skt. आपः water, but in Av. it is used in all numbers. The word *urvarā* corresponds to Skt. उर्वरा, but means vegetation. The Pers. *ur*, *urvar* (tree) is a derivative. The Lat. *arbor* also seems to be a cognate.

χ^vairyān—3/3 opt. par. √*χ^var*—to eat (Kan.). They (i.e. the people) might eat. Kan. takes this to be an independent sentence. Reich. however takes *χ^vairyān* to be an inf. 2/1 object of the verb *kərənəot* and compares the sentence with the Vedic construction where the inf. is used as obj. of the finite verb, e.g. अमिन्द्रं च वितन्वा अपक्नः.* Reich. translates “made for feeding.”

χ^varəθəm (v.l. *ctəm*)—2/1—Food—cognate object of *χ^vairyān*.

ajayamnəm (v.l. *ajyamnəm*)—2/1 Pres. pt. atm. √*jyā* to decay, to be exhausted (cf. Skt. जिगमि) —Inexhaustible.

5. *χšāθre* (v.l. *θrahe* evidently due to attraction of the two genitives on either side) 7/1—In the kingdom or during the rule.

aurvahe—6/1—Illustrious, renowned. √*ar* to be noble. Skt. आर्य is connected.

nōit . . . *nōit*—neither . . . nor. *Nōit* by itself is much stronger as a negative and may be rendered “never.”

aotəm—noun, 1/1 n.—Cold (cf. Av. *aodar*—cold, Skt. अघः in the sense of cloud in the Veda).

āyha—3/1 pft. √*ah* (अह) to be—There was, आस.

garəməm—noun 1/1 n.—Warm, गर्मसु, θέρμος

zaurva—1/1 f.—note the shortening of the final *ā* of *zaurvā*. Old age—जरा.

mərəθyus—1/1 m.—Death, मृत्युः

araskō (अस्क) —1/1—meaning is doubtful as it is used only in one other place† besides. Probably it means envy.—Pers. رشک (*rashk*) envy. Is ईर्ष्या connected? Barth. (Wb. 187) says that though derivation and tradition agree as to the meaning envy still the meaning “illness” would suit the context better. He thinks *yaskō* might have been the original reading.

* RV. VII. 21. 3; Reich. § 690.

† Yt. XV. 18, which is exactly the same passage.

daēvo-dātō—1/1—Comp. of *daēva* demon and *dāta* p. pt. of \sqrt{da} (दा) to create—created by the demon. The word *daēva* is the same as the Skt. देव, *div* (दिव) to shine, but the meanings are opposite. Similarly we find *sura* and असुर the same philologically but with opposite meanings. This points to a period of Indo-Iranian unity which was later disturbed by some religious quarrel. In fact the names of a great many Hindu deities are used for demons in Av. and *vice versa* in the Veda. It is however remarkable that असुर in the oldest Veda has got the good sense while *daēva* is nowhere thus used in the Av.*

pancadasa—1/2 adj.—fifteen (years old), referring to the *pita-puṭras-ca* (पिता पुत्रश्च—father and son. The age of 15 was considered to be the age of the first blossoming of youth in ancient Iran hence the word implies “in the first bloom of youth.”

frācarōiṣe—3/2 subj. ātm. \sqrt{car} (चर्) to move with *frā* (प्र)—moved about. *प्रचरेषे.

raodaēšva—7/3 (*raodaēšu* + *ā*). The *ā* is a postposition (= in) amplifying the sense of the loc. See above *ṣṣaθrāda*. The word *raoda* (\sqrt{rud} —रुद्—to grow) means growth, stature, when used in plu. it means appearance, form. In appearance.

kataraś-cit—*cit*, as in Skt., is indefinite in sense. *katara* (com. of *ka*) means one of the two (Grk. *ποτέρος*—कतरः—either of them, i.e. both of them. This word is evidently a later addition made in order to emphasise the sense fully, as it does not fit in with the metre.

yavata—As long as—यावत्.

ṣṣayōiṭ—3/1 aor.—Ruled—(अ)अयत्.

Vivayuhātō—6/1—Of V.—विवस्वतः.

6. *bityō*—1/1—Second—द्वितीयः.

7. *Āθwyō*—1 1—The father of *Θraētaona*. In Veda the name is found as आण्व, in Pah. as *Āspiyān* and in Shah. we find it as آبتین (*Ābtin*). He was famed for his great wealth because he has always the epithet “*pouru-go*” (पुरुगुः possessing many cows)† given him in Pah. books.

viśo—6/1 f. of *viś* family—विशः.

sūrayā—6/1 f. valiant—सुरायाः.

Θraētaonō—1/1. This name is found in Veda as चैतान with the surname आण्व added (RV. I. 158. 5.). This personage is also mentioned in the Veda as having slain a three-headed monster and delivered the cows, though later on this exploit has been transferred to Indra (RV. X. 8. 8.). The Veda moreover in other passages uses the name चित आण्व for the same personage.

* Haug, pp. 267 ff. See also Introduction.

† Another epithet of his is *purtora*, possessing many bulls (cf. *taurus*).

But the *Orta* of Av. is a different person belonging to the family of *Sāma* who was the father of *Kərəsāspa* (see 10 below). The name *Orāētaona* occurs in Shah. as فریدون (*Faridūn*) the son of آبّین (*Ābtīn*). The change of the spirant *θ* of Av. to *ف* (*f*) in Pers. is paralleled by the change c. Grk. *θ* to the Russ. *θ* (*Fitā*) e.g. Θεόδωρος—Russ. *Feodor*.

8. *janaŋ* (v.l. *zanaŋ*)—3/1 impf. *√jan* (*zan*)—जन्—to slay. (अ. जन्.)

Ažim-Dahākem—2/1—The name is invariably in this double form. This was a three-headed monster destroyed by the hero *Orāētaona*. The full name survives in Pers. as اژدها (*azhdahā*) a great snake, a python. The first part *Ažiš* is the Skt. अश्विः—Grk. ὄφις, a snake and *Dahāka*—biter, stinger, *√dah*—दह् (दङ्)—to bite, to sting. Only the second half of the name is used in Pers. and becomes ضحاک (*Zohāk*) of Shah. He had the title بیورسپه (*bīvaraspa*) (lit. of 10,000 horses). The Shah says that he was the son of a good man of the royal family and was brought up in the ways of godliness and religion. He was also a master of all the arts and crafts of his day. But he came under the influence of the Evil One who, disguised as a cook, entered his service, and soon became the prime favourite of the young Prince. Once as a boon the Evil One obtained permission to kiss his master on the two shoulders. Thereupon two black snakes came out of *Zohāk*'s shoulders and they could not be cut away. The Evil One hereupon again appeared in the guise of a doctor and said that the serpents should be fed daily with the brains of men. From that time onwards *Zohāk* grew in power and went on from tyranny to tyranny. He slew his own father and took lead in the revolt against *Yima*. Ultimately he usurped the throne and ruled over *Irān*. His rule was an iron rule and very harsh. But people had to wait 1000 years, all but a day, till the champion *Faridūn* arose against *Zohāk*. After a hard struggle *Zohāk* was captured and bound alive to Mount *Damāvand*.

θri-zafnəm—2/1—with three jaws—The word *zafan*, *√zaf* (*jap*), जप् to gape, is used only for the *daēvas* or their creation. Corresponding to words used for ordinary or good people, i.e. the creation of the Good Spirit, the “*ahura*” words, there is a whole series of “*daēva*” words in Z. literature. This custom continues even to-day among the Parsis, e.g. सुवु to sleep, but the “*daēva*-word” is सोडावु; खावु to eat and जोभरवु and so on through a whole series. In German there are a few such pairs of words, e.g. *Mund* (mouth) but *Maul* (used for animals).

θri-kamərədēm—2/1—The *daēva*-word *kamərəda* means head. Skt. *कमृधन् (= कृधन्) on analogy of किल्लर, कापुष the inter. pron. being used in the sense of contempt. Kan. in his Dict. gives another derivation, *kamara* empty space (cf. Lat. *camera*) and *ḍā* (घा) to enclose, hence meaning lit. an empty head.*

* See also Barth., Wb. 440.

χšvas-ašim—2/1—*χšvas* six (𐬭𐬀—Grk. ἕξ—Lat. *sex*) + *aši* eye (𐬀𐬵𐬌), a *daēva*-word. These three words of course refer to *Dahāka* and the two serpents growing out of his shoulders.

hazayrā-yaoxšti—2/1—of a thousand wiles. *hazayrā* thousand, Pers. هزار (*hazār*), 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀; *yaoxšti*—𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀—art. *Dahāka* was very learned in the arts and sciences of his day and hence this epithet. It is not used in any special *daēva*-sense because in another place we find a blessing uttered in these words: *hazayrā-yaoxštyō bavāhi yaθa Ažōiš Dahākāi aya-daēna* (be thou learned in a thousand arts like *Azhi-Dahāka*, the follower of the wicked faith) Yt. XXIII. 3.

aš-aoyānham—2/1—possessing much power -*aš*—is a prefix used often in the sense of very or excessive, like the Skt. अति; it is often spelt also *aš*. *aoyānham*—𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀—power. *Dahāka* had obtained the power by *tapas* but had misused it like *Rāvaṇa* and other demons of mythology.*

daēvim—2/1—devilish—𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀.

drujam (v.l. °*jim*)—2/1 f.—This is the root-noun, *druj*—to oppose, hence opponent, enemy; 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀. Hence it means the Arch-enemy and all his creation. Modern P. Guj. 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀.

ayam—evil, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀.

gaēθavyō (v.l. °*vayō*)—The suffix is a variant of °*byō* (𐬀𐬵𐬀): 4/3 of *gaēθā* creation. The 𐬀 of Skt. is often represented in Av. by *w* and sometimes by *b* and the *b* and *v* interchange (𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀).

drvantam—2/1 pres. pt. √*dru* (𐬀𐬵𐬀) to run away. Lit. running away, later used specifically for one who runs away from the Law of God hence an infidel, unbeliever (Kan.). It is used in exactly the same signification as the Skt. word 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀 or the Christian word *heathen*. In P. Guj. it survives as 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀 or 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀.

fraca-kəratat—3/1 impf. par. √*kərat* (𐬀𐬵𐬀. 𐬀𐬵𐬀) to cut and *fraca* (𐬀𐬵𐬀) forth or out. When used as a *daēva*-word it means to create; the idea being that the *daēva* creation is not properly finished but is as it were hewn out anyhow and misshapen monsters are the result.

Agro-Mainyuš—1/1. The Evil Spirit; lit., the destroying spirit *ayra* (√*ayr* 𐬀𐬵𐬀 to decrease, to ruin, to destroy) and *mainyu* (√*man* 𐬀𐬵𐬀 to think). Per. 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀 (*Ahriman*). God, Ahura-Mazda, has created two spirits, the Good Spirit (*Spənto-Mainyuš*) and the Evil-Spirit (*Agro-Mainyuš*). They are both of equal power and they are to be in eternal opposition to each other. From this eternal opposition proceeds all evolution. See Gāθ. Ahu. XXX (Sel. XXIV). This is the so-called "Dualism" taught by Z.; but they who call the faith Dualistic forget that Z. has distinctly stated that

* *Devātir* quoted by Modi in his Dict.

Ahura-Maza is above them both.* This Dualism reminds one of *पुरुष* and *प्रकृति* of the Sāṅkhyas, while Ahura-Mazda above them both is comparable to ईश्वर in the Yoga philosophy.

avi—against—*अभि*.

yām . . . gaēθām—The rel. here has almost the sense of the dem. or of the def. art.

mahrkāi—4/1 inf. *√marac* (मरच्) to twist, to torture, to ruin (cf. Guj. मरचकुं)—In order to torment or to destroy.

Ašahe—6/1—of *Aša*. *Aša* (neu.), *अश*. orig. meant Law or Truth, the Divine Order in Creation, somewhat like the conception of *धर्म* in India. In fact *Aša* meant to Irān what *धर्म* meant to India. In some places the *Aša* has been personified as a Divinity who occupied a definite place in the Divine Hierarchy. He is then called sometimes *Aša* and sometimes *Aša-vahišta* (later *Ardiβesht*). He leads the creation of the Good Spirit against the *Druj* and the forces of *Agro-Mainyuš*. See Introduction.

9. *θritō*—third—*तृतीयः*

10. *θritō*—The son of *Sāma*. His son *Kərəsāspa* was much more famous and the latter is known is Pah. looks as *Sāma* also. *चित्र* of the Vedas, *تريث* (*Atrit*).

Sāmanām—plu. indicating family as in other I-E. languages. This *Sāma* is not to be confounded with the *Sām* of the *Šah*, the son of *Nariman* and the grandfather of *Rustam*. Both these were connected according to Bun. but the exact connection is not given.†

səvišto—the most powerful—the most prosperous—*सर्विष्ठः*

puθra—1/2—*पुत्रा* (Ved.).

us-zayōiθe—3/2 aor. pass.—(two) were born.

Urvāšaya—A son of *θrita*. He was a religious teacher and famed for his great wisdom. (See Yt. XXIII.) He was slain by a foe called *Hitāspa*, and in order to avenge him, his brother *Kərəsāspa* invoked *Rāma Yazata* and succeeded in slaying *Hitāspa* (*Rāma* Yt. and *Zamyād* Yt.). *Kərəsāspa*—The name is philologically the Skt. *कृशाश्व*. He is the greatest hero mentioned in the Av. His name occurs in many places. He belonged to the *Sāma* family and being the greatest among them was often distinguished as “the *Sāma*” (Pah. *Zand-i-Vohuman* Yt.). He has been remembered as having preformed many wondrous deeds, for, like a true knight-errant, he used to wander about eager for adventures and for relieving human suffering. Among his most notable deeds may be mentioned: (1) the slaying of the horned dragon as described here; (2) the slaying of his brother's murderer; (3) vanquishing the monster *Gandarəva* (गन्धर्व ?) who lived on the

* The later Z. literature sometimes identifies Ahura-Mazda with the Good Spirit (Ven. I. 7).

† Modi, Dict. *Sāma*.

ocean *Vourukaša* after invoking the *Yazata* of the waters (*Ardvisūr Yt.*); (4) annihilation of a family of nine outlaws (*pašan*), on account of which his spirit * is invoked in *Farvardin Yt.* to protect people from highway robbers. His dead body is said to be surrounded by 99,999 *Fravašis* (holy spirits) because there is a prophecy that he will rise again to slay *Aži Dahāka* (دَاحَاکَ) when he comes up again to oppress the world; thus K. is to be the inaugurator of a new era of peace and prosperity.† Throughout the ancient literature of Persia both Av. and Pah. K. is mentioned with high praise and reverence. But strangely enough *Firdausi* in the *Shah.* mentions him only incidentally and a few times (کَرشاسپ *Kershaspa*). The real hero and ideal of *Shah.* is *Rustam* who performs deeds comparable to those of the avestic *Kərəsāspa*.

tkaešō—Teacher. By a transference of meaning the word often means the matter taught, i.e. religious writings, holy chants, scriptures. And by a further transference the word means “religion” itself as in *Ahura-tkaeša*, *paoiryō-tkaeša*, etc. * Reich. derives it from $\sqrt{kaēš}$ to teach, which is connected with \sqrt{ci} (चि), but Barth. disputes this (Wb. 813). Kan. (Dict.) derives it from *aiti* + *caš* (अतिचक्ष्) to perceive or study closely. This seems probable, but reminds one of the popular derivation of अशि (a seer) from दृश् (to see).

anyō . . . anyō—the one . . . the other. अन्यः

dātō-rāzō—This has been explained variously but there is no essential difference between the ultimate interpretations. Reich. derives this from *dāta* law (something fixed— $\sqrt{dā}$, दा i.e. दानं), and *rāzō* from $\sqrt{rāj}$ to shine or to arrange. Hence either “a brilliant judge” (धर्मराज ?) or “an arranger of law.” Barth. (Hb. air. D.) takes it to mean a giver (*dātō*—दाना) of religious law; *rāzō* according to him would mean religion. Mills translate “an upright judge.” Kan. translates “one who points out the path of justice” or “a great lawgiver.”

uparō-kairyō—Excessively energetic—a superworker. From *upairi* (उपरि) and *kairya* (\sqrt{kar} , क) worker (cf. Guj. करवैयो).

yava—youthful—युवा. The word is found also as *yvan*.

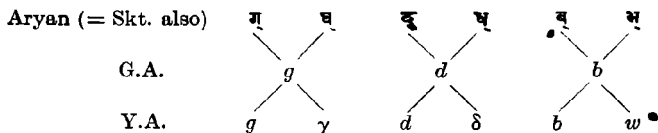
gaēsuš—possessing long curly hair, a characteristic of K. and used constantly as an epithet for him. Per. گیسو (*gisū*) curly haired. Cf. the epithet केशव.

gaḍavarō—mace-bearer, i.e. a warrior. The older form is *gadabarō*—^{*}गदाभरः (गदाधरः) note that Skt. भ् is regularly found in G.A. as *b*, in Y.A. as *b* or *w* and sometimes irregularly as *v*, as here. Cf. अभि=G.A. *aibi*, Y.A. *aiwi* or *aibi* and often too *aivi* and still further corrupted to *aoi*. See also *srvarēm* below.

* *Fravāši*.

† Just as *Orāētaona* had done in the past (see above, 8). This prophecy is mentioned in *Bahman Yt.*

11. *sr̥varẽm*—horned. The word is originally a compound *sr̥ū* + *bara* = **स्रुवरा**. This also illustrates the irregular representation of Aryan *bh* by Av. *v*. There are no true mediae aspirates in Av. In G.A. they are all deaspirated while in Y.A. a series of spirant sounds (*γ*, *δ*, *w*) are developed to represent the original aspirates. But there has been a good deal of crossing and overlapping. The development can best be seen in the diagram below :*—



aspo-garē̃m—horse-devouring. $\sqrt{\text{gar}}$ —**गृह्** to swallow.

nərə-garē̃m (v.l. *nara*^o, *nare*^o)—man-devouring. In the declension of the stem *nar-* (**नर**) we often find the base *nər-* (Reich. § 361¹). The second *ə* is evidently epenthetic in origin occurring in G.A. forms having the terminations beginning with *b* (I.-E. *bh*), e.g. *narəbyō* (**नरभ्यो**). In Y.A. the form would have been *narō-garē̃m*.

višavantē̃m (v.l. *viš*², *vis*²) poisonous—**विषवन्तम्**. Cf. Grk. *íos*, Lat. *vīrus*.

zairitē̃m—yellow—**हरितम्**.

viš—1/1 n.—Note that in Skt. the word is transferred to the *-a* declension.

araodāt—One of the few cases where the augment is retained. $\sqrt{\text{raod}}$ /*δ*—**वृह**—to grow, lit. grew, i.e. spread.

ārštyo-barəza—1/1 or 3/1 of *°zayh* neu.—To the height of a spear. The Pah. trans. says *asp-bā-lāk*, i.e. to the height of a horse, which as Barth.† remarks comes to about a spear's height. The Skt. trans. of Nair. gives **सुहृन्मुहृन्मुहृन्** which seems to have misled Kan. into translating "to the depth of a thumb." With *ārštya* cf. Skt. **अर्ष्टि**; *barəza* is height $\sqrt{\text{barəz}}$ (**वर्ध** a variant of **वर्ध**) to increase.

ayayha—3 1 of *ayayha*—kettle. Lit. iron or metal. **अयसा**. Cf. Lat. *aes*. Goth. *aiz* (bronze).

pītūm—food. **पितु** (Ved.) also means nourishment or food.

pacata—3/1 impf. atm.—**पचयत्**. Note atm.

rapitwinē̃m. See note on *hāvani* above, 1.

zrvānē̃m—2/1 m.—Time. The word is probably connected with *χρόνος* (**χρῶFvos*). The word has been borrowed in Arm. *zruan*, Pah. *zrvān*. Mod. Per. **زمان** (*zamān*) is a derivation through Pah. In Y.A. we often get the phrase *zrvāne akarane* "time without end." This has become a charac-

* Adapted from Jack. A.G. p. 32.

† Wb. 338.

teristic feature of later Z. cosmology, which may in some respects be compared with that of the unknown and unknowable परमहन् of Vedānta philosophy. See Introduction.

tafsat-ca—3/1 impf. √*tap* तप—grew hot. Cf. Lat. *tepsco*, Pers. تپیدن (*tapsīdan*) or تفسیدن (*tafsīdan*) to be heated.

hō—चः here used as a def. art. Barth. (Wb. 1719) notes that this demonstrative continues the preceding relative clause (*yim upairi K. . . .* etc.) with which this clause is co-ordinated.

mairyō—serpent—मारः (Kan.)—Per. مار (*mār*) serpent. Reich, following Barth. translates “scoundrel”. √*mar* to destroy.

χ^visat-ca.—3/1 impf. √*χ^vis*—सिद्धु—sweated. Kan. takes it as equal to सिद्धि. च्च and translates “hissed”; but this is not very probable.

frānš—adv. forth, away प्राङ्.

frasparaṭ—3/1 impf. √*spar* (स्फुर) with *frā* (प्र)—sprang away—प्रास्फुरन्. Cf. Grk. σπαιρω, Lat. *speruō*.

yaždyantim—2/1 f. pres. pt. √*yah* (यच्) to boil—boiling.

āpəm—Note the sg. number as distinguished from the Skt. आपः always plu. The gender however is fem. in both.

parāṇghāt—3/1 subj. atm. √*ah* (अच्) to throw with *parā* (परा). For the subj. used for impf. see Reich. § 189 and note 1 (p. 95) and § 631. The reason for the sub. here seems to be the relation of cause and effect between *frasparaṭ* and *parāṇghāt*. But in other cases the falling together of these two forms seems to be partly phonetic and partly syntactical.

parāš—adv. पराङ्—away, aside, in another direction.

tarštō—1/1 ppt. of √*brah*—ब्रह्—frightened—बलः—Cf. Grk. τρέω, Lat. *terreo*.

apatacat—3/1 impf. √*tac/k* with *apa*—Fled away. Ved. तक्षि, Pers. تاختن (*tākhtan*) to attack, to gallop.

naire-maṇā—Of heroic soul—नरमनाः नर here is to be understood as वीर.* In Shah. the word is used as a proper noun—نریمان (*Narimān*) the father of سام (*Sām*) who was the father of زال (*Zāl*) and the grandfather of رستم (*Rustam*).

12. *tūiryō*—fourth—तुरीयः (see *āxtūirīm* below 14).

13. *Pouruṣaspō*.—The father of Z. His name seems to signify according to Barth. “having gray horses” (Barth. compares पवप, पक्षि(रि)न, Per. پیر *pīr* old).† The *-aspa* as a part of name is very common in ancient Persia (cf. Z’s genealogy under Spitama above, 2) and probably indicated

* Cf. also *ko nara ahi?* in 1, above.

† Wb. 903.

a warrior (*Raθeštār*). The derivation commonly accepted however is that indicated in *Vīstāspa* Yt. 2 and Yt. XXIII. 4. “*Pouru-aspəm bavāhi yaθa Pouruśaspəm* (Be possessed of many horses like P.).* P. lived on the banks of the river *Daraja* at the foot of a mountain (Ven. XIX. 4).† This is all the information found in Av. regarding P. But Pah. has some more details. According to Bun. and other works he was the son of *Paitiraspā* and had a brother named *Arāsti*. He married *Duydā*, the daughter of *Frahimrava* of the family of *Zaviši* (also Ven. XIX. 6)† and Z. was their only child. The family of P. traced descent from *Spitama* as seen above and *Spitama* himself was a descendant of a younger branch of the Royal house of *Θraētaona* (*Farīdūn*) :

Spitama—*Vaēdišta*—*Ayāzəm*—*Rajašne*—*Durāsrum*—*Mainyuš-ciθra* (*Minūchehr*—*مینوچهر*)—*Airyava* (*Irach*—*یراح*)—*Θraetaona* (*Farīdūn*—*فریدون*).

tūm—thou—*تو*.

us-zayaŋha—2/1 impf. atm. Thou wast born, *उदजायथाः*. The ending is -*ŋha* (*-*ṣa*), cf. Grk. -*σο*. This is a rare form.

ərəzvō—8/1. O Righteous (One) Kan.—(*रे*)**अवः*: Barth. † takes it as an adv. and trans. “truly,” “in very deed” (like the Skt. *अवु*) and regards it as a stereotyped case-form (6/1) of *ərəzu*. Thus also Geld.

nmānahe—6/1 of *nmāna*—house, family. In G.A. the form *damāna* is found and sometimes even in Y.A. The origin is from Aryan *damāna* which owing to a strong stress accent on the penult dropped the first vowel or changed it to the neutral and colourless *a*. In the former case, by regular Sandhi assimilation, the **dmānəm* becomes *nmānəm*. Note also that the penult now is always long.—Skt. *दम*, Grk. *δέμειν*.

vidaēvō—opposed to the *daēvas*. The *vi* is from I-E. **dvi*; cf. Lat. *bi* in *bi-sect*, etc.

Ahura-tkaēšō—Follower of the law of Ahura. See above 10.

14. Barth. take the first “pāda” *srūto Airyene Vaējahe* with the preceding stanza (13).

**srūtō*—Famed—*सुतः*; refers to Z.

Airyene Vaējahe (v.l. °*jahi* Kan.) 7/1 n.—Through *Airyana Vaējaŋh*. This is the ancient name of the original home of the Aryan peoples. Of the I-E. peoples one branch called themselves *Ārya* (lit. noble)|| and they carried this name and bore it with pride all through their history. (Cf. the utter contempt implied by the word *अनाथ*). One offshoot of this *Āryan* branch dwelling in what may have been the plateau of Central Persia perhaps extending up to and including Bactria, called the land of their origin

* Sel. XXIII, Part II.

† Sel. XIV below.

‡ Wb. 355.

|| See Encyc. Brit. (9th ed.) art. *Āryan* by Max Müller.

Airyana Vaējagh. The word *Vaējagh* is cognate with वीज and means "seed" or "origin." Hence the Pah. form *Ērān-Vēz* and the Mod. Pers. ایران ویز (*Īrānvēz*) shortened to ایران (*Īrān*).^{*} Kanga's reading °*jahi* gives the true original 7/1 of the noun. The reading adopted in the text (Geld.) is also probably accurate where the constant association with *Airyana* (an *a*-stem) may have shifted the declension of *Vaējagh* also to conformity with it. Note that comp. names in Av. decline both their members.

Ahunem Vairim—2/1 m.—The hymn beginning *Yabā-Ahu vairyō*.† This is the holiest of the three principal prayers of Z. religion and is supposed to have been even anterior to Z. The other two are those beginning *Aṣəm Vohu* ‡ and *Yēghe hatām*. ||

fr̥sṛāvayō—2/1 impf. caus. par. √*sru* with *frā*—प्राशाययः, didst chant aloud. • •

vībarəwāntəm—adj. to *Ahu. Vair*.—"with the pauses observed" (Reich.); "with proper divisions of metre and syllables" (Geld.); "spread abroad," i.e. "well-known" (Kan.). There is the tradition that the *Ahu. Vai.* chanted with proper attention to the accent and metre and with a proper understanding of its meaning equals in merit the chanting 100 *Gāthās* (Yas. XIX).¶ This supports Geld.'s view. The form is made up of √*bar* with *vī* and the suffix *vant*, like Skt. कृतवन्

āχtūirīm—2/1 adj.—Has been translated in various ways: (1) "spread in four directions"; (2) "that which is to be chanted four times (e.g. during the Haoma sacrifice, see Ven. X. 12, Yas. XXVII); (3) "chanted four times" (because this prayer belongs to the class of hymns known as *vaca caṅrusā-mrūta*, i.e. words that are to be spoken or repeated four times, see Ven. X. 11). The word is made up of *ā* + *tūirīm* (a variant of तुरीयम्) on the analogy of आदादम् **. The consonant *χ* between has had a remarkable history which will be evident on regarding the pedigree of *tuirī*—*tur*.:—

I-E. * *q̥atur* gives in the weak grade a form like **kturi-am* with probably a strong stress on the *i*. Both grades are represented in the Aryan branch: the strong one in चतुर, Av. *catur*; and the weak in तुरीय (*कुरीय), Av. *tuirī*—(**χtur*—). The *χ* therefore reappears whenever chance favours it, as here. The weakening of the first syllable, even up to the extent of complete disappearance, is paralleled also by other words in Av. Some of the most remarkable cases are G.A. *ptā* (Yas. XLVII. 2) and even G.A. *tā* (Yas. XLVII. 3.) for Ar. *pitā* (पिता); Y.A. *tūiryō* (Vis. XII. 15) पिद्यः; *tātā* (for **ptātā*) (Yt. VIII. 47) for पतिता; also *taṭ-āpō* (Yt. XIII. 44) for पतन्-आपः (possessing falling water).††

aparam—The other half, the second half (Reich. and others).—Once again (Kan.) अपरम्.

* See also Introduction.

† Sel. VII a. below.

‡ Sel. VII b.

|| Sel. II.

¶ Sel. VIII a.

** R.V. X. 14. 6, also Whit., § 1313 b.

†† Reich., § 172 a.

χraōdyehya—3/1 of com. of *χraōdya* adj. to *frasrūiti*. From *χru* (खृ) + *√dā* (दा) (cf. *yaozdā* above, 1), lit. to be angry, hence to be hard, to be obdurate. Also by a transference of meaning "to be loud (in voice)." Hence the word means "with (or in) a higher pitch" "with a louder chant" (Reich.)—"more intensely" (Kan.).

frasrūiti—3/1. Chanting. The ins. is the ins. of manner. Reich. § 447 c.

15. *zəmagūzō* (v.l. °*gūrō* Geld.) 2/3 of °*gūz*—Hidden under the earth—**आगुहः* (from **आगुह*). *zəma*—earth (cf. Skt. *आ*. Gr. *χαμαί*, Lat. *humī*, Russ. *zemlya*, Pers. *زمین* *zamīn*) and *gūza* p.pt. of *√guz*—(गुह) to hide. The comp. is really *aluk* for the *zəmar* is really the 7/1 *zamarə*. (Barth. Wb. 1665).

ākərənāvō—2/1 impf. atm. of *√kar* (क) with *ā*. When used with two accusatives (here *zəmar-guzō* and *vispe daēva*) it means "to make a person . . .". The sense is entirely causal—"Thou didst cause all the D. to be hidden underneath the earth."

vispe-daēva—2/3—all the demons. Note the form *daēva* with short vowel at the end. The form *daēvāyho* (देवासः) is also found. "In the *Gāthas*," says Reich. (A.R., p. 98), "the concept of *Daēva* is connected with *usig-*, *kavay-* and *karapan*.* The priests and professors of the old belief which designated the concept of God by *daēva* (Skt. देव), offered opposition, as may be easily understood, to the introduction of the Zoroastrian religion; cf. Yas. XXXII. 3. seq., 9. seq., XXXIV. 8. seq., XLIX. 1. seq. As the new belief was accepted the very meaning of *daēva* grew obscure and the 'false gods' became demons and evil spirits."

yōi—1/3 G.A. (Y.A. *yaē*)—Who—वे. Skt. *व* = G.A. *ōi* regularly.

para—before—पर.

ahmāt—5/1 of the dem. pron.—this (time), now—अहमात्.

virō-raoda—3/1—In human shape. *raoda* means shape or size, see also above 5. Note also the word *vira* in Av. means generally a human being whereas *nar-* means a hero: cf. *naire-manā* above 11.

apatayən—3/3 impf. par. *√pat* (पत) to run. Ran about. The *√pat* when denoting movement is used in the *daēva* sense. Note also the retention of the augment.

paiti—upon—प्रति. Governs the ins. here.

āya—3/1 of the pron. *ā*. *ā* + *ā* giving *āyā* (the *y* being euphonic), hence *āya* = अया

zəmā—3/1.

yō—refers to the *tūm* above, i.e. to Z.—यः (त्वं)

* See below 13, for explanations of these terms.

aojīštō—sup. 1/1—strongest—most possessed of power—**ओजिष्ठः**:

tancištō (v.l. *°jīštō* Kan.)—sup. 1/1 from *taṣm* (√*tak*, **तक्** to be swift, to be brave)—bravest. Cf. O.H.G. *degan*, “a hero”; Pers. **تاهم** (*tahm*) in the name **تاهمتان** (*tahmtian*) used in Shah. as an epithet of Rustam meaning “strong-bodied.” Probably the O. Per. word *taumā* (f.), “race” or “family” is also connected. This latter gives Mod. Pers. **تخم** (*tukhm*) in the sense of “pedigree” or “family.” The root **तच्** is also mentioned in Skt.

θwaxšīštō—most active, cf. Skt. **लक्ष्** as in **लक्ष्मीयसा वयसा** (RV. II. 33. 6). Is **लक्ष्** also connected?

āsištō (v.l. *asi°*) swiftest; cf. **आसि**.

aš-~~varəθra~~jāstāmō—sup. 1/1—In the highest degree victorious. For *aš* see above 8. *varəθrajāstama* is sup. of *varəθrajan* (**ववचन्**) “victorious.” The name *Varəθrayna* is used for one of the *Yazatas* also, found in Per. as **بهرام** (*Bahrām*).*

Mainivā—6/2 of *mainyu*—of the two Spirits. See above 8, under *Agro-mainyuš* **मन्वो**:

dāmān—2/3 used for 7/3 (Kan.)—Among the creatures (in the sense of **दृष्टि**). Barth. takes it to be 6/1 (the sg. implying a collective). Skt. **धामन्** is cognate.

16. *vayhuš*—1/1 of *vohu* or *vayhu*—Excellent—**वसु**. For the declension see note on *ayhēus* above 1. Cf. Ir. *fin*. worthy. Grk. *éús*—clever.

hudātō—1/1 of the p.pt. √*dā* (**धा**)—well-created—**सुधानः** (**°द्विन**)

aršdātō—1/1—Created by truth, truth-created. G.A. *arəš* is an adv. formed by adding suffix. -s to *arəz* (**वरजु**). Is **वरवि** cognate with *arəš*? Y.A. *arəš* truth.

vayhuš-dātō—I propose to read this as a compound meaning “created by (√*dā*=**धा**) *Vohu* (the Spirit of Truth or Excellence).” It is also notable that in the *Farvardin Yašt* (Yt. XIII. 119) the name *Vayhudāta* (cf. Skt. **वसुदन्तः**) is mentioned as being that of a great king and ruler.

baēšazyō—Health-giving (Kan.)—Healing (Reich.)—**भेषज्यः**:

hukərəfš—1/1 of *hukəhrp*—**वृक्षप**; cf. Arm. *Kerp*. The epithet means “well shaped,” “beautiful”; cf. the epithet *huraoða* used always of *Sraoša*.†

hvarəš—1/1, from *hu* (**हु**) + √*varəz* (**वज्**) to act. Cf. Pers. **ورزیدن** (*varzidan*) to practise and **ورزش** (*varzish*) custom, Goth. *waurkjan*, Eng. *work*—One who works for good.

varəθrajā—1/1—**ववचन्**—Victorious.

* Romanized as *Varharan* from the Pab. form *Varhrān*.

† Sel. II.

zairi-gaonō—1/1 from *zairi* (जरि) “yellow” or “golden” and *gaona* (गुण) “colour.” The word *gaona* is specially used with reference to the colour of the hair and it often used to mean “hair.” Probably the Skt. गुण (=string) is also connected. Cf. Af. غون (*ghūn*) hair, Pers. گون (*gūn*) colour. The idea of *zairi-gaonō* is exactly paralleled in RV. IX. 65. 8. चक्ष (sc. योमक्ष; वर्णम् .. जरिम्...).

nāmyāsūs—1/1—“with bending twigs” or “with soft twigs.” नमःयः *nāmi* is used adjectivally only here and is cognate to Skt. नम—Pers. نرم (*narm*) soft.

yaba χ^varənte vahistō—“If they drink of him he is the best”. (Reich.) Evidently refers to the Haoma being best for the body, because the soul is referred to in the next *pāda*.

χ^varənte is taken by Reich. as 3/3 pres. atm. √χ^var (خریدن *khurīdan*, to eat. Kan. takes it differently and perhaps better; *χ^varənte* as 4/1 of the pres. pt. used with a strong base* irregularly. And he translates “just as he is best for the drinker (i.e. for his body).” This balances well with the following.

urunaē-ca—4/1 of *urvān* (*ravān*) soul (Pers. رَوان *ravān* soul). This is the immortal part of the human being which is the true man as it were and responsible for all actions during the life on earth.† The origin of the word is doubtful. Kan. takes it to be connected with *uru* (उरु) “broad” (Dict.). Can it be connected with √var (वृ) to choose a sort of pres. pt. atm., referring to the freedom of the human soul to choose good or evil as he thinks best? This idea of free-will is a cardinal doctrine of the Z. faith. Jack. (A.R.) supports this view. The human being according to Z. theology is a complex of several principles which are variously enumerated.‡ According to Yas. XXVI. 4 there are: 1. *ahu*, 2. *daēna*, 3. *baodah*, 4. *urvān*, and 5. *fravaši*. Yas. LV. 1. however gives 1. *tanu*, 2. *azd*, 3. *uštāna*, 4. *kəhrp*, 5. *təviši*, 6. *baodah*, 7. *urvān*, and 8. *fravaši*.

pāθmainyōtəmō—He who best points out the way. Sup. of *pāθman*.

17. *nī ... mruyē*—1/1 pres. atm. √mru (मृ) to speak with *nī* (नि) to request (Kan.). Barth. takes it as “call down,” or “invoke.”

te—6/1 pron. enc.—Kan. trans. literally “I request (of thee) for thy fervour etc.” I think it better to understand here 6/1 used for 5/1 understanding “I request from thee”; cf. “I request of thee.”

zāire—8/1 m.—O Golden-one—जे जरे.

madəm—2/1 of *mad/da* (मद)—fervour, ecstasy. Barth. takes it to mean

* Cf. *fāyante* 4/1 (see Jack. A.G. § 291 paradigm).

† In P. Guj. the word मृत् has by a strange process come to mean the dead body or corpse.

‡ See Introduction, also Yas. XXVI. (Sel. III. below.)

|| For an attempted reconciliation of this twofold classification see Introduction.

literally intoxication due to drinking fermented Haoma juice (see Yas. X; Sel. XIX, Part II). Kan. translates "wisdom."

aməm—Power, strength. Ved. अम means impetus.

varəθraγnəm—Victory—वर्धन्स् is the nearest Skt. equivalent.

dasvarə (v.l. *dasvarəm*)—2/1 n.—Always used with *bažəza* and means "health" (of the body). Cf. the word *dāsmā-nī* * lit. "leading to health," i.e. "health-giving."

bažazəm—means of gaining health—भेषजम्

fradaθəm—success, advancement, progress forwards (Barth.); prosperity (Kan.). Used in the sense of वृद्धि according to Nair. Skt. trans. From *frā* + √*dā*.

varədaθəm (v.l. *verə*° Kan.)—increase, multiplying. Same word as वृद्धि. This probably refers to the increase in the numbers of the faithful, which Z. would naturally require as a boon from Haoma.

aojō—2/1 n.—बोजस्—strength.

višpō-tanūm—2/1 adj. n.—of the whole body—*विश्वतनु—note the use of *višpa* in the sense of "whole."

mastim—Kan. takes it as from *maz* (मद्) + *ti* (ति) and translates "greatness." Barth. translates "wisdom" connecting it with √*mand* to impress on the memory*, cf. Grk. *μαθεῖν* (*manthánō*) to ascertain, Goth. *memdon*. The word is evidently used in the sense of spiritual wisdom and the joy that comes of it. Cf. Pers. *مستی* (*mastī*) used by Hāfiz and other poets to mean religious ecstasy produced by drinking the "wine."

višpō-paēsəγhəm—all-embracing. Barth. translates "many-sided." Kan. takes it quite literally (cf. Skt. विश्वपेशयम्) "possessing all kinds of brilliance." *paēsa* (√*paēs*, पिंश् to colour, to adorn) means adornment or ornament (in the sense of भूषण); cf. *stəhrpaēsəγhəm* below 26. Mills translates much like Kan. "wisdom of all kinds which adorns." Dar. agrees more or less with Barth.

taγ—तत्—this (i.e. all that has been mentioned above).

yaθa—so that—यथा. This sense of *yaθa* ("so that," "in order that") when used in the final clause may be paralleled in the Veda also; cf. यथा वः सन्तु वाचवो अनाद्यथा यथाऽऽस्य (R.V. X. 103. 13), आ देवा हवोमहे... यथा भवेम नोऽदुर्वे अनायाः (R.V. VII. 97. 2).†

gaēθāhva—7/3. Cf. *raodēšva* above 5.—Among living beings (Barth.)—In (all) the lands (Kan.)—√*gay* to live (cf. above 3). The Per. جهن (*jehān*) earth is also cognate so also Af. فيلية (*ghīlī*) herds.

* Yas. X. 18. (Sel. XIX. Part II).

† Reich. § 765.

vasō-χšaθrō—1/1 adj.—lit. having power at will, used adverbially almost in the sense of “at will.” From *vasa*, will (√*vas*, to desire, to will; cf. वस्, वक्षस् etc.) and *χšaθra* power (चक्ष).

fracarāne—1/1 imp. atm.—√*car* (चर्) with *frā* (प्र), प्रचरे. Note the use of the atm.

*tbaēšō-*taurva**—1/1—*tbaēšō* enmity (द्वेषस्) and *taurva* (cf. तूर्वस्) from √*taurv* to overcome. Overcoming the enmity (or opposition to his mission).

drujəm-vanō—√*van* (वन्) to conquer—Conquering the unbeliever. This is to be regarded as an अवचुक् compound.

18. *taurvayeni*—1 1 imp. par.—√*taurv* (तूर्व)—I may overcome.

tbišvatām—6/3 of the enemies (× द्विषताम्).

tbaēšā—2/3 of *tbaēšō* (*tbaēšagh*—enmity). The plural indicates all acts of enmity.

yāθwām—6/3, the ending -ām here being irregular.—Of sorcerers, of wizards—यानुनाम्. Cf. Pers. جادو (jādū) magic.

pairikanām—6/3 of *pairikā* f.—Sorceress, witch. Cf. Pers. پری (peri). The origin of this word is obscure. Some take it from √*par* to seduce. Doubtless there is cross-influence of √*par* to fly (Per. پارید paridan to fly). The name is always used in Av. in conjunction with *gātu*, and it seems to apply to the female of this species of evil beings who seduce and lead astray followers of the Law and of the Z. faith.

sāθrām—6/3 of *sātar* tyrant (शासक)—from √*sah* (शस् - शास् to rule), lit. a ruler and by deterioration of meaning a ruler who abuses his power.* It is one of the tenets of the Z. faith to combat tyrants and to relieve the oppressed: cf. the phrase in *Nīrang-i-kustī-bastan*—“*duš-pādišāhā awādišāhā bāt*” (may tyrant rulers be broken).

kaoyām—6/3 of *kavi* (कवि)—The original meaning of the word is “royal” or “imperial,” and it has been used as a prefix to the names of the kings of the Kayanian † House. They are mentioned in Av. and in later Pers. works. The most famous of these are *Kava-Husrava* (Per. کیکاووس *Kaikhushrū*); Yt. IX. 18, and Yt. XV. 32: and *Kava-Vištāspa* (Per. کایگوسپ *Kai-Gustāsp*) who was the first to aid Z. in his work and who became his first and greatest disciple. But it was another branch of the same family of the Kayanians who were the most violent opponents of Z. In the Gāthās the name *Kaoy*—is used for these royal opponents of Z. who

* Cf. “O, it is excellent To have a giant’s strength; but it is tyrannous To use it like a giant.” (Shaks. *M. for M.* II. 2).

† This name *Kayanian* is also a derivative from *Kavi*. The Ved. कवि is cognate. कवि उशना is *Kava Us* of Av. and *Kāus* of Shah.

stood for the old *daēva* worship. Hence in Y.A. the word is used in an extended sense of any enemy of the Z. religion. The Pāz. form is *kik*. The word however is used in the very special sense of “those who are clever enough to see the truth but who would not”—“those who have eyes but would not see.”

karafnām-ca—6/3 of *karfan* (करफण). The word is used always in association with *kavi* in both G.A. and Y.A. The special signification is “those who have ears but would not hear.” The Parsis use in Guj. the word करफण in a sense much stronger than the Skt. करफण—in the sense of one wantonly cruel or one who delights in cruelty.

mairyanām-ca—See above 11. —Of serpents (Kan.)—*नारायाम्*—Mills trans. “murderers”; Dar. says “robbers”; Har. “the wicked”; Barth. “scoundrels.”

bizangranām—two-legged. The word *जङ्गल* is connected—*द्विजङ्गलानाम्*.

aṣṣmaoyanām-ca—*aṣṣa* + *maoy* (√*may*—*मुह्* to distort, to make silly)—Those who distort the holy truth (Barth.).

vahrkanām-ca—of wolves—*वृकाणाम्*. It is noteworthy that the wolf is the type of evil in the Av. while the dog is particularly sacred.

caθwara-zangranām—four-legged.

haēnyās-ca—6/1. The word *haēnā* (हेना) is a *daēva*-word. It would be better to take 6/1 as being used here by case attraction for 2/3 (object of *taurwayeni*). In fact the 2/3 form would be *haēnayā*.*

pərəθu-ainikayā—6/1—*पथनीकाया*:—With an extensive front.

davāiθyā—6/1 pres. pt. √*dav* to speak which is a *daēva*-word (cf. *yō davata* below, 24). Kan. takes √*dav* as identical with *dab* or **daw* (दम्) and so trans. “deceiving” *दवन्त्या*: or *दमन्त्या*:

patāiθyā—√*pat* when it means “to be in swift motion” is a *daēva*-word. On rushing; *पतन्त्या*: Cf. 15 above.

19. *imam*—2/1 m.—**इमम्*.

θwām—2/1 instead of 5/1 due doubtless to the attraction of the two words following.

paoirīm—first; almost used adverbially.

yānəm—gift—√*yam*, *यम्* (यञ्) to favour. Cf. *यनम् युज्यम्* RV.V. 67. 2.

jaiθyemi—√*jad*, *जद्*—to request, to ask—*جستن* (*justan*) to seek.

vahištəm ahūm—the best world—*वसिष्ठमहुम्*. The two words are invariably found together in the special sense of the world of the righteous here-

* Reich. § 367. Geld. mentions the v.l. *haēnayās-ca* which would rather spoil the metre.

after, i.e. paradise. The Pers. بهشت (*bihisht*) is used in exactly the same sense and is derived directly from *vahišta*; P. Guj. वेहेष्ट.

ašaonām—6/3—Some translate as “of the righteous” quite literally. But the par. in *jaidyemi* makes it better to translate “for the righteous.” The use of 6/3 for 4/3 is quite usual. Z. would be more likely to plead for others who lead the holy life than ask paradise for himself.

raocayham—bright—रोचयम्.

vispō-χ^vāθrēm—Barth. derives *χ^vāθrēm* from *hu* + *āθra* (breaking ?)* and translates “happiness.” Kan. derives from *√χ^van* to shine, to be radiant, to be happy + *-θra* suffix. In either case the comp. means “all glorious” Mills (Yas. LXVIII. 11).†

bitim—द्वितीयम्.

drvatātēm—health—*drva* (दृव) strong; *√dar* (धृ) to hold fast.

aīghāsa—(v.l. *aīghāse*, *aīghās-ca*)—6/1 f. of the pron. stem *a* equal to Skt. अस्माः.—The regular form should be *aīghā* and with an epenthetic *i*, *aīghāi*. The final *-sa* is remarkable. The form *aīghāsa* is regularly found with enclitics like *ca* and it occurs often enough to be regarded as a regular formation and the *a* may be due to metrical or euphonic reasons (cf. *kaśa-θwām* above, 3) or it may be due to the peculiarity of Av. having redundant vowels in the body of or at the end of words. If the reading *aīghāse* is accepted it may be regarded as influenced by the mas. *ahe*. The meaning of the word is more than a mere demonstrative. It has the force of a personal possessive pronoun—“this . . . of mine,” “this my . . .”

-tanvō—6 1—तनोः. The word is joined on to the preceding *aīghāsa* because of the intimate connection between the two.

θritim—third—तृतीयम्.

darəyo-jitīm—long existence, long continuance * दीर्घजीतिम् (जीविनम्).

ustānahe—6/1—The word is often translated as “life.” But what it really means is “the vital power . . . inherent in the body and lost at death” (Jack. J.A.O.S.). In Yas. XLIII. 16; *aśēm xyāt ustānā aōjānghavaŋ*, the 3/1 *ustānā* means “with full vigour.” In Afrin. I. 8, the word seems to mean the same as *jiti*:—*āfrināmi darəyo-χšāθrēm χšāθrahe*, *darəyo-jitīm uš-tanahe*. The nearest equivalent to *ustāna* seems to be प्राण. *ustāna* is to be carefully distinguished from *urvan*.

20. *tūrim*—fourth—तुरीयम्.

aešo—1 1—full of power, one who can do what he likes (*√iś*—इष्), hence happy (Barth.). Reich. translates “influential” or “efficient,” Kan. takes

yaθa-aēšo as a comp. and translates "according to my wish," "at will" (* यथेच्छः).

amavā—1/1—Possessing *ama* or power, courageous—अमवान्.

θrāfəδō (v.l. *θrāfδō*)—well-satisfied (✓*θrāf*—इष्ट). With my task accomplished.

fraχstāne—1/1 sub. (imp. ?) atm. ✓*stā* with *frā*—note the force of the atm.—I may move about. The insertion of the *χ* has to be noted after the उपसर्ग *frā*, and it is partly responsible for the shortening of the *ā* of *frā*. The insertion of the *χ* before syllables beginning with *s* + consonant is a common phenomenon in Iranian; cf. *χšvas*, *χstāt*, *spaχstīm*, etc.*

puχdam—fifth. The Skt. form पञ्चि† is connected and O.H.G. *funfto* seems also cognate. The derivation is probably in the following wise:—

I-E. **puŋkto*—A. **pukθa*—Av. *puχda*.

The suffix is the same as seen in Skt. चतुर्थ, षष्ठ. Av. shows only two ordinals in -*θda*, *puχda* and *haptəθa*. (Whit. mentions the rare forms पंचथ and षष्ठथ in Skt. also, § 487 c.)

vanat-pəšanō (v.l. °-*pišō*)—battle winning. The word *pəšana* is cognate with वृत्तन‡. It is, in the mas., also the name of a *daēva*-worshipper (see Yt. V. 109). A variant *parət* (fem.) is also found.† From ✓*parət* (पृत्त); cf. Pers. بُرد (*burd*) battle or war.

21. *χstūm*—sixth—षष्ठम्. For the *χ* see *fraχstāne* above, 20.

paurva—1/3 used almost as adv.—beforehand. The plu. form refers to the "we" implied in "*būidyōimaide*." See Reich. § 610.

tāyūm—thief or highwayman—तायुम्.

gadəm—Used almost always with *tāyu* in sense of a bandit or a murderer. The word seems to be the same as *gada* (गद) evil, unholiness. In the Pah. trans. of Yas. LXV. 8, the word is written *gakak*, but owing to the peculiarity of Pah. writing Dar. has read it *sak* and has translated "Seythian."||

būidyōimaide—1.3 opt. atm.—✓*baod*—बुध् to know, to be aware of. Note atm.

mā is used here with the opt. though the usual practice is to have *mā* with imp. and *nōiŋ* with opt. But in Y.A. *mā* is used with the opt. if the preceding coordinate clause is positive and is connected by way of contrast with the clause containing *mā*.¶ It may also be noted that the opt. is used here with almost the force of the imp. so that the translation should be with *let*, not *may*.

* Reich. § 174.

† Yt. XI. 15.

‡ Seen also in पञ्चिरथ a name of दक्षरथ

|| Études Iran. II, 355

¶ Reich. § 655.

ciš—Any one. A palatalised variant of the inter. pron. (1/1 m.) used indefinitely. The word is enclitic. RV. shows the form *किः* in phrases like *माकिः* and *नकिः*. The n. shows palatalisation in Skt.—*चिन्*. Cf. Lat. *quo*—*quisque*, Gk. *πο-τίς*, O. Bul. *kuto*—*cito*.

paurvō—The form is 1/1 referring to the sg. *ciš*. Used adverbially; see above *paurva*. Cf. also *paoiryō* above 14.

būiḍyaētā—3/1 opt. atm.—note atm.

vispe—1/3 in form but 2/3 in sense—The use of the form *vispe* is so frequent esp. in phrases like *vispe-daēva*, etc., that it is used for other cases as well, see 24 below. *विश्वे* for *विश्वान्*

22. There is a clear break in the argument here. The requests of Z. and the dialogue have ended.

aeibiš—3 3' of dem. pron.—*एभिः* ins. used for dat. (Reich. § 428). This is partly due to phonetic decay which is specially noticeable in Av. among all cases which have the *bh*-endings. Partly also this is due to the overlapping of cases due to the very rare use of ins. in Av.* This phenomenon is called *syncretism*.

yōi—1/3—*ये*. The regular G.A. form.

aurvantō—2/3—Horses (Kan.)—*अवन्ताः*. From *√ar*—*अ* to be swift. Reich. takes this as 1/3 and translates "Heroes." He explains the construction as "incorporation of the antecedent."†

hita—2/3 p.pt. pass. *√hi*—*हि*—to bind, to restrain—well-trained. The word is used in du. or pl. and refers to teams of horses.

taχšanti—urge. The use of *√taχš* in this sense is probably due the suffix *-s* added to the root *tak* (to run) almost like a *विकरण*.

arənāum—2/1—Battle, victory. The acc. of the goal to be reached or attained. Kan. translates "race-course" which is not at all unlikely as the Iranians in common with the Indians had a great love for racing and for horses. Barth. (Wb. 196) says the origin is uncertain, but he says it is probably cognate with the form *arənāvi* (see above 3) and that it probably meant that which is gained, i.e. victory. Cf. O. H.G. *ernust*.

zāvare—2/1 n.—Strength—Pers. *زور* (*zaor*) strength—The word *zavah*‡ (Power) is probably connected. Kan. postulates *√zu* to be strong—Skt. *जवस्* (⁹).

baχšaiti—grants. *√baχš*—*भक्ष* (though not used in that sense) a derivative from *√baj* with *-s* suffix. Originally the word seems to have meant "to divide." Pers. *بخشیدن* (*bakhshidan*) to grant.

āzīzanāitibiš—3/3 pres. pt. f. *√zan* (*जन्*) to bear + *ā* conjugated in the third or reduplicating class—the ins. is used for dat.||—To those who are bearing.

* Giles, Phil. § 305.

† § 738.

‡ Yas. XXXIII, 12.

|| Reich. § 470 calls this "a mistake" of the Y.A. dialect.

dadāiti—grants; (lit.) makes $\sqrt{dā}$ (दा).

ṣāetō-puθrīm; (v.l. - $\theta rām$.)—2/1 n. Possession (i.e. birth) of a brilliant son— $\sqrt{kṣi}$ to shine (cf. Skt. क्षा). Kan. translates as if he had adopted this reading—"a brilliant son." It may be mentioned here that among orthodox Parsis even now the women recite the Haoma Yašt during pregnancy with the object of getting fine children.

ašava-frazaintīm—faithful descendants—religious progeny. The word is collective hence sg. Cf. Skt. प्रजा, Pers. فرزند (*farzand*), offspring.

taē-ciṭ—1/3 for 4/3 m. doubtless owing to the attraction of *yōi*, etc., following. The *ciṭ* is the indef. enc. pron. used here almost in the sense of all (lit. any one). Translate "all those who."

katayō (𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬌)—1/3—Ready, willing; from \sqrt{kan} —कन् (Barth. Wb. 433). In the Hb. air. D., however, he takes *yōi katayō* as "every one who" (cf. यत्किञ्चिन्) taking *kati* as an inter. pron. stem (cf. कनिषय). Kan. takes it to mean "householders" which is certainly better, because the word *kata* is found in Ven. II. 26 to mean "house" or "dwelling place." In Ven. V. 10, 11, the word means a sunken receptacle dug out in the floor to receive the dead body before its final removal. The origin would be from \sqrt{kan} (कन्) to dig. Cf. Pers. کاد (*kad*) house, Goth. *hēthyō* room. The reading *patayō* has also been suggested.

nasko-frasāghō—1/3—Studying the scriptures (Barth.)—Teaching the scriptures (Kan.). The Nasks were the collections of the ancient Av. texts which were contained in 21 separate books or groups of texts. These are enumerated in Pah. books.* *frasāghō* from $\sqrt{sāś}$ —शास् with *frā*—प्र

āphante—3/3 pres. atm.—lit. sit— $\sqrt{āh}$ —आस्—to sit. The word is often used to denote habit or continuous action so here the translation is "are occupied." Note atm.

spānō—2/1 of *spānah* n.—Holiness (Barth.). Wisdom (Kan.). Probably the word *spānta* is connected; cf. Lith. *szvēntas*, O. Bul. *světīc*, holy.† The word *spitama* may also have been a variant of *spāntama*.

23. *tās-ciṭ*—1/3 for 4/3 f. as in *taē-ciṭ* above 23. Also *ciṭ* has the same force.

kaininō—1/3 of *kainin* f.—Virgin, unmarried girl. The stems *kainyā* and *kainī* are also found. Barth. states that the form in -ī is the most correct. Cf. Skt. कन्या; in Caspian dialects *kina* means "daughter."

āphaire—3/3 pres. atm. $\sqrt{āh}$ —आस् to sit—See above, 23, *āphante*. The -r- ending in atm. is used in Av. more often than in Skt. (Reich. § 257).

darəyem—adv.—for a long time. Originally a case form 2/1 (दौर्घम्). Cf. चिरम्.

* See Introduction for details.

† Barth, Wb. 1621.

ayrvō—1/3 adj.—unmarried. Kan. (Dict.) explains the derivation as from *a* (negative) + *γru* (गुरु, husband). Reich. needlessly takes *γru* as meaning “heavy” or “pregnant.”

haiθim—true, faithful—चतुष्. Barth. in quoting this passage (Wb. 1521 under *rāda* and also 1761) marks this word (*haiθim*) as doubtful and proposes to read *paiθim* (पतिम्). This seems somewhat unnecessary, because *rāda* means nearly the same thing.

rādēm—lover, husband. Probably adj. here, “loving.” From $\sqrt{rā}$ द/द (राध्) to protect. The Skt. राधा might be a feminine cognate.

mošū—quickly (Kan.), as soon as (Reich.)—Ved. मधु.

jaidyamnō—pres. pt. pass. \sqrt{gad} (गद्) or \sqrt{jad} , to speak—being requested, being entreated यक्षमानः.

huxratuš—1/1—the wise one (Reich.)—the powerful one (Kan.)—दुष्टतुः. Perhaps the clause *mošū . . . huxratuš* goes with each sentence beginning from *Haoma aēibiš yōi aurvanto . . .* (22)

24. *təm-ciθ*. The *ciθ* here is probably emphatic. May be translated “him indeed.”

Kərəsānīm—Name of an opponent of the Māzdayasna faith. He is the Aryan कश्चानुः who in the Veda figures as a guardian of Soma. In the Av. he becomes the opponent of Haoma and consequently represents the evil side. The Pah. version gives the name as *kalasyākā**, and this word has had a strange history. In the later Pah. writings it denotes the Christians. There is also the word *kilisyā* (from Grk. ἐκκλησία) which means a Christian church, and no doubt the similarity of sound helped the similarity in meaning as well. But this has confused some of our ancient commentators. Nair., for instance, explains the present use as referring to the Christians, which is obviously improbable. The Pah. word *kalasyākā* is used in the *Bahman Yašt* (III. 3-5) as meaning Christian and in the same Yt. (II. 19) we get the phrase *Akandgare kilāsyākih*, i.e. “Alexander the Christian.” This obvious anachronism is due to the loose employment of the epithet to denote any non-Persian †, like the word यवन in India or رومی (*rūmī*) in Mod. Per. Alexander having been the arch-enemy of Persia and the Z. faith the Persians of the Sassanian period naturally applied to him the term by which they used to designate their contemporary foes of the Christian empire of Byzantium. ‡

apa—from, अप.

xšaθrēm—2/1—power. K. was dethroned by Haoma and driven from his kingdom.

nišādayat—3 1 impf. caus. par. \sqrt{had} (हद्) + *ni* (नि)—lit. “made to sit down” i.e. “cast down” or “dethroned.”

* Barth., Wb. 470, marks the word as doubtful and reads *Kareyak*.

† Very probably this has led Dar. (Z.A. II. 93.) to say that *Kərəsāni* symbolises Alexander and the Greek domination in Persia.

‡ Modī Dict. under *Kərəsāni*.

raosta—3/1 s-aor.—Kan. derives from \sqrt{raod} (𑀲𑀸𑀓, 𑀲𑀸𑀓) to grow and translates “grew big” or “swelled up” (with his great schemes). Barth. gives the \sqrt{raod} (𑀲𑀸𑀓) to weep or “to bewail.”

ṣṣaθrō-kāmya (𑀲𑀸𑀓)—Kan. takes this as 7/1 and translates “in pride of sovereign power.” Reich. following Barth. translates “with apprehension for his reign,” i.e. fearing he may lose his kingdom. He takes it as 3/1 and explains the case as “instrumental of cause” (§ 451). In either case the ending is irregular. • If 7/1 we can quote parallel examples like *zastaya*, *nmānaya*, etc., the termination being *-aē + a* (*ā*) postposition (cf. *raodaēṣva* above, 5, for the postposition).* If we accept 3/1 we have to explain the form as *°lāma + ā*, the *y* being euphonic (Reich. § 333, where he traces the influence of the pron. dec. in such forms).

daṣṣata—bragged—see *davāibya* above 18.

mē goes with *daiṣṣhava* later on in the next line.

apām—adv.—hereafter, henceforth—originally a case form 2/1 of *apa* cf. *darayam* above 23.

āθrava—priest—𑀲𑀸𑀓𑀲𑀸𑀓 is connected. Kan. derives from *Ātar* (fire) + \sqrt{van} (𑀲𑀸𑀓) to win. •

aiwiṣṭiṣ—Teaching or study (especially religious). Reich. takes it as 2/3 f. obj. of *varaiḍyē*. He derives it from \sqrt{ah} (𑀲𑀸𑀓) with *aiwi* (𑀲𑀸𑀓) and compares 𑀲𑀸𑀓𑀲𑀸𑀓. The suffix in this case is *-ti*. Kan. translates “teacher” (1/1 in apposition to *āθrava*) and derives from *aiwi-stā* (𑀲𑀸𑀓𑀲𑀸𑀓).

varaiḍyē—dat. inf.—for the spreading or increase of—𑀲𑀸𑀓𑀲𑀸𑀓. Kan. takes the words “of the Māz. religion” as the obj. understood of this inf.

daiṣṣhava—7/1 of *daiṣṣhu* (*daṣṣyu*) country, kingdom. See also below 27.

carāt—3/1 subj.—May go about.

vispē—1/1 in form but 6/3 in sense because it is syntactically connected with *varaiḍinām*.

vanāt—3/1 subj. \sqrt{van} (𑀲𑀸𑀓), to win, to overcome; governs gen.

nī . . . janāt—3/1 subj. \sqrt{jan} (𑀲𑀸𑀓) + *nī*, to strike down, to overthrow.

25. *uṣṭa*—Hail!—Here interjection. The word *uṣṭā* means “health.” Probably connected with $\sqrt{uṣ}$ (𑀲𑀸𑀓) to be warm, referring to the heat of the human body. Skt. 𑀲𑀸𑀓 is also probably cognate.

χ^vā—3/1 of pron. *χ^va*—by (thine) own—𑀲𑀸𑀓 (𑀲𑀸𑀓)

aojaṣṣha—3/1 of *aojaṣṣh*—𑀲𑀸𑀓𑀲𑀸𑀓. Note the shortening of final vowel regularly found in Y.A. except where the Gāθ. form is consciously or unconsciously imitated, as in *χ^vā* above.

apivatake—2/1 pres. atm. $\sqrt{vaṭ}$ (*vaēṭ*) + *aipi* to know or understand. The Skt. 𑀲𑀸𑀓 (𑀲𑀸𑀓) is perhaps cognate but the “pada” is different.

* Kan. A.G. § 96, p. 69; also Jack. A.G. § 239 and even Reich. § 331.

pourvacām—6/3—lit. “many sayings” (Barth.). Full (spoken) words (पुर वचन, Kan.), i.e. words replete with meaning.

arəzuχdanəm—Rightly, i.e. truthfully, spoken—अरुज्जानाम्.

pairi-frāsa (ān.)—3/1—lit. “by asking round,” by cross-questioning. ✓*paras*—पश्च, to ask. The Eng. *paraphrase* suggests both the sound and the sense. Skt. *परिप्राश्न, the form प्रतिप्राश्न, occurs in AV.*

pərəsahi—पश्चसि.

vācim (v.l. °cim, °cam)—speech—वाचम्.

The idea here is that H. trusts his worshippers to be truth-speaking and straight, hence he does not test them in round-about ways.

28. Geld. prints this as prose, though the passage can bear being represented metrically by putting proper stops—it must however be confessed that most of these divisions would be either too long or too short. These suggested divisions are indicated in the text.

frā . . . barāt—3/1 impf. par. augmentless—brought (forth), प्राभरत्.

paurvanim—2/1 adj.—the first.

aiwyāghəm—The sacred girdle made of 72 strands of wool twisted together into three bundles of 24 each and then woven together into a thin hollow tape-like shape. This is the sacred girdle called *Kusti* which is worn by every Z. from the day of the investiture to the moment of death. The ceremony of investiture takes place between the ages of 7 and 15 and was probably nearer the higher limit in ancient Iran. This ceremony is called the *Navajōt* (lit. new-birth) and corresponds exactly to the उपनयन- ceremony in India. Cf. also the idea implied by दिज. One contrast may be pointed out, namely that while the Hindu यज्ञोपवीत is worn across the shoulder the *Kusti* is worn round the waist—more like the मेखला. From ✓*yāh* (याश्) + *aiwi* (अभि) to wrap around. See also Introduction.

stehr-paēsanham—Star-begemmed. The -hr- in *stehr* is noticeable owing probably to a strong stress accent on the first member of the comp.† Skt. *खारक (तारक), cf. also क्षुभिः‡. The phrase is mostly used with *Mainyū-tāstəm*. There is probably here a reference to the ancient Aryan myth about Orion's belt. Tilak in his *Orion* || discusses this passage at length and comes to the conclusion that the girdle of Haoma and the यज्ञोपवीत mentioned in the verse of the *Brahmopanishad*, यज्ञोपवीतं परमं पवित्रं प्रजापतेर्यत्सृजं पुरस्तात्, are identical with the belt of Orion, star-studded like that of Haoma.

Mainyū-tāstəm—woven by the (two) Spirits. ✓*tās*—तन्—Prs. تواشیدن (*tawashīdan*) to weave. The long ū fits the metre better but Geld. has it short.

vayuhim—excellent.

* प्रतिप्राश्नो अहि—S.B.E. XLII. p. 305.

† Whit. § 1273.

‡ क्षुभिरन्या विपिषे (the other—the Night—decked herself with stars) RV. VI. 40. 3. || Chap VI.

daēnām—Religion. Pers. دین (*dīn*) religion. Barth. is doubtful about the origin. Geld. connects it with $\sqrt{dāy}$ —to see, to observe and compares Skt. दी, and Prs. دیدن (*dīdan*) to see. There is another *daēnā* (which means the inner Ego or conscience) which also may be connected.* The word is in apposition to *aiwyāyham*.

māzdayasnim—Mazdā (God)-worshipping. *Mazdā* + *yasna* (यज्ञ), \sqrt{yas} (यज्) to worship. The Religion of Mazdā is as it were the protecting girdle of Haoma.

aat—Since then.

aīghe—6/1 m.—Refers to the *daēnā*-girdle of H. The gen. with p. pt. in -ta is a notable construction; cf. *kainina anupaēta mašyānām* (maidens not wedded to men), Yt. XVII. 55.† Note that the identical form is used for fen[•] as well.

aiwyāstō—1/1 p. pt. m. $\sqrt{yās}$ + *aiwi*—invested with (the girdle), or entrusted with (the commandments of the religion). Both the meanings seem to be implied in the phrase *aīghe aiwyāstō* which may refer to either *aiwyāyha* or *daēnā* equally well. Probably it has been meant to be understood thus in this double sense.

baršnuš—2/3 governed by *paiti*—heights. $\sqrt{barəz}$ — * बर्द्ध (वर्ध) — to increase.

paiti—upon—प्रति

gairinām—6/3—of the mountains—गिरौषाम्

drājaghe (द्रा.)—adv.—For a long time. Orig. 2/1 of *darəya* (Reich.). Barth. takes it to be an inf. 4/1 of \sqrt{drag} to hold fast, to guard.‡ Kan. takes it as 4/1 of *drājaghe*. The meaning is “through the ages.” For the form, cf. चिराय also Per. دراز (*darāz*) long.

aiwiḍāitiš-ca (ईति.)—2/3 f.—Words (Reich.)—Mandates (Kan.). Defence (Wolff).|| Barth. in Hb. air. D. translates “vestments,” but in Wb. gives “words.” The word seems cognate with अभिधान

gravas-ca (ग्र.)— \sqrt{grab} —ग्रभ्—to hold, to grasp. Cf. Eng. *grip*.—Support or stay (Wolff); sentences (Barth.). Kan. translates “hymns” from \sqrt{gar} —गृ—to sing.

māṇrahe—6/1—Of the Scripture—मन्त्रा would convey fully the sense.

The last sentence from *aat aīghe* . . . etc. has been variously rendered :

“Thenceforth, invested with this (girdle) thou hast made thy abode on the tops of mountains (and there thou recitest) through the ages the commands and hymns of the Scriptures” (Kan.)¶

* Barth. Wb. under *daēna*. † Reich. § 501. ‡ Wb. 774. || Trans. of Avesta.

¶ Kh. A. b. M. The above is however a free rendering of the Gujarati version of Kan.

"Thenceforth . . . mountains, (thou who art) the stay and support (Schirm und Stutz) of the Scriptures" (Wolff).

"Thenceforth . . . mountains, in order to guard the words and sentences of the Scriptures." (Barth.)*

27. *nmanō-paite*—8/1—For *nmana* see above 13.

vīs-paite—*vīs* orig. means a collection of families or houses, i.e. a clan—Lord of the village, Kan. translates *vīs* by "street." See above 7.

zantū—Province. Kan. says "town" (cognate with जन्तु).

daiŋhu-paite—Lord of the land or of the country—Pah. *dehpat*, Pers. دهان (dih) land, دهان (dihkân) a landholder.

Note the natural arrangement of the political organisation in Persia, "House," (in a political sense) is the smallest of the political units of the old Iranian race, which are thus divided: *nmāna*, "house," (family) *vīs* "village" (union of families), *zantū* "country" (union of villages), *daiŋhu*—"land" (union of countries).†

The climax in the arrangement *nmāna*, etc., is noteworthy and is frequently repeated throughout the Avesta.

spanayha—3/1—See *spāno* above 22. Through holiness or through wisdom.

vaēdya°—Wisdom; √ *vaed*—वेद (विद्) to know.—विद्या°.

amāi-ca—4/1—For courage.

māvōya . . . *tanuye*—4/1—for my own body. *māvōya* is a variant of *māibya* (*मयिम्, मयिम्). The word *tanu* is often used as an emphatic ref. pron., cf. Gāth. xxx. 2. (Sel. xxxiv, Part II). The *māvōya* is clearly an instance of case-attraction. This word ought to have been *mana* (6/1).

upa-mruye—1/1 pres. atm.—I invoke. Note the atm., "I think of thee" i.e. "I remember thee" (Kan.). √ *mru* might be the Skt. मृ

θrimāi-ca—4/1—Strength, courage, satisfaction. Kan. translates "happiness."

yaŋ introduces an explanatory adj. or phrase—Reich. § 749. For the n. gender see above 4.

pouru-baoxšnahe (ān.)—6/1 for 4/1 referring to *θrimāi*. Barth. translates "bringing salvation or succour to many"; √ *baog*, to save. In a note however (Wb. 901) he says that if there were another passage where the word occurred one could be able definitely to say whether or not there was any connection with मुक्ति (and भक्षण?).‡ Kan. translates "full of joys."

28. *vi . . . bara*—Take away from—विभर

θbaēšōbiš—3/3 for 5/3 according to Kan., "from the wickednesses." Reich. says that 3/3 is used instead of 2/3 (§ 427) and translates "take away the enmity."

° Wb. 520.
for "country."

† Reich. A. R. p. 90. Note that he uses "country" for "province" and "land"
‡ In Skt. भुञ्ज may also be used in the sense of protecting.

manō—2/1 n.—Mind or thought (Kan.). Reich. takes it to mean “plot” or “design” and the other German scholars are of the same opinion. They translate “(take us) away from the designs of the angry ones.” There are syntactical objections to this however, as *vi. . bara* according to its natural sense should govern the abl. of the thing from which the worshipper wants to be taken away. Kan. seems therefore more correct and more natural.

gramantām (v.l. °*mantām*)—6/3—Angry or passionate (Barth.); √*gram* to be hot; cf. *𐬔𐬀*. Pers. *𐬔𐬀* (*gharm*) hot; O.H.G. *gram* (angry). Eng. *warm* is also cognate. Kan. derives from *gar* (*𐬔𐬀*) poison and translates “poisonous (-minded)” or wicked. “Angry enemies” (Mills). The gen. refers to the *𐬔𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀* above.

ciš-ca—And whosoever. The *ciš* is 1/1 m. while *cit* is 1/1 n. See *mā-ciš* above 21.

ahmi—7/1 n.—in this—*𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬀*. Found also as *ahmaya*.

aighe—7/1 f.—in this—*𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬀* (*𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬀*).

vīsi (v.l. *vīse*)—7/1.

zanlvō—7/1. The regular Av. loc. ending for *māstem*s in *-u* is *-au* (cf. *𐬔𐬀*). In the G.A. however we occasionally get *𐬀*, e.g. *𐬔𐬀𐬀*.* In Y.A. this becomes regularly *-ō* which combining with the *-u* gives *-vō*. The *-v-* may be occasionally dropped, e.g. *haētō*—*𐬀𐬀𐬀*—on the bridge. This *-ō* is probably in orig. the 6/1 ending. (Jack. A.G. § 265).

aēnaghā—1/1 of °*hvanā*—lit. full of injury, harmful. Revengeful (Kan.).

gaurvaya—2/1 imp. par. *gā'araw* (*grab*)—*𐬔𐬀* (*𐬔𐬀*) to take away.

-hē—enclitic 6/1 of the pron. 3rd per.—See *šē* below.

pādave—5/2—**pada* + *wya* (Ar. **bhya*—*𐬔𐬀𐬀*)—From (his) legs—A *daēva*-word.

pairi . . . varənūidi—2/1 imp. par. √*var* (*𐬔𐬀*) + *pairi* (*𐬔𐬀*)—lit. turn up-side down—**𐬔𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀*. Take away or destroy (Kan. and others).

-šē—enclitic 6/1. *he* and *šē* are enclitics used in Y.A. frequently both for 4/1 and 6/1 and in a few cases *hē* seems to be used for the plu. (Jack. A.G. § 395).

uši—lit. “ear,” hence intellect. Per. *𐬔𐬀𐬀* (*hūsh*) intellect. When used literally to mean “ear” the word is in the *ahura*-sense, the *daēva*-word is *karəna* (*𐬔𐬀𐬀*).

skandem . . . karənūidi—lit. reduce to disorder (to pieces), i.e. completely destroy—*𐬔𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀* (cf. *𐬔𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀* RV. VI. 53. 7-8).

29. *zbaraθaēibya*—*𐬔𐬀*.) 4/2 of °*raθa*—leg (*daēva*). √*zbar* (*𐬔𐬀*) to be crooked.

* Yas. XLVIII. 4. Probably *ā* or *āu* was the older pronunciation of the Skt. *𐬔𐬀* as well.

fratuyā—2/1 pres. opt. par.—√*tu* (तु) + *frā* (फ्रा)—Give strength. Pers. توانیدن (*tawānidan*) to be able.

gavaēibya—4/2—hands (*daēva*). *zasta* (जस्ता) is the corresponding *ahura*-word.

aiwi-tūtuyā—2/1—pft. opt. par. √*tu*+*aiwi*, to strengthen.

zām—2/1 f.—The earth. *zama* is another form.

mā . . . *vaēnōi*—3/1 opt.—The opt. 3 per. with *mā* is remarkable. The sense is almost imp.—“let him not see” rather than “may he not see” Cf. verse 21 above. √*vin*—वेणति—Pers. بین (*bin*) saw.

Note the sudden transition from 2 per. to 3 per.

ašibya—3/2—see above 8.

gām—Taken by some to be a var. of *zām* in the sense of “creation”, so Kan. The word *gəuš urvān* (Gāθ. Ahu. XXIX. 1.) is used to denote “the spirit of creation.” (Cf. the idea of गौषाक्ष in Skt. mythology.) Some people take it literally to mean “cattle.” See Sel. XV below.

aēnahaiti—den. verb, from *aenah* (एनस्) injury—does harm, injures. The verbal form occurs only here.

kəhrpəm—2/1 of *kərəf* f.—Body. See *hu-kərəfš* above 16. The cognate Skt. कर्ष has only the 3/1 कर्षा found in Veda.

30. In this and the following two *kardehs* some portions are given by Geld. as prose. They have been arranged here metrically to indicate where rhythm requires the break, the metre however does not always come right. See also 26 above.

paiti—प्रति—against, with gen.

ažoiš—6/1 of *aži*—serpent.

simahe—6/1 adj.—dreadful (Kan.)—Reich. takes it as a noun and translates “a horror” i.e. “a horrible thing.”

višō-vaēpahe—emitting poison, √*vaēp*—वप्—to emit.

nāšəmnāi—4/1 of pt. of *s*- aor. atm. √*naš* (नश्) to perish, to be destroyed (Barth. Wb. 1055). The sense here, says Reich., is future (§ 669). Hence the translation given both by Reich. and Barth. is “(for fear) lest the righteous be destroyed.” But in Hb. air. D. Barth. takes *nāšəmnāi* as pres. pt. atm. and translates “for the protection (or welfare) of the righteous.” This is from √*naš* to attain, to reach. Kan. takes it in the latter manner.

ašaone—4/1 instead of 6/1 by case-attraction.

vaḍarə—2/1 n.—weapon √*vaḍ* (वध्) to slay.

jaidi—2/1 imp. √*jan* (*zan*)—जन् to slay, to strike—Smite -^x जधि (जधि).

vivarəzdavato (अπ.)—6/1 of p. pt. par. √*varəḍ* (वध्) to increase, hence “One who has grown great,” i.e. proud (Barth.). Kan. takes it as act. p.

pt.* $\sqrt{\text{varaz}}$ (to work) with prefix *vi* (against) and translates “working against (the Law of God).”

$\chi rvi\dot{s}yatō$ —6/1—Cruel, bloodthirsty. Connected with $\kappa\rho\iota$; $\chi r\ddot{u}$, raw flesh. The Eng. word *raw* is also cognate.

$zazarānō$ —6/1 pft. pt. $\sqrt{\text{zar}}$ (जृ, हृषीते) to be angry. Angry, fuming. Pers. آزردان (*āzurdan*) to injure is cognate.

31. $drvatō$ —6/1 of *drvant*; see above 8.

$sāstar\dot{s}$ —6/1 of $sāstar$ $\sqrt{sās}$ (शास्) to rule—Oppressor or tyrant. The word $sāstar$ (शास्त्र) lit. meant “prince” or “ruler” then it degenerated in meaning. This, says Barth.,† is due to the influence of another $sāstar$ (connected with $sādra$, pain) on the meaning.

$aiwi\ddot{v}ōi\dot{z}dayantahe$ ($\ddot{a}\pi$.)—6/1 pres. pt. par. of *aiwi* + the comp. verb $vōi\dot{z}dā$ (to smite) to lift up (a weapon).‡ Here Barth. takes the phrase $aiwi\ddot{v}ōi\dot{z}dayantahe$ $kamərə\dot{d}em$ to mean “holding up (proudly) his wicked-head.” Kan. takes $kamərə\dot{d}em$ as abject of *paiti* and translates “against the head of the man who injures.” The comp. verb $vōi\dot{z}dā$ is from $\sqrt{\text{voj}}$ (to injure) + $\sqrt{dā}$ (cf. $yao\dot{z}dā$ above 1). Also connected is $vōi\eta na$ (विष्)—an inundation, Skt. वेम also seems cognate. •

$ahūm-mərəncō$ —6/1—Life-destroying or soul-destroying— $\sqrt{\text{mərənk/c}}$, मर्च , to twist, to torture (cf. Hin. मोरचाना , Guj. मचडुं). *mahrka* (above, 8) is cognate.

$mās$. . . $da\dot{b}ānahe$ —6/1 of pres. pt. atm. of the comp. verb $mā\dot{z}dā$ (*man* + $\dot{d}ā$), to bear in mind, to remember. The components of the comp. verb are separated, which is a common phenomenon in both Skt. and Av. Cf. $yā$ $zras-ca$ $dā\dot{t}$ (that she may believe and . . .) Yt. IX. 26.; यदस्मै धन (RV. II. 12. 5).|| See also Whit. § 1081ff. In later Skt. we get periphrastic forms (like the pft.) whose two components are separated by other words intervening—cf. $\text{नं पातयामि प्रथममासं पपात पश्चात्}$ (*Raghu*. IX. 61); $\text{प्रभञ्जयामि यो नृजयं चकार}$ (*Ib.* XIII. 36). Kan. offers another suggestion also ¶, that $mās$ -*vaca* may be taken as a *dvandva*-comp. (2/2) meaning “creed and word” and $da\dot{b}ānahe$ would then mean “holding (outwardly).”

$\dot{s}ya\ddot{o}b\dot{n}āi\dot{s}$ —3/3—In actions, lit. by actions.

$apayantahe$ —applying or observing. $\sqrt{\text{ap}}$ (आप) to obtain. In the -*aya* class means to follow out, to observe (Reich.).

32. $jahikayāi$ —4/1 for 6/1 of *jahikā*, a woman of ill-fame, a wicked woman. The peculiar use of dat. is paralleled in the Brāh. literature of Skt., e.g. क्रिय पय :

$yātumaityai$ —full of magic (for subduing her victims), full of wiles.

* A.G. § 563. This is formed by root + *ta* + *rat*. Cf. कृतवन् . See Whit. §§ 959-960.

† Wb. 1574. ‡ Cf. Gāth. *Abu*. XXXII. 10. (*var-cā vadarē vōi\dot{z}dā\dot{t} a\dot{t} āne* (and he who lifts up weapon against the righteous). || Reich. A.R. p. 100. ¶ Kh.A.v.b.M., in a footnote on this passage.

maoḍanō-kairyāi (ãπ)—delighting in (forbidden) pleasures, voluptuous. The word *maoḍana* (√*maod*, मुदु) has a bad signification. Cf. Eng. *lust* as contrasted with Ger. *Lust* (desire).

upaštā-bairyāi (ãπ). Barth. (Wb.) says it is obscure. The first part is evidently the same as उपस्थ (lap) and the second is from √*bar* (बृ) to bear. Kan. says شهوت پرست (*shahvat-parast*) lustful* which seems a very likely rendering.

yējhe—6/1—m. in form used for the f. this is doubtless owing to the greater use of the m. form. Whose, यस्याः.

frafravarti—3/1 pres. inten.—flutters or tosses about. √*fru*, फ्रु, to fly.

awrəm—1/1 n.—Cloud, अभ्रम्.

vātō-šūtəm—Wind-tossed, वातश्रुतम्; √*śu*—शु . . .

yať used merely to introduce the repetition which marks the end of the hymn or chapter (Reich.)†. May be translated by "verily," "indeed" or a similar mildly emphatic word. Kan. omits it in his trans.

hē—4/1 m. used for the f. referring to the *jahikā*; see above 28.

* Kh. A. b. M. He reads however *upasta*°.

† The Upanishads also show a similar repetition at the end of chapters.

II.

II.

Sraoša Yašt—Yasna LVII.

I. 2*. § Sraošem¹ ašīm², huraoðem³, | vereθrājanem⁴, frādat⁵-gaēθem⁶, | (ašavanem)⁷, ašahe⁸ ratūm⁹ yazamaide¹⁰.

yō¹¹ paoiryō¹² Mazdā¹³ dāmān¹⁴
yazata¹⁵ Ahurem¹⁹ Mazdām²⁰,
yazata²⁴ Pāyū²⁵ θwōrēštāra²⁶,

frasteretāt¹⁵ paiti¹⁶ baresmen¹⁷,
yazata²¹ Amešē²² Spēntē²³,
yā²⁷ vispa²⁸ θweresato²⁹ dāmān³⁰.

3. ahe¹ raya² χ⁷arenan̄ha³-ca⁴,
ahe⁹ yasna¹⁰ Yazatanām¹¹,
Sraošem¹⁶ ašīm¹⁷ zaθrābyō¹⁸,

aīñhe⁵ ama⁶ vereθrayna⁷-ca⁸,
tem¹² yazāi¹³ surunvata¹⁴ yasna¹⁵;
[Ašīm¹⁹-ca²⁰ Vañuhim²¹ berēzai-
tīm²²,

Nairīm²³-ca²⁴ Sañhem²⁵ hurao-
ðem²⁶;]†
vereθrajā³² Sraošō³³ ašyō³⁴.

ā²⁷-ca²⁸-nō²⁹ jamyāt³⁰ avañhe³¹

4. § Sraošem¹ ašīm² yazamaide³, | ratūm⁴ berezan̄tem⁵ yazamaide⁶, |
yim⁷ Ahurem⁸ Mazdām⁹, | yō¹⁰ ašahe¹¹ apanōtemō¹² | yō¹³ ašahe¹⁴
jaymūštemō¹⁵. | vispa¹⁶-sra¹⁷ zaraθuštri¹⁸ yazamaide¹⁹; | vispa²⁰-
ca²¹ hvarštā²² šyaōθna²³ (yazamaide)²⁴ | varštā²⁵-ca²⁶ varešyamna²⁷-
ca²⁸.

yeñhē²⁹ hātām³⁰ āat³¹ yesnē³²
Mazdā³⁶ Ahurō³⁶ vaēθa³⁷
yāñhām⁴⁰-cā⁴¹ tās⁴²-cā⁴³ tās⁴⁴-cā⁴⁵

paiti³³ vañhō³⁴
ašāt³⁸ hacā³⁹
yazamaide⁴⁶.

II. 5. Sraošem¹ ašīm².... ratūm⁹ yazamaide¹⁰.†

6. § yō¹ (paoiryō)² baresma³ frasterenata⁴, | θryaxētis⁵-ca⁶, pañca-
yaxētis⁷-ca⁸, | hapta-yaxētis⁹-ca¹⁰, nava-yaxētis¹¹-ca¹², | ā¹³-χēnūs¹⁴-
ca¹⁵ maiðyōi¹⁶-paitištānāš¹⁷-ca¹⁸; | Amešanām¹⁹ Spēntanām²⁰ yas-
nāi²¹-ca²² | vahmāi²³-ca²⁴, χānaoθrāi²⁵-ca²⁶, frasastayaē²⁷-ca²⁸.

ahe¹ raya²....tās⁴⁴-cā⁴⁵ yazamaide⁴⁶.||

III. 7. Sraošem¹ ašīm²....ratūm⁹ yazamaide¹⁰.

* The first "verse" is used only for liturgical purposes and so is omitted here. The real Yašt begins at 2. The Roman figures indicate the *kardehs* or sections. † See notes below.

‡ First sentence of 2, repeated here and elsewhere.

|| 3 and 4 repeated here and elsewhere.

II.

Sraoša Yašt—Yasna LVII.

I. 2. We worship¹⁰ Sraoša¹ the Holy², the beautiful³, the victorious⁴, bringing-prosperity⁵ to-the-world⁶, the Righteous-one⁷, of Righteousness⁸ the Master⁹.

Who¹¹ first¹² of the creatures¹⁴ of Mazda¹³, having-spread¹⁵ the Baras-man¹⁷, worshipped¹⁸ Ahura¹⁹ Mazda²⁰, worshipped²¹ the Holy²³ Immortals²², (and) worshipped²⁴ (both) the Maintainers²⁵ and Creators²⁶, who²⁷ (both have) fashioned²⁹ the whole²⁸ of (this) creation³⁰.

3. For his¹ splendour² and⁴ for (his) glory³, for his⁵ strength⁶ and⁸ for (his) victory⁷, (and) for his⁹ worship¹⁰ of the Worshipful-Ones¹¹, him¹² (do) I worship¹³ with well-sounding¹⁴ hymn¹⁵, Sraoša¹⁶ the Holy¹⁷, with libation¹⁹, and²⁰ the exalted²² Aši¹⁹-Vājuhi²¹, and²⁴ the beautiful²⁶ Nairya²⁵. Saṇha²⁶; and²⁸ may the victorious³² Sraoša³³ the Holy³⁴ come³⁰ unto²⁷ us²⁹ for help³¹.

4. We worship³ Sraoša¹ the Holy². We worship⁶ the exalted⁵ Lord⁴ who⁷ (is) Ahura³ Mazda⁹, who¹⁰ (is) the highest¹² in holiness¹¹, who¹³ (hath) reached-the-highest¹⁵ through holiness¹⁴. We revere¹⁹ all¹⁶ the commandments¹⁷ of-Zaraṇuštra¹⁸, we revere²⁴ besides²¹ all²⁰ well-performed²² deeds²³, both^{26*} (those) performed²⁵ and²⁸ (those that) shall-be-performed²⁷.

(That man) among-those-that are³⁰ of whom²⁹ Ahura³⁶ Mazda³⁵, through³⁹ (his) holiness^{38†}, knoweth³⁷, (that he) verily³¹ (is) better³⁴ as-regards³³ acts-of-worship³², (and those women) too⁴¹ of whom⁴⁰ (Ahura Mazda knoweth likewise)—(all such,) both^{43*} men⁴² and⁴⁵ women⁴⁴ (do) we revere⁴⁶.

II. 5. We worship¹⁰ Sraoša¹ the Holy². . . . the Master⁹. †

2. Who¹ first² spread⁴ the Barasman³, (consisting of) three-twigs⁵ and⁶ five-twigs⁷ and⁸ seven-twigs⁹ and¹⁰ nine-twigs¹¹ too¹², and¹⁸ (each was) up-to¹³ the-knee¹⁴ and¹⁸ (upto)-the-middle¹⁶ of-the-leg¹⁷ (in length), for the worship²¹ and²² for the praise²³ and²⁴ for the propitiation²⁵ and²⁶ for the glorification²⁷ as-well²⁸ of the Holy²⁰ Immortals¹⁹.

For his¹ splendour² and⁴⁵ women⁴⁴ (do) we revere⁴⁶. ||

III. 7. We worship¹⁰ Sraoša¹ the Holy². . . . the Master⁹.

* Lit. "and."

† I.e. because such a man leads a holy life of righteousness (aṣṭa).

‡ First sentence of 2, repeated here and elsewhere.

|| 3 and 4 repeated here and elsewhere.

8. § yō¹ paoiryō² Gāθā³ frasrāvayat⁴ | yā⁵ pañca⁶ (Spitāmahe⁷ ašaonō⁸)
Zaraθuštrahe⁹ | afsmanivān¹⁰ vacastaštivat¹¹ | mat¹²-āzaitīš¹³,
mat¹⁴-paitifrasā¹⁵; | Amešanām¹⁶. Spētanām¹⁷ yasnā¹⁸-ca¹⁹, | vah-
māi²⁰-ca²¹ xšnaoθrāi²²-ca²³ frasastayaē²⁴-ca²⁵.

ahel¹ raya²....tās⁴⁴-ca⁴⁵ yazamaide⁴⁶.

IV. 9. Sraošem¹ ašim²....ratūm⁹ yazamaide¹⁰.

10. yō¹ driyaoš²-ca³ drīvyās⁴-ca⁵ amavat⁶ nmānem⁷ hēm⁸-tāsti⁹
pasca¹⁰ hū¹¹ frāšmō-dāitīm¹²; +yō¹³ Aōšmem¹⁴ stereθwata¹⁵
snaithiša¹⁶,

vīxrumantēm¹⁷ x^varēm¹⁸ jainti¹⁹, at²⁰-ca²¹ hō²² bāda²³ katnerēθēm²⁴
jaγnvā²⁵ paiti²⁶ x^vanḥayeiti²⁷ yaθa²⁸ aojā²⁹ nāidyāhēm³⁰.
ahel¹ raya²....tās⁴⁴-cā⁴⁵ yazamaide⁴⁶.

V. 11. Sraošem¹ ašim²....ratūm⁹ yazamaide¹⁰,

taχmem¹¹, āsūm¹², aojaṇhvantēm¹³, darsitem¹⁴, sūrem¹⁵, berezaišim¹⁶.

12. § yō¹ višpaēibyō² (haca³) arezaēibyō⁴ | vavanvā⁵ paiti⁶-jasaiti⁷
vyaxma⁸ Amešanām⁹ Spētanām¹⁰.
ahel¹ raya²....tās⁴⁴-cā⁴⁵ yazamaide⁴⁶.

VI. 13. Sraošem¹ ašim²....ratūm⁹ yazamaide¹⁰,
§ yūnām¹¹ aojištem¹², yūnām¹³ tancīštem¹⁴, | yūnām¹⁵ θwaxšīštem¹⁶,
yūnām¹⁷, āsištem¹⁸, | yūnām¹⁹ paro-katarštemem²⁰.
paitištata²¹, Mazdayasna²²! Sraošahe²³ ašyehe²⁴ yasnem²⁵.

14. dūrāt¹ haca² ahmāt³ nmānāt⁴, dūrāt⁵ haca⁶ aiñhāt⁷ višet⁸.
dūrāt⁹ haca¹⁰ ahmāt¹¹ zantao¹², dūrāt¹³ haca¹⁴ aiñhāt¹⁵ daiñhao¹⁶,
+ ayā¹⁷ (iθyejā¹⁸) vōiynā¹⁹ yeinti²⁰, + yeñhe²¹ nmānaya²² Sraošo²³
ašyo²⁴ (voroθraja²⁵),

θrāfēdō²⁶ asti²⁷ paiti-zantō²⁸,

§ nā²⁹-ca³⁰ ašava³¹ frāyo³²-humatō³³ | frāyo³⁴-hūxtō³⁵, frāyo³⁶-hvarštō³⁷.
ahel¹ raya²....tās⁴⁴-cā⁴⁵ yazamaide⁴⁶.

VII. 15. Sraošem¹ ašim²....ratūm⁹ yazamaide¹⁰,

yō¹¹ vananō¹² kayadahe¹³, yō¹⁴ vananō¹⁵ kāidyehē¹⁶,
yō¹⁷ jañta¹⁸ daēvayā¹⁹ drujō²⁰, aš²¹-aojañhō²², ahūm²³-merencō²⁴;
yō²⁵ hareta²⁶ aiwyāxšta²⁷-ca²⁸ višpayā²⁹ fravōi³⁰ gaēθayā³¹.

8. Who¹ first² chanted-aloud⁴ the Gāṇās³, namely⁵ * the five⁶ (composed) of the holy³ Spitama⁷ Zaraṇuštra⁹, in-(the-proper)-measure¹⁰ (and) with-the-strophes-(properly)-arranged¹¹, with¹²-(their)-commentaries¹³ (and) with¹⁴-the-catechism¹⁵-(thereon), for the worship¹³ and¹⁹ for the praise²⁰ and²¹ for the propitiation²² and²³ the glorification²⁴ as-well²⁵ of the Holy¹⁷ Immortals¹⁶.

For his¹ splendour² . . . and⁴⁵ women⁴⁴ (do) we revere⁴⁶.

IV. 9. We worship¹⁰ Sraoša¹ the Holy² . . . the Master⁹.

10. Who¹ builds⁹-together³ a strong⁶ house⁷ (of refuge) both^{3†} for the needy-man² and⁵ for the needy-woman⁴ after¹⁰ the setting¹² of the sun¹¹; who¹³ smites¹⁹ with uplifted¹⁵ weapon¹⁶ the Demon-of-Wrath¹⁴ a mighty¹⁷ blow¹⁸, and²¹ then²⁰ assuredly²³ smiting²⁵ (on) his²² skull²⁴ breaks-(it)-to-pieces²⁶ ²⁷, just as²⁸ a strong²⁹ (man) (crushes) an oppressor³⁰.

For his¹ splendour² . . . and⁴⁵ women⁴⁴ (do) we revere⁴⁶.

V. 11. We worship¹⁰ Sraoša¹ the Holy² . . . the Master⁹, the brave¹¹, the swift¹², possessed-of-strength¹³, daring¹⁴, valiant¹³, (and) of-high-wisdom¹⁴.

12. Who¹ from³ all² battles⁴ cometh⁷ back⁸ victorious⁵ to the assembly⁸ of the Holy¹⁰ Immortals⁹.

For his¹ splendour² . . . and⁴⁵ women⁴⁴ (do) we revere⁴⁶.

VI. 13. We worship¹⁰ Sraoša¹ the Holy² . . . the Master⁹, the strongest¹² among[†] the youths¹¹, the bravest¹⁴ among the youths¹³, the most active¹⁶ among the youths¹⁵, the swiftest¹⁹ among the youths¹⁷, the foremost-in-loving²⁰ among the youths¹⁹. Desire-eagerly²¹, O worshippers-of-Mazda²², the worship²⁵ of Sraoša²³ the Holy²⁴.

14. Far¹ away² from that³ house⁴, far⁵ away⁶ from that⁷ village⁸, far⁹ away¹⁰ from that¹¹ province¹², far¹³ away¹⁴ from that¹⁵ country¹⁶, (do) the evil¹⁷ (and) destructive¹⁸ troubles¹⁹ fly^{20||}, in which²¹ house²² (village, province and country) Sraoša²³ the Holy²⁴, the victorious²⁵, (being) satisfied²⁶ is²⁷ welcomed²⁸, and³⁰ (where) the man²⁹ (becomes) holy^{31¶} (and) richer³²-in-good-thoughts³³, richer³⁴-in-good-words³⁵ (and) richer³⁶-in-good-deeds³⁷.

For his¹ splendour² . . . and⁴⁵ women⁴⁴ (do) we revere⁴⁶.

15. We worship¹⁰ Sraoša¹ the Holy² . . . the Master⁹, who¹¹ (is) the conqueror¹² of the heretic¹³, who¹⁴ (is) the conqueror¹⁵ of the follower-of-the-heretic¹⁶, who¹⁷ (is) the smiter¹⁸ of the devilish¹⁹ Druj²⁰, extremely²¹-strong²² (and) soul²³-destroying²⁴; who²⁵ (is) the warden²⁶ and²⁸ watcher²⁷ of all²⁹ the moving³⁰ world³¹.

* Lit. "which." † Lit. "and." ‡ Lit. "of." || Lit. "go."

¶ In consequence of the presence of Sraoša.

16. +yō¹ anavaṇhabdemnō²
(zaēnaṇha³)

+yō¹ anavaṇhabdemnō³ (zaēnaṇ-
ha⁹)

yō¹³ vīspem¹⁴ ahūm¹⁶ astvaṇtem¹⁶
pasca²⁰ hū²¹ frāšmō-dāitīm²².

17. yō¹ nōit² pascaēta³ huš^vafa⁴,
+yas⁹-ca¹⁰ Spentō¹¹(-Mainyuš¹²),
yas¹³-ca¹⁴ Anrō¹⁶,

§ yō¹⁹ vīspāiš²⁰ ayān²¹-ca²² | χšafnas²³-ca²⁴ yūidyeyit²⁶ | Māzanyāšibyo²⁹
(haša²⁷) daēvaēibyo²⁸.

18. hō¹ nōit² tarštō³ frānāmāite⁴
frāš⁵ ahmāt⁹ parō¹⁰ vīspe¹¹ daēva¹²
tarštō¹⁶ temaṇhō¹⁷ dvarenṭi¹⁸.
ahe¹ raya²...tās⁴⁴-cā⁴⁶ yazamaide⁴⁶.

nipāiti⁴ Mazdā⁵ dāmān⁶,

nišhaurvaiti¹⁰ Mazdā¹¹ dāmān¹²;
ereḍwa¹⁷ snaiθiša¹⁸ nipāiti¹⁹

yaṭ⁵ Mainyū⁶ dāmān⁷ daiḍitem⁸,

hišārō¹⁶ ašahe¹⁷ gaēθā¹⁸ :

θwaēšāt⁵ parō⁶ daēvaēibyo⁷;
anusō¹³ taršta¹⁴ nemanṭe¹⁵,

VIII. 19. Sraošem¹ ašim²...ratūm⁹ yazamaide¹⁰,

§yim¹¹ yazata¹² Haomō¹³ frāšmiš¹⁴ | baēšazyō¹⁵, srirō¹⁶, χšaθryō¹⁷,
(zairi¹⁸-dōiθrō¹⁹)*,

barezište²⁰ paiti²¹ barezahi²²,

Haraiθyō²³ paiti²⁴ barezayā²⁵,

20. +hvacā¹, pāpō²-vacā³, pairi-
gā⁴ (vacā⁵),

+mastim⁹ (yām¹⁰) pouru¹¹-āza-
intim¹²,

paiθimnō⁴ vīspō⁷-paēsīm⁸

māθrahe¹³-ca¹⁴ pauraṭatēm¹⁵.

IX. 21. Sraošem¹ ašim²...ratūm⁹ yazamaide¹⁰,

yeḡhe¹¹ nmānem¹² vāreθraṇi¹³

barezište¹⁷ paiti¹⁸ barezahi¹⁹

χ^vāraoχšnem²³ antara²⁴-naēmāt²⁵,

hazaṇrō¹⁴-stūnem¹⁵ viḍātem¹⁶

Haraiθyō²⁰ paiti²¹ barezayā²²;

stēhr²⁶-paēsēm²⁷ ništara²⁸-naē-
māt²⁹.

22. yeḡhe¹ Ahunō² Vairyo³

Yasnas⁷-ca⁸ Haptaṇhāitiš⁹ | Fšūšas¹⁰-ca¹¹ Māθrō¹² (yō¹³) vāreθraṇi¹⁴ |
vīspās¹⁵-ca¹⁶ Yasnō¹⁷-keretayō¹⁸.

ahe¹ raya²...tās⁴⁴-cā⁴⁶ yazamaide⁴⁶.

snaiθiś⁴ vīsata⁵ vereθrajā⁶,

* I have ventured to alter the arrangement of these two lines. Geld. prints *yazamaide yim yazata* | *Haomō* . . . *baēšazyō* | *srirō* . . etc.

16. Who¹ never-falling-asleep² guards⁴ with vigilance³ the creatures⁸ of Mazda⁵, who⁷ never-falling-asleep⁹ protects¹⁰ with vigilance⁹ the creatures¹² of Mazda¹¹, who¹³ guards¹⁹ all¹⁴ corporeal¹⁶ life¹⁵ with weapon¹⁸ uplifted¹⁷ after²⁰ the setting²² of the sun²¹.

17. Who¹ never² sleeps⁴ (ever) since³ (the day) when⁵ the two-Spirits⁶—both^{10*} (he) who⁹ (is) the Holy¹¹-Spirit¹² and¹⁴ (he) who¹³ (is) the Wicked¹⁶ (one)—created⁸ the worlds⁷: (for he is) the Protector¹⁶ of the world¹⁸ of Righteousness¹⁷, who¹⁹ through all²⁰ (time,) both^{22*} days²¹ and²⁴ nights²³ fights²⁵ against²⁷ the demons²³ of Māzana²⁶.

18. He¹ never² stricken-with-terror³ bows-down⁴ through fear⁵ before⁶ the demons⁷; (rather) all¹¹ the demons¹² stricken-with-terror¹⁴ bow¹⁵-down⁹ before¹⁰ him⁹ against-(their)-will¹³, (and) terror-stricken¹⁶ run¹⁸ (away) into darkness¹⁷.

For his¹ splendour². . . and ⁴⁵ women⁴⁴ (do) we revere⁴⁶.

19. We worship¹⁰ Sraoša¹ the Holy². . . the Master⁹, whom¹¹ did worship¹² Haoma¹³ the Renovator¹⁴, the healing¹⁵, the beautiful¹⁶, the kingly¹⁷, yellow¹⁸-eyed¹⁹, upon²¹ the highest²⁰ height²², upon²⁴ the mount²⁵ Haraiti²³;

20. (Haoma, who is) the speaker-of-gracious-words¹, the speaker³-of-words-that-protect², chanting-all-round⁴ the hymns⁵, Lord⁶ (of) the wisdom⁹ manifold⁷⁻³, which¹⁰ (is) rich¹¹-in-understanding¹² (the meaning of the holy texts), and¹⁴ (Master of) the first place¹⁵ of the holy-scripture^{13†}.

For his¹ splendour². . . and⁴⁵ women⁴⁴ (do) we revere⁴⁶.

IX. 21. We worship¹⁰ Sraoša¹ the Holy². . . the Master⁹, whose¹¹ house¹² of-victory¹³, a-thousand¹⁴-pillared¹⁵, (is) built¹⁶ upon¹⁹ the highest¹⁷ height¹⁹, upon²¹ the mount²² Haraiti²⁰, shining-by-its-own-splendour²³ from-the-in²⁴-side²⁵ (and) star²⁶-bedecked²⁷ from-the-out²⁸-side²⁹.

22. Whose¹ victorious⁶ weapon⁴ the Ahuna² Vairya³ hath become⁵, and⁸ the Yasna⁷ Haptahāiti⁹, and¹¹ the Fšuša¹⁰ Māθra¹² which¹³ (is) foc-conquering¹⁴, as-well-as¹⁶ all¹⁵ the sections¹⁸ of the Yasna¹⁷.

For his¹ splendour². . . and⁴⁵ women⁴⁴ (do) we revere⁴⁶.

* Lit. " and."

† I.e. who occupies the highest position in the scriptures.

X. 23. Sraoṣem¹ aṣīm² . . . ratūm⁹ yazamaide¹⁰,

yeñhe¹¹ ama¹²-ca¹³, verəθrayna¹⁴-
ca¹⁵,

avāin²⁰ Amešā²¹ Spenta²²

24. *yō¹ daēnō²-disō³ daēnayāi⁴,
+ aoi⁸ yām⁹ astvaitīm¹⁰ gaēθām¹¹.

aya¹² daēnaya¹³ fraorenta¹⁴

frā¹⁵ Vohu¹⁹. Manō²⁰, frā²¹ Aṣem²² Vāhiṣtem²³, | fra²⁴ Xšaθrem²⁵-Vairīm²⁶,
fra²⁷ Spenta²⁸-Ārmaitiš²⁹, | fra³⁰ Haurvatās³¹, frā³² Ameretatā³³;

§ frā³⁴ āhūiris³⁵-frašnō³⁶

haozāθwa¹⁶-ca¹⁷, vaēdyā¹⁸-ca¹⁹,

aoi²³ haptō²⁴-karṣvairīm²⁵ zām²⁶.

vaso⁵-χšaθrō⁶ fracarāiti⁷

Ahurō¹⁵ Mazdā¹⁶ aṣava¹⁷,

fra²⁴ Xšaθrem²⁵-Vairīm²⁶,
fra²⁷ Spenta²⁸-Ārmaitiš²⁹, | fra³⁰ Haurvatās³¹, frā³² Ameretatā³³;

fra³⁷ āhūiris³⁸-tkaēšō³⁹.†

25. frā¹ aḍa² *vaēibya³ ahubya⁴

āi⁹ Sraoṣa¹⁰ aṣya¹¹ huraoḍa¹²!—

yas¹⁸-ca¹⁹ asti²⁰ manahyō²¹—

pairi²² drvatat²³ mahrkāt²⁴,

pairi²⁵ drvatbyō²⁹ haēnaēbyō³⁰,

Aēšmahe³⁶ parō³⁷ draomēbyō³⁸,

mat⁴³ Viḍātaot⁴⁴ daēvō⁴⁵-dātāt⁴⁶.

26. +aḍa¹-nō²-tūm³ Sraoṣa⁴ aṣya⁵
(huraoḍa⁶)!

+drvatātē¹⁰ tanubyō¹¹

paiti¹⁵-jaitīm¹⁶ dušmainyunām¹⁷

aurvaθanām²¹ tbišyantām²².

ahel¹ raya² . . . tās⁴-ca⁵ yazamaide⁴⁶.

+*vaēibya⁵ (nō⁶) ahubya⁷ nīpayā⁸,
+ahel¹³-ca¹⁴ aṣhēuš¹⁵ (yō¹⁶), ast-
vatō¹⁷,

pairi²⁵ drvatat²⁶ Aēšmāt²⁷,

+yā³¹ us³² (χrūrem³³) draṣsem³⁴ ge-
rewnān³⁵;

+yā³⁹ (Aēšmō⁴⁰) duzdā⁴¹ drā-
vayāt⁴²,

zāvare⁷ dayā⁸ hitaēibyo⁹,

pouru¹²-spaχštim¹³ tbišyantām¹⁴,

haθrā¹⁸-nivāitīm¹⁹ hamereθanām²⁰,

XI. 27. Sraoem¹ aṣīm² . . . ratūm⁹ yazamaide¹⁰,

yim¹¹ caθwārō¹² aurvantō¹³

spenta¹⁷ viḍvāñhō¹⁸ asaya¹⁹,

srvaēna²² aēšām²³ safāñhō²⁴

auruša¹⁴ raoχšna¹⁵ frāderesra¹⁶,

mainivasanñhō²⁰ vqzen²¹ti :

zaranya²⁶ paiti²⁶-θwarštāñhō²⁷.

28. §āsyāñha¹ aspaēibya², | āsyāñha³ vātaēibya⁴, | āsyāñha⁵ vāraēi-
bya⁶, | āsyāñha⁷ maēγaēibya⁸, |

āsyāñha⁹ vayaēibya¹⁰ (hvpataretaēibya)¹¹† | āsyāñha¹² (hvastayā¹³)
aiñhimanayā¹⁴.

* Geld. includes the first half-line in 23. Jack. and Kan. have the text as here.

† Geld. has this line in continuation with the previous prose passage.

‡ Kan.; Geld. reads *pata*^o and notes the v.l. *hupata*².

X. 23. We worship¹⁰ Sraoša¹ the Holy²...the Master⁹, through* whose¹¹ strength¹² and¹³ victory¹⁴ and¹⁵ great-knowledge¹⁶ and¹⁷ wisdom¹⁸ as-well¹⁹, the Holy²² Immortals²¹ have come-down²⁰ upon²³ (this) earth²⁶ of-the-seven²⁴-regions²⁵.

24. Who¹, the Revealer³-of-the-Law² for the Faith⁴ (of Mazda), moves-about⁷, ruler⁵-at-will⁶, upon³ (this) which⁹ (is) the corporeal¹⁰ world¹¹. This¹² faith¹³ did profess¹⁴ Ahura¹⁵ Mazda¹⁶ the Holy¹⁷, (as) did¹⁸† Vohu¹⁹-Manō²⁰, (as) did²¹ Aša²²-Vahišta²³, (as) did²⁴ Xšaθra²⁵-Vairya²⁶, (as) did²⁷ Spēta²⁸-Armaiti²⁹, (as) did³⁰ Haurvatās³¹, (as) did³² Aməratatās³³; (as also) do³⁴ the Seekers³⁵-after-God³⁶, (as also) do³⁷ the Teachers³⁸ of-God's-Law³⁹.

25. Therefore² O⁹ Holy¹¹ (and) beautiful¹² Sraoša¹⁰! during¹ both³ the lives⁴ (yea,) during both⁵ our⁶ lives⁷,—(the life) both¹⁴‡ of this¹³ world¹⁵ which¹⁶ (is) corporeal¹⁷ and¹⁹ (of that) which¹⁸ is²⁰ spiritual²¹ do thou protect³ (us) against²² on-rushing²³ Death²⁴, against²⁵ the on-rushing²⁶ Demon-of-Wrath²⁷, against²⁸ the on-rushing²⁹ hosts³⁰ who³¹ have raised³⁵ aloft³² the bloody³³ standard³⁴, against³⁷ (these) assaults³⁸ of Aēšma³⁶, which³⁹ the evil-minded⁴¹ Aēšma⁴⁰ has launched⁴² (against us) in-company-with⁴³ the devil⁴⁵-created⁴⁶ Demon-of-Destruction⁴⁴.

26. Therefore¹ (do) thou³ (O) Sraoša⁴, Holy⁵ (and) beautiful⁶, grant⁹ strength⁷ unto our² horse-teams⁹, health¹⁰ unto (our) bodies¹¹, full¹²-watch¹³ against|| (our) opponents¹⁴, smiting¹⁶-down¹⁵ of (those) evil-minded¹⁷ (against us), (and) universal¹⁸-overthrow¹⁹ of the inimical²¹ opponents²² gathered-together²⁰ (to fight us).

For his¹ splendour²...and⁴⁵ women⁴⁴ (do) we revere⁴⁶.

27. We worship¹⁰ Sraoša¹ the Holy²...the Master⁹, whom¹¹ four¹² steeds¹³, red¹⁴, brilliant¹⁵ (and) beautiful¹⁶, divine¹⁷, wise¹⁸ (and) shadow-less¹⁷ do bear²¹ darting-through-the-heavenly-spaces²⁰; their²³ hard²² hoofs²⁴ (are) inlaid²⁵⁻²⁷ with gold²⁶.

28. (Either pair of these four horses is) swifter¹ than a-pair-of-(mortal)-steeds,² swifter³ than winds⁴, swifter⁵ than rain⁶ (showers), swifter⁷ than clouds⁸, swifter⁹ than birds¹⁰ well-winged¹¹, swifter¹² than arrows¹⁴ well-spied¹³.

* I.e. on account of.
ary.

† Lit. "and."

‡ Instead of the अयसर्ग I have ventured to put in the English auxiliary Lit. "of."

29. yōi¹ višpō² tē³ apayeinti⁴,
 nōiṭṭ⁹ ave¹⁰ paskāt¹¹ āfēnte¹²;
 yōi¹³ 'vaēibya¹⁴ snaiθižbya¹⁶
 yim¹⁸ vohūm¹⁹ Sraoṣem²⁰ ašim²¹

yā⁵ ave⁶ paskāt⁷ vyeinti⁸,
 frāyatayeinti¹⁴ vazemna¹⁷,
 + yaṭciṭ²² ušastaire²³ Hindvō²⁴
 (āgeurvayeite²⁵),

yaṭciṭ²⁶ daoṣataire²⁷ Niṣne²⁸.

ahe¹ raya²....tās⁴⁴-cā⁴⁵ yazamaide⁴⁶.

XII. 30. Sraoṣem¹ ašim²....ratūm⁹ yazamaide¹⁰,

yō¹¹ berezō¹² berezyāstō¹³

Mazdā¹⁴ dāmān¹⁶ nišanḥasti¹⁴.

31. yō¹ āθritim² hamahe³

imaṭ⁹ karṣvare⁹ avazāiti¹⁰,

snaiθiṣ¹⁴ zastayō¹⁵* dražimnō¹⁶

ayān⁴ hamayā⁵ vā⁶ xšapō⁷,

yaṭ¹¹ X^vaniraθem¹² bāmim¹³,

brōiθrō¹⁷-taθēžem¹⁸ hvā¹⁹-vaē-
 yem²⁰,

kamereḍe²¹ paiti²² daēvanām²³;

32. §snaθāi¹ Anrahe² Manyēuš³ (drvatō⁴), | snaθāi⁵ Aēšmahe⁶
 xrvim⁷-draoṣ⁸ | snaθāi⁹ Māzainyanām¹⁰ daēvanām¹¹ | snaθāi¹²
 višpanām¹³ daēvanām¹⁴.

ahe¹ raya²....tās⁴⁴-cā⁴⁵ yazamaide⁴⁶.

XIII. 33. Sraoṣem¹ ašim²....ratūm⁹ yazamaide¹⁰.

iḍaṭ¹ca², ainiḍaṭ³-ca⁴, iḍaṭ⁵-ca⁶,

višpā¹² Sraoṣahe¹³ ašyehe¹⁴,

taḥmahe¹⁵ hām¹⁹-vareitivatō²⁰,

kamereḍō²⁴-janō²⁵ daēvanām²⁶,

§vanatō²⁷ vanaitiṣ²⁸ vanaitivatō²⁹ | ašaonō³⁰ vanatō³¹ vanaitiṣ³² |
 vanaintim³³-ca³⁴ (uparatātem³⁵) yazamaide³⁶.

yām³⁷-ca³⁸ Sraoṣahe³⁹ ašyehe⁴⁰,

[yām⁴¹-ca⁴² Arštōiṣ⁴³ Yazatahe⁴⁴.]†

34. §višpa¹ nmāna² (Sraoṣō³-pāta⁴) yazamaide⁵, | yeñhāḍa⁶ Sraoṣō⁷
 ašyō⁸ | fryō⁹ friθō¹⁰ paitizantō¹¹, | nā¹²-ca¹³ ašava¹⁴ frāyō¹⁵-huma-
 tō¹⁶, | frāyō¹⁷-hūxtō¹⁸, frāyō¹⁹-hvarštō²⁰.

ahe¹ raya²....tās⁴⁴-cā⁴⁵ yazamaide⁴⁶.

° Geld, has °taya (7/1), also Kān.

† Probably this pāda was a later interpolation.

29. Who¹ overtake⁴ all² those³ after⁷ whom⁶ they⁶ go-in-pursuit⁸; they¹⁰ (are) never⁹ (themselves) overtaken¹² from-behind¹¹: who¹³ speed-on¹⁸ bearing¹⁷ him^{19*}, the excellent¹⁹ Sraoša²⁰ the Holy²¹, (together) with (his) double¹⁴ weapon,¹⁶ whether²² he takes²⁵ (his course) in easternmost²³ Hind²⁴, (or) whether¹⁶ in westernmost²⁷ Niyna²⁸.

For his¹ splendour². . . and⁴⁶ women⁴⁴ (do) we revere⁴⁶.

XII. 30. We worship¹⁰ Sraoša¹ the Holy². . . the Master⁹, who¹¹ tall¹² (of form and) high-girded¹³ sits¹⁶ among the Creations^{15†} of Mazda⁴.

31. Who¹ thrice³ every³ day⁴ and^{4†} every⁵ night⁷ comes-down¹⁰ to this⁹ region⁹, namely¹¹, the-shining¹³ X^vaniraza¹² holding-firm¹⁶ in-both-(his)-hands¹⁶ the weapon¹⁴, sharp¹⁸-edged¹⁷, (and) self¹⁹-speeding²⁰ (to be used) against²² the skulls²¹ of demons²³;

32.|| (the weapon) for hewing-down¹ of Ārōr² Mainyu³ the wicked⁴, for hewing-down⁵ of the Demon-of-Wrath⁶ with-the-bloody⁷-mae⁸, for hewing-down⁹ of the Māzana¹⁰ demons¹¹, (yea) for hewing-down¹² of every¹³ (single) demon^{14¶}.

For his¹ splendour². . . and⁴⁶ women⁴⁴ (do) we revere⁴⁶.

XIII. 33. We worship¹⁰ Sraoša¹ the Holy². . . the Master⁹.

Both^{2**} here¹ and⁴ hereafter³, yea^{6**} here⁵, and⁸ especially⁹ (over) this¹⁰ entire⁷ earth¹¹ (do we extol) all¹² (the mighty deeds) of Sraoša¹³ the Holy¹⁴, of the brave¹⁵ Word¹⁷-incarnate¹⁶, of the hero¹⁸ with-(manly)-courage-endowed^{19,20}, of the Warrior²³ mighty²²-of-arms²¹, of the cleaver²⁵-of-the-skulls²⁴ of demons²³; (and) the conquests²⁹ of the conquering²⁷ Lord-of-victory²⁹, (and) the victories³² of the holy³⁰ conqueror³¹ and³⁴ (his all-) conquering³³ (spirit and) greatness³⁵ (do) we extol³⁶—(the greatness) which³⁷ (is) of Sraoša³⁹ the Holy⁴⁰, and³⁸ which⁴¹ (is) of the adorable⁴⁴ Aršti⁴³ as well³⁸.

34. We revere⁶ all¹ dwellings² guarded⁴-by-Sraoša³, wherein⁸ the Holy³ Sraoša⁷ is welcomed¹¹, loving⁹ (and) beloved¹⁰, and¹³ (where) the man¹² (becomes) holy^{14††} (and) richer¹⁶-in-good-thoughts¹⁶, richer¹⁷-in-good-words¹⁸, (and) richer¹⁹-in-good-deeds²⁰.

For his¹ splendour². . . and⁴⁶ women⁴⁴ (do) we revere⁴⁶.

* Lit. "whom." † The "Holy Immortals" and the other "Worshipful Ones." ‡ Lit. "or."
|| The sense "runs on" from verse 31. ¶ Orig. plu. ** Lit. "and." †† In consequence of the presence of Sraoša.

NOTES.

1. Kanga—Khordeh Avesta bā Māeni (5th ed.), pp. 280ff.

2. Jackson—Avesta Reader, No. III.

3. Mills, S.B.E., Vol. XXXI, pp. 297ff.

Sraoša occupies among the angel hierarchy of Zoroastrianism a very exalted rank. He is in some respects regarded as next to Ahura Mazda and his immediate ministers the *Aməša-Spəntās*. Hence he is regarded as the highest of the *Yazatas*. His work is to look after human souls. Day and night he watches over humanity keeping off the *daēvas* with up-lifted weapon. During the three days succeeding death the human soul is directly under the protection of *Sraoša* and hence his hymns ~~are~~ always chanted as the principal prayers during the funeral ceremonies. When on the dawn of the fourth morning after death, the departed soul is judged for his actions during his life on earth, it is *Sraoša*, who, as one of the judges in association with *Miθra* (Mehr), judges him and assigns him his reward. During life too the human soul is under the care of *Sraoša* and he takes special care of the human beings during the hours of darkness. The cock, who by his crowing, marks the end of the powers of darkness, who rule at night, and the dog who guards us during the hours of darkness, are both animals sacred to *Sraoša*. The Pah. books (notably the *Bundehish*) give a great many details about *Sraoša*. He is the messenger of Ahura Mazda to humanity and he occasionally is mentioned as being joint sacrificial priest with Ahura Mazda Himself at certain ceremonies. So great is his position in Z. literature that in all ceremonies the very first hymn recited is an invocation to *Sraoša* (the *Sraoša Bāz*).

I. 2. *Sraošem*—2/1. The name is taken by scholars to be from the \sqrt{sru} (𐬰) to hear. It seems to mean "obedience", the obeying or carrying out of the Law of Righteousness which is the Law of Ahura. Cf. also Yas. LX, 5 (Sel. IV), where the word *sraoša* is used lit. in the sense of "obedience".

ašim—2/1 of *ašya*; invariably used as an epithet of *Sraoša* and used for no one else. Lit. "the Righteous", "the Holy", i.e. he who upholds *Aša*.

huraodəm—from *hu* (𐬨) good and *raoda* (𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀; \sqrt{raod} -, 𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀, 𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀) growth or form. See above Yas. IX. 5. Beautiful. Lit. of fine appearance. "Fair of form" (Jack.); "tall formed" (Dar.).

frādaṭ-gaēθəm—Bringing-prosperity. *frādaṭ* is pres. pt. of $\sqrt{dā}$ with *frā* to increase, to prosper. The Pers. *farāz* (𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬵), exalted, is cognate, also *فریاد* (*feryād*) cry for help, complaint.

ratūm—Leader, Master, Lord. See note on the same word in Yas. IX. 1. Barth. thinks that there is no connection between *ratu*, time (𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀) and *ratu*, leader.* The word *ratu* in the sense of "leader" is always opposed to *ahu*, the former being used invariably in the sense of a "spiritual leader" and the latter in a material sense. Cf. the prayer *yabā ahū vairyo* below (Sel. VII a). Barth. however (Wb. 1498) says that *ahu* is an arbitrator

(*Schiedesrichter*) as opposed to the *ratu* the judge (*Gerichtsherr*). This is not very clear. But elsewhere (Wb. 282, under *ahu*) he mentions that the *ahu* was always a warrior whereas the *ratu* belonged to the higher caste and was the judge. These correspond to the Greek βασιλεύς (king) and to the person who held the office of διαγνώσαι (investigating) respectively. This rather supports the idea of material and spiritual leaders. Jack. says definitely "spiritual leader". Haug takes *ahu* to be the spiritual leader and *ratu* as the material, also Modi.

yazamaide—1/3 • pres. atm. √*yaz* (यज्). We worship. The ending *-maide* is the same as -मदे (-मधे) with an epenthetic *i* inserted. Cf. Grk. -μεῖα. Reich. § 256.

dāmān—1/3 used for 6 3. Kan. takes it as 7/3 in meaning. The ending *-ān* is used with n. nouns in *-an* for practically all cases (Jack., A. G., § 308).

frasterentāt—5/1 n. p. pt. pass. √*star* (स्तृ) with *frā* (प्र), to spread. Through spreading. The abl. is governed by the word *paiti* giving the sense of the Lat. abl. absolute—having spread. See Reich. § 676. Cf. *yō . . . rapithwinēm . . . frāyazaite frasnātaēibya zastaēibya . . . frasterentāt paiti barəsmən, uzdatāt paiti Haomāt, raocintāt paiti Āfrāt, srāvayamnāt paiti Ahunāt Vairyāt*, Afrin. IV. 5. "who worships the *rapithwina* (midday) with hands washed, having spread the *Barəsmən* (and) having invoked *Haoma*, (and) having lighted the fire, (and) having chanted the *Ahura Vairya*". The word *frasterenta* is translated by Dar. and others as "tied up". In the ceremony the twigs are tied up, but they are first laid out or spread out before being made into bundles.

barəsmən—5/1 attracted by the case of the previous word for 2/1. The *barəsmən* twigs were twigs of the *Haoma* plant (or of the pomegranate) used in certain ceremonies. They are first laid out and then tied up in bundles. The number varies according to the ceremony to be performed.* Now-a-days brass or silver wires are used in place of the twigs. The phrase *barəsmən star* recalls the बर्हिषः स्तृ of the Vedas and probably these are philologically identical. Some writers have identified the *barəsmən* with the कुश grass but this is not correct, because the *barəsmən* is never used as a seat for the divine beings.† The custom seems to be a very old one. Strabo mentions it‡ and it is probably the same custom which is referred to in Ezekiel VIII. 16–17. The Roman Flammes also worshipped the fire with a certain number of twigs held in the hand.

yazata—3/1 impf. atm. augmentless—यजजत.

Aməšə Spəntā—2/3 the *-ā* at the end shows that the form is G.A. The Holy Immortals. The *Ameshāspends* of later Z. theology. These are the six ministers of *Ahura*, who might be compared to the "archangels". They are *Vohu-Manō* (*Bahman*), *Aša-Vahišta* (*Ardibesht*), *Xšaθra-Vairya* (*Shahri-*

* For details consult Modi Dict. pp. 140f.

† Haug, p. 283, Reich. (A. R. p. 102) says that in Yezd the tamarisk is used and the twigs are bound with a strip of mulberry bark. See also Jack. Per. pp. 369ff. ‡ XV. 3. 14.

var), *Spənta-Āmaiti* (*Spendārmad*), *Haurvatāt* (*Khurdād*) and *Amərətātāt* (*Amerdād*).* Sometimes the texts mention seven *Ameshaspendas* because Ahura Mazda is counted as one, as it were *primus inter pares*. Sraoṣa is occasionally also ranked among them.

Pāyū Ōworəštāra—2/2. Each of these words is 2/2 and hence Jack. has some justification in taking these two words as a देवताद्वन्द्व comp.† According to him, *Pāyū* means “(two) Protectors” (√*pā*-पर) and *Ōworəštāra* means “(two) Judges” and hence the whole comp. means “the two, viz. the Protector and the Judge”. Jack. explains these as *Miθra* [मिथ्र, Pers. مهر (*mehr*)] the Protector and *Rašnū*‡ the Judge. These two sit in judgment over the soul, on the morning of the fourth day after death, after the *Cinvat*-bridge is crossed. Kan. takes each word separately (2/2)|| and trans. “the (two) Protectors (and) the (two) Creators”—they being identical, being *Spənta-Maiṇyu* and *Agrō-Maiṇyu* who have created and who maintain this world. See note on the latter name in Yas. IX. § above. Barth. understands (Wb. 889) that the two are *Miθra* and *Ahura*.

θwərəsatō—3/2 pres. par. Make or create; used as an *ahura*-word. The contrasted *daēva*-word is *kərənti*. (cf. Yas. IX. 8.). This word is connected with the √*ta* (तच्) to cut into shape and the word *taršvah* (one who has created)||. Cf. Ary. ترشج (*tarshaj*) Axe.

3. *ahe*—6/1 of the dem. pron. stem *a*. The G. A. form is *ahyā*. The variants *ayhe* and *aighe* are also found—अय्य.

raya—3/1 f. Splendour (√*rā*-र- to shine).

Xʷarənaŋha-ca—3/1 m. Glory. See above, Yas. IX. 4.

ama—3/1 m. Courage (Kan.); strength (Jack.).

yasna—3/1 m. Worship, praise (Jack.); fame (Guj. कीर्ति) Kan.

Yazatanām—6/2. Orig. p. pt. pass. of √*yaz* (यज्) to worship. Jack. (A. G. § 786, note 2) says that the ending *-ta* in this case has “partly a gerundive force” and compares *arəzata* (रज्जन), silver. Lit. “the worshipful-one”, “the adorable one”, the name is specially applied to an order of Beings comparable to Angels of Christianity or to the *Devas* of the Hindus, who help in various ways in securing the welfare of the world and the carrying on of God’s work therein. The *Ameshaspendas* are the highest among the *Yazatas*. Jack. and Barth. take the word as referring to *yasna* preceding and translate: “For his worship of the *yazatas*”. Kan. takes the sense as being “run on” and refers the word to *təm* following and translates, “For his fame, him among the *Yazatas* (do I worship)”;—Sraoṣa, as the highest of the *Yazatas*, being as it were specially marked out as an object of worship.

yazāi—1/1 subj. pres. atm. I worship.

surunvata—3/1 pres. pt. √*sru* (श्रु), to hear. Lit. audible, loud, here used

* For details see Introduction.

† Cf. Whit. § 1255.

‡ The name means “the Just”. The Pers. راست (*rāst*) “upright” or “just” is cognate.

|| Geld. text agrees here.

¶ Yas. LXX. 1.

in a pass. sense almost, "well sounding," i.e. properly-intoned. Kan. translates "famous"—श्रवणा (cf. अति). Barth. takes this as fut. pt. pass.*

zaoṅrābyō—3/3. With sacrificial gifts, with libation. The word is used especially in the sense of offerings of milk or consecrated water, etc. *zu* (𑖅) to sacrifice. *zōṅ* is used in RV. in this sense in VI. 11. 1 and also X. 53. 4-5, and in the comp. *zōṅvāḥ*.

Aṣim-ca Vayuhim—2/1 f. Lit. the best holiness. As a proper name it indicates the incarnation of Piety and the resulting blessings. It is used as the name of one of the *Yazatas*. It later becomes *Arīṣhvangh*. She is, according to Nair,† the same as *सखी*. She is the divinity who presides over flowers. She is invoked in marriage ceremony to grant wealth and prosperity to the couple. She is also a messenger of God like *Nairyō-Saṅha*.† •

barāzaitim—2/1 pres. pt. $\sqrt{\text{barz}}$ (बर्ह) to grow. Exalted (Kan.); lofty (Jack.); बर्हन्तौम्. Pers. بلند (*buland*) lofty, is cognate.

Nairim-ca Saghəm—Corresponds to the Vedic नरायण. The name signifies the divine fire coming down from Heaven, which bears aloft the offerings and the prayers of the worshippers to the Y^{at}as. He is one of the messengers of God. One of his most important duties is to guard closely the seed from which future heroes and Saṃsāyants are to be born (see above, note on Yas. IX. 2). He was sent to Peṣutan together with Sraoṣa to deliver God's message regarding the revival of the faith. At another time he was sent on a similar errand to Keresāspa||. Note here that the separate parts of the compound name are each separately declined: cf. *Ahunəm Vairim frasrāvayō* above, Yas. IX. 14. (Jack., A. G., § 893).

The words *Aś-im-cā . . . huraodam* are probably a later interpolation.

ā-ca-nō—and towards us—आ च नः

avanhe—4/1. For help—**अवसे.**

4. *yim*—refers to the *ratu* preceding.

apanôlamô—1st super. of *apana*, pft. pt. atm. of \sqrt{ap} , अप्, to reach, to obtain (Jack. A. R. p. 54). Lit., he who has reached the highest.

jaymüštamō—11 super. of the pft. pt. $\sqrt{\text{gam}}$ (अग) Most prompt (Jack.); most helpful (lit. one who comes quickest to help) Kan.; who has reached the highest (Barth.). Gāḇ. Vohu. (LI. 15.)¶ mentions Ahura Mazda as being the first to reach the highest state.

vispasravā—23 n. All the commandments; all the śrutis.

zaraθuštri—2/3 n. adj. from *Zaraθuštra*.

hvaršta—2,3 n. ppt. pass. *√varəz* to do + *hu* (𐬥) well. Well-performed. Cf. *hvarəš* in Yas. IX. 16. The word is used as a noun to mean "good-deeds" when it comes with the other two, *humata* and *hūxta* ("good-thoughts" and "good-words"). These three are the three "Commandments" of Zoroastrianism.

varədyamna-ca—2/3 fut. pt. pass. n. ; °माना (Ved.), later °मानानि. Those which shall be performed.

²⁰ Wb. 1639. † Skt. trans. of the Yasna. He says in this passage:—**अग्निं यदं वसुधां सृजताम.**

† Modi, Dict. ‡ Bun. quoted by Modi (Dict.). ¶ See below Selection XXVIII, Part II.

yēghē-hātām is one of the three holiest prayers of the Avesta. The other two are *yaθā-ahū-vairyō* (*Ahunā-Vairya*) and *ašəm-vohū**. All these three have been variously translated by various scholars. The *yēghē-hātām* is regarded by Geld. as a later imitation of Yas. LI. 22.† Moulton in his *Early Religious Poetry of Persia* (pp. 117f.) says, "It is not in the Gāthīc dialect but in later Avestan, though it is of course possible that it has been transferred by adaptation Geldner observes that it is an imitation of the last stanza of the Fourth Gāthā, . . . it seems very possible that it was derived from it by simply paring down the 14 syllable line to the more familiar metre. That makes its post-Gāthīc date fairly certain".‡ That last verse runs as follows:

yehyā¹ mōi² ašūt³ hacā⁴ vahištām⁵ yesnē⁶ paitī⁷
vaēda⁸ Mazdā⁹ Ahurō¹⁰, yōi¹¹ āpharā¹². cā¹³ hēnti¹⁴. cā¹⁵,
tā¹⁶ yazāi¹⁷ x¹⁸ aiš¹⁹ nāmāniš¹⁹ pairi²⁰. cā²¹ jasā²² vanti²³.

(That person) of whom¹ Ahura¹⁰ Mazda⁹ through⁴ (his) holiness³ knoweth⁸ (that he is) the best⁵ towards me²|| as-regards⁷ acts-of-worship⁶—(all) such¹⁶|| (persons), both¹³** who¹¹ have existed¹² and¹⁵ (who) are existing¹⁴, shall I revere¹⁷ by (their) own¹⁸ names¹⁹ and²¹ (I) shall draw²²-near²⁰ (to them) with praises²³.

See Yas. LXI for the praises of this prayer; Yas. XXI is a commentary upon this (Sel. VIII c. below).

yēghē—6/1 m. Of whom. This is the "object" of *vaēθā* hence the gen., what Reich. (§ 503) calls the "objective genitive" (cf. Whit. § 297). Reich. (p. 477) following Barth. in this passage considers that the m. is used for f.;—a point which is not at all clear. The mas. is quite correct here, because the corresponding fem. comes later on, *yāghām-ca*. If at all, we may say that the sg. is used when we may expect the plu. (*yaešām*) because *yāghām-cā*, *tās-cā*, *tās-ca* are all plu. The construction is *ad sensum* (Reich. § 608).††

hātām—6/3 pres. pt. √*ah* (अह्) to be. Of living beings—सत्ताम्.

āat—This is a particle used sometimes in the sense of the Skt. अथ. Here it is merely mildly emphatic somewhat like अथ or अथ, verily. Orig. it is 5/1 of the pron. stem *a*. This is the Y. A. form, the G. A. being *āt*.

yesne—7/1. Note change of *yasna* to *yesna*. Reich. (§ 158) says the change of *a* to *e* is due to the *e* in the following syllable.

paiti—governs the loc. *yesne*; प्रति. Note the final *i*, the language being Gāth.

vayhō—Com. of *vohu* (वहु). Holier.

vaēθā—3/1 pft. par. G. A. √*vid* to know. वेद. Note that it governs the genitives *yēghē* and *yāghām-cā*. Cf. च हि जातानां वेद.

hacā—through, on account of. Lit "with," used with ins. or abl. (√*hac*, अह्, to go with), this being probably 3 1 of the root-noun. Cf. O. Per. *hacā*, with; Per. *y* (*az*) with or from.

* See below Selection No. VII.

† See below Selection XXVIII, Part II.

‡ Kan.

however maintains that the prayer is exceedingly ancient and says it was composed by Z. himself. Kh. A. b. M. p. 1, footnote. || The "m" probably refers to Z. ¶ Lit. "these."

** Lit. "and."

†† Also Reich., A. R., p. 102.

yāñhām-cā—6/3 f. “object” of *vaeθa*. We have to understand, *mutatis mutandis*, the words *hatām... hacā* with this fem. counterpart.* The Z. religion has never made any distinction of sex and has always spoken of both the sexes in terms of perfect equality.

tās-cā—2/3 m. They (the men).

tās-cā—2/3 f. They (the women).

The variety of translations may be judged by the following selections made from among the various versions by various scholars:—

(i) (To that one) of beings do we offer, whose superior (fidelity) in the Sacrifice Ahura Mazda recognises by reason of the sanctity (within him; yea, even to those female saints also do we sacrifice), whose (superior fidelity is thus likewise known; thus,) we sacrifice to (all, to both) the males and the females (of the Saints).—Mills, S.B.E., XXXI, p. 268.

(ii) All those beings^a of whom Ahura Mazda knows the goodness^b for a sacrifice (performed) in holiness, all those beings male and females^c, do we worship.—Dar., S.B.E., XXIII, pp. 30-31.

[Notes:—(a) the Amesha Spentas (Pahl. Comm. ad Yesna XXVII. fin.).

(b) The benefits which they dispose, and which they impart as rewards to the righteous. (c) The first three Amesha Spentas (whose names are mas.) and the last three (whose names are fem.)].

(iii) ये विश्वमानिभ्यः एवं रजिस्त्वा उपरि अन्नमस्य

महाह्वानिनः सामिनः (किल रजिस्वौः अङ्गरमन्दस्यार्थे प्रचुराः कुर्वन्ति) वेत्तु वेत्तु^२) पुण्यं वत्किंचित् (किल वत्किंचित् पुण्यप्रसादं अङ्गरमन्दो वेत्ति)।

समवायिकान् तान् [तांश्च] तांश्च आराधये (किल नरस्वौ आहुतौ अभिवायि-
तान्) ॥

—Nair. Skt. Trans.†

(iv) Whomsoever (male or female) among the living beings, Mazda Ahura knoweth as one to whom through Aša the better portion doth fall, all such beings (male and female) do we reverence.—Reich., p. 20. (See also Barth. Wb. 1270.)

(v) The man among all that are, the women too, to whom for (his) prayer (*yasna*) the Wise Lord knows the better portion doth fall in accordance with Right, these men and women do we reverence.—Mlt., E.R.P., p. 117.

(vi) Among living beings whoever is better in acts of worship, of such Ahura Mazda (Himself) is aware on account of His holiness—all such both men and women do we revere.—Kan., Kh. A. b. M., p. 39.

II. 5. Note the repetitions of this as well as other passages throughout this hymn as a sort of refrain.

6. *frastōranata*—3/1 impf. atm. Spread.

θryaxštis—2/3 f. (Made up of) three-twigs—विषष्टिः. Note the insertion f χ here; cf. *xštūm* above Yas. IX. 21, also *yaoxštīm* (Yas. IX. 8) and below, *ā-xšnūs*. The word is often used as a collective in n. sg. Here it explains *barasma* (Jack., A. G., § 891).

* So also Mills in S.B.E., XXXI.

† Collected Skt. writings of the Parsis, Pt. II., p. 14.

ā-χsnūs-ca—2/3; *ā* + *znū*. Up to the knee, i.e. knee-deep. The insertion of the *χ* before *znū* is found only with the prep. *ā*, with other *upasargas* it is not found, e.g. *frašnu*. This *χ* has no value etymologically (Jack., A. G., § 77, note 1*); cf. *χšmākem*, *χšmāt*, etc. For the formation of the comp., cf. *चमिष्ठ*, Jack., A. G., § 889 and Whit. § 1310. Kan. says that this refers to the length of the twigs used. The length of the twigs is stated in Nir. to be three spans and the thickness that of a barley-corn, and their number is to be either 3, 5, 7, 9, 12, 15, 21, 33, 69 or 551 according to the ceremony to be performed. They should be cut from a tree whose trunk is perfectly sound.†

maidyōi-paitištānās-ca (v.l. *maidyō*, Kan.)—2 3 comp. of *maidyōi* (मद्यौ), middle + *paitištāna* (प्रतिष्ठान), leg (lit. that by which we stand). Half-a-foot (or leg) high (Jack.‡); reaching up to the middle of the leg (Kan.). The *ā-* from *ā-χsnūs* is to be supplied here also, *ā-maidyōi-*.

yasnāi-ca—4/1 m. For the worship.

vahmāi-ca—4/1 m. of *vahma* prayer, praise or glorification. Barth. (Wb.) derives it from *van*, to win; Jack. gives *vaf* to pray (cf. *ufyemi*||); Kan. Dict. derives this word from *vayh* (वय्) to love, to revere.

χšnaobrāi-ca—4/1 n. *For the propitiation. *χšnu* (क्षनु)¶ to propitiate.

frasastayaē-ca—4/1 f. For the glorification—प्रशस्तये.

The phrase *yasnāi-ca...frasastayaē-ca* occurs frequently throughout the Av.

III. 8. *frasvāvayat*—3.1 impf. caus. *ʿsru* + *frā*. Chanted aloud (*frā*). See above Yas. IX. 14.

afsmānīvān—2.3 n. Metrical passages; from *afsmān* (n.), measure or metre used specially for Gāthic verses. Cf. Yas. IX. 14. Kan. trans. "Together with the verses (بیت bait)". He derives it from *ʿafs*, to cut (?).

vacastaštivaṭ (अष्ट.)—2.1 n. used instead of 2/3. With properly arranged strophes. *vacastašti*, f. specially refers to the divisions of the Gāthic stanza. From *vacah* (वचस्) and *taš* (तश्) to arrange. According to Barth. (Wb. 1340) the use is almost adverbial.** For the metrical divisions of the Gāthic verses see Geld. Text, Introductory Note to Yas. XXXV.

maṭ-āzaintiṣ—2.3 f.; a comp. made up of *maṭ* with and *āzainti* (*ʿzan*—ज्ञा to know) explanation. The word *maṭ* is originally 5.1 of the pron. stem *ʿsma* (अस्, *अन्) (Jack., A. G., § 140). The Pah. phrase *Avistāk-vazand* means "Avesta and the Commentary" and the phrase wrongly understood has given us the popular name *Zend* for the language itself (Jack., A. G., Int., p. xii).

maṭ-paitiṭfrasā—2.3 f. With the questions and answers, i.e. with the catechism.†† Jack. however translates "with answers to the questions";

* Also id. § 168. † Haug, p. 397, note 2. Modi, Dict., mentions the numbers 23 and 35 as well.

‡ A. R., Gloss. || Kan., Dict., derives this from *ʿvap*—to weave (cf. Pers. بافتن *bāftan* to weave), and explains the special sense of *ufyemi* "I pray" as being metaphorical, "weaving the hymns."

¶ In Skt. the root means to sharpen and *क्षणी* means "whetstone", RV. II. 39. 7. ** See Whit.

§ 1107. †† Sc., on the Gāthic Revelation.

(स प्रतिप्रज्ञाः (°^xपृष्टः)). √*paras* (पृष्ट) + *paiti*. In Vis. XIV. 1, we get the word *mat-parasvim* in almost the same sense; cf. also Yas. IX. 25.

IV. 10. *driyaoś-ca*—6/1 of *driyu* m. A poor man. Pers. درویش (*dervish*) lit. means a poor man, hence used in the sense of a संन्यासिन.

drivyās-ca—6/1 of the f. of *driyu*. The f. is made by adding -i and the y drops out before the v: *driyu* + i = **driyvi*, *drivi* (Jack., A. G., § 187., 1). *amavat*—2/1 n. Strong.

nmānəm—2/1. Is used in the sense of “a refuge”. Cf. “Lord, thou hast been our dwelling place in all generations”, Psalms, xc. 1.

hām-tāšti—Lit. puts together i.e. fashions. *hām* is the same as हम् and √*tāś* is ताश् to build. Kan. reads *tāstem*, in which case the previous two words as well as this would be 1/1 n. to be construed with *asti* understood. Kan. translates “who is the well-fashioned strong refuge.”

pasca—prep. governing the acc. After. The Skt. form पश्चात् is the abl. Pers. پس (*pas*) after. *

hū—6/1 of *hvar*, the sun. This special form of 6/1 is peculiar to Y. A.* and is used only with *frāšmō-dāiti* (Jack., A. G., § 334).

frāšmō-dāitīm—2/1 f. obj. of *pasca*. The word is used only with *hū* and means “setting (of the sun)”. Nair. in his Skt. trans. says प्रचनराचिबिभान, i.e. the time between the sunset and the setting in of complete darkness—in other words, the evening सन्ध्या. The etymology is uncertain. The word *frāšmi* which occurs in Yas. X. 21 and in 19 below may be connected. In the former passage (*Haomām frāšmim frādat-gaēθəm yazamaide*) Barth. translates *frāšmi* as “refreshing”† while Kan. translates “prosperity-giving” and derives it from *frāš* forward (√*anc* अञ्च्) to move with *frā* (प्र); cf. Pers. فرار (*farāz*) high, exalted).‡ Both however give the meaning “sunset” to *hū-frāšmo-dāitīm*.|| In his derivation Kan. agrees with Har. who also takes it as connected with *frāš* and explains *frāšmō-dāiti* as “the attaining (√*dā*, दा) the goal of the progress”.¶

Aēšmām—The Demon of Wrath. He is represented as having the seven principal vices and he is one of the chief among demons. The name appears to be identical with *Asmodeus* (*Aēšma-daēva*) of the Apocryphal book of Tobit (III. 8).** In G. A. this word personifies the anger of the evil-minded against the good-creation especially against cattle (cf. Gāθ, XXIX. 1; XLVIII. 7). The anger due to drunkenness is also personified as *Aēšma* (Yas. X. 8). From √*āś* to put oneself in rapid motion. Grk. of *a* and Lat. *irā* are probable cognates. The modern Pers. خاشم (*hashm*) anger is a direct derivation, the initial خ (*kh*) being due to a faulty reading of the Pah. word which may be read both *aešma* as well as *xašma*.

sterəθwata—3/1 adj. Striking down or smiting down to the ground (Barth.); levelled or uplifted (Kan.). Kan. adds that this word is used of a weapon which has to be aimed at an object by bringing it up to the level of

* The regular form is *āpərə*. † Hb. air. 11. See also Sel. XIX, Part II. ‡ Dict. || Kan. by a very curious slip says *surie* in his translation of this passage, Kh. A. b. M., p. 284. ¶ Har., Man. A v., Gloss. || Haug., p. 357.

the eyes ($\sqrt{\text{star}}$ to stretch, to level), e.g. a bow. He contrasts the word *arədiwa* (अरदि) which is used of a weapon which is lifted up to strike, e.g. a sword.* See below 16.

snaiθiṣa—3/1 n. of *snaiθiṣ*, a weapon, $\sqrt{\text{snab}}$ (अप्) to smite, to destroy. Battle-axe (Mills).

viṣrūmantəm—2/1 adj. Very sore, deep (Kan.); bruising (Jack.). Barth. (Wb. 436) remarks that the word lit. signifies that which lets out blood and that by a strange transposition of meaning the word is used (e.g. in Ven. IV. 30 and 33) to mean an injury of the mildest type, that, namely, in which no blood is let out. The $\sqrt{\text{hr̥u}}$ means to hurt, lit. to make raw or bloody. Cf. Skt. क्षुर, Av. χ^v ara, Eng. raw (O. Eng. hraw). —

χ^v arəm—wound. From $\sqrt{\text{hr̥u}}$ to injure. The $\sqrt{\text{hr̥u}}$ to eat (Pers. *khurdan*, to eat) is probably connected.† In the Ven. this word means a visible mark left on the body which may have been inflicted by a weapon.

jainti—3/1 pres. $\sqrt{\text{jan}}$ (अज्). Smites; वजि.

aṭ-ca—2/1 n. of pron. stem *a*. Then, thereupon.

bāda—Continually (Jack. who connects it with Skt. बन्ध). Kan. takes it as an asservative particle, somewhat emphatic in value; verily, assuredly. Barth.‡ supports this view. The word is probably derived from $\sqrt{\text{bā}}$ (भा) to appear, to shine forth (5/1 of the root-noun ?). Skt. वत and वादस् may be cognates.

jaynvā—1/1 pft. pt. $\sqrt{\text{jan}}$ to-smite. Smiting; जयन्वान्

paiti- χ^v aphayeyti—Breaks to pieces (Kan.). $\sqrt{\text{hr̥u}}$ (*खज्*?) to crush, with *paiti*. Barth. translates “presses back” (Wb. 875).

aojā—Kan. takes it as 2/1 n. Strength. Jack. understands it to be 1/1 m., “the strong man”.

nāidyāghəm—2/1. Kan. derives it from $\sqrt{\text{nid}}$, निद् to scorn and translates it as “scorning” and takes *aojā* preceding as “object” of this word. He translates *yaθa aojā nāidyāghəm* as “the man who thus scorns his (i.e. Sraoša’s) power.” Alternatively he suggests in a footnote|| the translation: “Just as a strong man (crushes) the oppressor” (from $\sqrt{\text{nad}}$ to oppress, to injure). Jack. takes the word to be 2/1 adj. comp. and compares नदीयस्य and translates, “Just as a strong man (crushes) the weaker one”. Cf. Yas. XXXIV. 8. The same word occurs in Yas. XIII. 16, where it is regarded by Dastur Darab as identical with the name of the Vedic sage नीधः¶.

V. 11. *taxməm*—See *tancištō*, Yas. IX. 15.

āsūm—Swift; आसुस्.

darəitəm (अप.) (v. l. *ərəšitəm* Kan.)—Daring, from $\sqrt{\text{darəš}}$, दृष, to dare. Kan. translates “terrible (to the *dəva*)”.

bərəzəiθim (v. l. *ətim*)—2/1 adj., made up of *bərəz* and *dəi* (धी). Of high wisdom. High-spirited, valiant (Jack.); of high insight (Barth.); observ-

* Kh. A. b. M., in a footnote on p. 284.

† So Jack., A. R., Gloss.

‡ Wb. 953.

|| Kh. A. b. M., p. 284.

¶ J. B. A. S., 1898, p. 391. See also Barth. Wb. 481 for a discussion of this point.

ing from a high standpoint, i.e. far-sighted or liberal-minded (Kan.).* The epithet is used for Sraoṣa only here. In three places it is used of the great disciple and supporter of Z., the King Kava Vištāspa (Yt. V. 108, IX. 29†, XVII. 52). The reading *°tim* has been merely rendered *buland* (high or great) in Pah.

12. *haca*—Prop. used with ins. or abl. and meaning accordingly “with” or “from”.

arazāibyo—5 3. From battles. √*araz*—अरञ् to strive. Barth. compares *ἀρέγειν* to reach out. Cf. Pers. *راز* (*razm*) battle.

vavanvā—1/1 pft. pt. √*van*. Victorious; ववन्मान्.

paiti-jasaiti—प्रतिगच्छति. √*jas* corresponds to गच्छ. The √*jam* corresponding to जम् is used in a few forms and the variants *jim* and *gam* are also known.†

vyāxma (v.l. *vyā°*, Kan.)—2 1 n. Assembly. √*ac* (अच्) with *vi*, to assemble.

VI. 13. *yūnām*—6/3 of *yvan* or *yūn* (Jack., A. G., § 314, n. 1). Of the youths, among the youths. Are these the Immortal Yazatas who are ever young? Cf. युवती as applied to उषस् and the epithet “young” used with the other Vedic deities (as in RV. VIII. 29. 1). •

aojišto, etc.—Cf. Yas. IX. 15.

parō-katarštēmam (अप.)—The Pah. trans. says *pēs-kāmak-tum*, “foremost in loving”?; most desirous or eager (Kan.); most enterprising (Har.). The form is made up of *para* (पर) + √*kam* (कम्) + suff. *tar* (ह) + suff. *tēma* (super. तन्). Barth. and Jack. divide *paroka* (पराक, at a distance) + *tarīta* (तृष्ट, frightened); lit. he who makes (the *dāēvas*) frightened from a distance; he who is fled away from even at a distance (Jack.). On the whole the Pah. rendering seems best and it has the additional recommendation of being traditional.||

paitiṣata—2 3 imp. par. √*iš* (इष) + *paiti* (प्रति). Desire eagerly, प्रतीक्षन् *mazdayasna*—8/3.

14. *dūrāt*—adv. originally 5 1 of *dūra*. The 7/1 form *dūire* (or *dūraē-ca*) is also found, but here the 5/1 is preferred because the other cases are also abl.

haca is a prep. which means either “with”, “together” or “from”, “away” and is used accordingly with either ins. or abl.

nmānāt and other words in abl. Note that the 5/1 ending *āt* has become in Av. common to all nouns and pron. irrespective of the final letter.

ayā—1 3 f. adj. Evil or wicked (Kan., Barth.); Jack. takes it to be a noun and translates “calamities”.

iθyejā—1 3 f. adj. Destructive (Kan.). Jack. and Barth. take it as a noun, 1 3 n., and translate “distresses”, “troubles”. √*θyaaj*, त्यज्, to destroy; the *i* is prothetic.

* बुद्धदीर्घी मजर पीर्षीचाडनार Kh. A. b. M., p. 285 and Dict.

† Sel. XXIII, Part II.

† Kan., A. G., § 310. || Dar. rightly lays a deal of stress on the tradition as represented by Pah. On this point see also Brown's *Lit. Hist.* I, pp. 68-70.

vōiṇā—1/3 f. Troubles or obstacles (Kan.); plagues (Jack.); inundations (Barth.). Barth. says it is probably connected with *vaēga* (वेग). Kan. connects it with विघ्न and derives from $\sqrt{\text{zan}}$ (जन्) + *vi*. The meaning "inundation" is appropriate in other passages where the word occurs, but here Jack. and Kan. seem more correct.

yeinti—3/3 pres. par. $\sqrt{\text{yā}}$ (या). Go, fly.

yejhe—7/1 f. pron. *yā* (Reich. § 400; Jack., A. G., § 399). The f. is due to the fact that the last noun used (*daiǵhu*) is fem. The form is probably from **yasyā* m. (cf. Ved. यस्या, यस्या etc.). The influence of *aiǵhe* is also apparent. The form for 6/1 m. is also the same (see above *yejhe hatām*). But the sense here is clearly loc. Hence it is not very correct when Barth. (Wb. 1227, note 28) says that the sense is always gen.

nmanaya—7/1. This case-form occurs only here. The G. A. form is *dāmāna*, the *a* being apparently put in only to help the pronunciation. Cf. O. Per. *māniya* and Mod. Per. مان (*mān*). After this word, the others—*vis*, *zantū* and *daiǵhu*—should also be understood in 7/1.

paiti-zantō—1/1 p. pt. pass. $\sqrt{\text{zan}}$ to know, with *paiti*. Welcomed. Kan. agrees in the translation but derives (with a query) from $\sqrt{\text{jam}}$ (जम्) with *paiti* and says that lit. it means "to go up to a guest" hence "to welcome him". Skt. प्रत्यक्ष is used similarly, hence Kan. is correct.

nā-ca—1/1 of *nar* (न). The man (i.e. he dwelling in the house, village, etc.).

frāyō—Com. of *frā* (*frāyaph*, प्राय) which becomes *frāyō* as first member of a compound. Lit. "more." Kan. translates "more good-minded" etc. Jack. says "rich in good thoughts" and explains, "i.e., the man who has more good (than bad) thoughts". So also Barth. Wb. 1019. The idea seems rather that the presence of *Sraoša* makes them richer in good-thoughts, etc. The Hād. N. has also *frāyo-dušmatā*, etc., as contrasted with *frāyō-humatā*, etc., in the fem.

VII. This *Karḍe* is also found in the *Sraoša Yašt Hādōxt* (Yt. XI. Kar. 2.) This latter *Sraoša Yašt* is taken from the *Hādōxt Nask* (*Nask XX*). The two *Yašts* are distinguished by the fact that the *Yas. LVII* is called popularly *Sraoša Yašt Vaḍi* (वडि), i.e. the Greater *Sraoša Yašt*. Because it occurs in the *Yasna* it is also called in the Persian *Revāets* the سروش یشتنی (*Sarūsh-Yasht-i-Izashni*). The same is used during the ceremonies for the first three nights after death, hence also the name sometimes given, یشت سی شب (*Yasht-i-si-shab*) or *Yašt*-of-the-three-nights.

15. *vananō*—1/1 pres. pt. atm. $\sqrt{\text{van}}$ (वन्). Conqueror. The atm. part. in *-āna* (Av. *-ana*) with thematic verbs is more common in Av. than in Skt. (Jack., A. G., § 507, Whit. § 741a).

kayaḍahe—6/1 m. Originally the word *kayaḍa* meant some special type of sin. The word is found in this sense only in composition with others, e.g. in *Vis. III. 4. əvistō-kayaḍəm* which Kan. renders "without sin." Barth. (Wb. 442) says "who does not know * the *kayaḍa* sin" and he adds that the

^o Cf. Grk. ἄστροφς (not knowing), Goth. *unwis*.

context there makes it evident that the sin is that "of holding the religion or holy matters in contempt",* i.e. the sin of heresy. The word then has acquired the sense of one who has committed that sin. Hence the word, as here, means "a heretic". Kan. simply says "a wicked man".

kāidyehē—6/1 m. Lit. one who belongs to the *kayada*, i.e. the follower of a heretic. The Pah. version seems to take this as a fern. of *kayada*:—*ke vanitar-i-kastārān-i-zanān* (who is the conqueror of female *kayadas*). The formation of a fern. form with the वृत्ति of the first syllable is a very exceptional phenomenon (Barth. Wb. 463), and besides this, the ending is definitely the mas. 6/1 ending.†

janta—1/1 of *tar*. Smiter—जन्ता. Note the short final.

daēvayā—6/1 adj. Devilish; qualifying *drujō*.

haraṭa—1/1 of *tar*. Protector. √*har* to protect (cf. Lat. *sal-vere*).

aiwiyāχšā-ca—1/1 of *tar*. Watcher. √*aχš* (cf. ईक्ष् + *aiwi* (अभि), to watch carefully. •

fravōiš—6/1 f. Progress, prosperity. Thus Jack., who says that the Pah. rendering supports this. Barth. though agreeing puts a query mark after this (Wb. 991). Jack. therefore translates "the prosperity of all mankind". Kan. says "the progress of all the world". In a footnote‡ Kan. suggests that the word may mean "moving" and thus the rendering would be "the whole moving world". In the latter case it would be from √*fru* to move (cf. *frafravaiti* above, Yas. IX. 32). Mills (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 301) says "migrations of the tribes".

16. *anavahabdēmno*—1/1 pres. pt. atm. of √*χ^vabdā* (*χ^vap*—अप, to sleep + √*dā*—दा with *an* (अन, neg. pre.) and *ava* (अव). Never falling asleep. The compound verb *χ^vabdā* is of a fairly numerous class already discussed under *pairi-yaoždā*, Yas. IX. 1 (also *mās* . . . *dañānahe*, ib. 31.). The *dā* in such cases seems to have a causal force.¶ Note also the peculiar change from *χ^va* to *gha*.

zañnāgha—3/1 n. With vigilance. √*zi* to impel, to awaken. Barth. (Wb. 1650) takes it to be 1/1 adj. and translates "watchful" so also Mills "vigilant". P. Guj. ज्ञेय, zeal.

nipāiti—3/1 pres. par. √*pā* (पा, to protect + *ni* (नि). Watches over. guards. •

nišhaurvaiti—3/1 pres. par. √*har* to protect + *ni* (नि). Protects. The *š* inserted after the *ni* and before the *h* is reminiscent of an original Ar. *s* and is "an attempt at etymological restoration".¶ This occurs only in cases where the *upasarga* ends in *i* or *u*, when the Skt. would show a *व*, in such cases the original Ar. *s* which in Av. has become *h* initially is restored in a palatalised form *š*; but the *h* is retained as well. E.g., *hu*—ह; but *aiwiš*—

* *ačavānēm ... vīsto-fraorētīm vīstō-kayūdēm* (a holy person who knows the religion and does not know the sin of *kayada*). + This may however be explained away as "attraction".

† Kh., A. b. M., p. 272.

‡ Jack., A. G., § 692.

¶ Ib., § 754. 2.

*huta**—**हृति** (Yas. XI. 3.)†, *pairišxvaχta*—**परिष्वक्ता** (Yas. XI. 8)†. The same peculiar inserted *š* is found occasionally with reduplication under similar conditions, i.e. after *i* or *u* in the preceding syllable, e.g. *hišhaχti*—**विष्वक्ति**.

ərəθwa—3/1. Uplifted. See note on *starəθwata* above, 10. Cf. **कर्षे**, Grk. *ὀρθός* (right), Lat. *arduus*.

17. *pascaēta* . . . *yat*—Since when; **पश्चात् यत्**. Cf. the Biblical phrase *after that*.

hušχwafa—3/1 pft. per. $\sqrt{\chi^vaf/p\ddot{a}}$, **हृष**. Sleeps—**सुषाप** (Kan. Dict. p. 601; Barth. Wb. 1862). But in the Kh. A. b. M. (p. 272) and also in Dict. he gives the alternative of taking the word as 1/1 participial-adj. with the prefix *hu-*(**हृ**) and takes the verb *asti* as understood, thus translating “who is never soundly sleeping”. Thus also Jack. But surely it is better to say of Sraoša that he is never asleep than merely that he does not sleep soundly. For the insertion of the *š*, see above *nišhaurvaiti* (16).

daiδitəm—3/2 impf. par. $\sqrt{dā}$ (**दा**) to create. (The two Spirits, *Mainyū*) created. The inserted *i* is to be noted (cf. **द्विचैत्**). The term. -*təm* is the same in form as Skt. **तम्** (2/1). The same is the case with the primary term. 3/2 par. which in *Āv.* is often -*θō* (for -**तस्** 3/2) though the -*tō* is also found. || See above Yas. IX. 15 (*Mainivā dāmān*), as regards the idea of both the Spirits creating the world. See also above verse 2.

hišārō—Protector. \sqrt{har} to protect. The form is an orig. redup. form **hihāra*, the change of the second *h* to *š* is due to the same reason as the insertion of *š* in *nišhaurvaiti*. The word governs the acc. *gaēθā* (2/3).

vīspaiš—3/3 for 2/3. Mills seems to connect this with *daēvaēibyo*.

ayān-ca—2/3 n. The two forms *ayan* and *ayar* (both neu.) are found mixed up in the declension as often happens with neu. nouns in -*ar* and -*an* (Jack., A. G., § 337). Kan. mentions† that there is sometimes a distinction observed between the two, *ayan* being used for the hours of daylight, as contrasted with night (*χšafnas-ca*) as here, whereas *ayar* means the whole day of 24 hours. Cf. Pers. **پار** (*parer*), day before yesterday. In Guj. (dia.) the word **परार** is used to mean day before yesterday or the *year* before last.

χšafnas-ca—2/3 f. Night. Cf. **चषा**, Pers. **شب** (*shab*) night.

yūidyēiti—**युध्यति**. Note par. here.

Māzanyaēibyo—Belonging to *Māzana* (mod. **مازندران**—*Māzandrān*). This district south of the Caspian and north of Balkh, has played the same part in the Persian Epic as *Lankā* has done in the *Rāmāyaṇa*. It has been notorious as the home of demons, and one of the most difficult exploits of Rustam was the conquest of *Māzandrān*. Even to-day the Parsis use the term **माझन्दरानी** to indicate a person who defies all attempts at being curbed or one who obeys no law.

* V.l. (wrongly divided) *aiwiū-huta*.

† Selection XX, Part II.

‡ Pers. **خواب** (*kheāb*)

sleep is a cognate. || Jack., A. G., 440, note.

¶ Dict., p. 42.

haḍa—With, *सध (सध). The word सदा (O. Per. ३६ *hadā*) is said to be cognate.

18. *hō*—Sc. Sraoša.

frānāmaite—3/1 pres. sub. atm. √*nam* (नम) + *frā* (प्र). Bows down i.e. submits (Kan.). Jack. and others translate “flees from” or “turns from”, construed with *parō* (from) and the abl. or loc. (Barth. Wb. 1041). It is better to take *parō* to mean “before”.

θwaēšāt—5/1 m. Through fright. √**wiš* (विष) to be frightened. The θ is prefixed to the **wiš* by “false analogy” with √*θbiš* (दिष) thus we get the regularly used √*θwiš*.

frā —. *nəmaṇte*—Note the separation of the उपसर्ग and the verb reminiscent of early language.

anusō—2/1 n. used as an adv. Against their will. √*vas*, to wish.

tarštō—1/1 for 1/3.

təmaṇhō—6/1 n. used for 2/1 (acc. of the verb of motion). Darkness which is the natural habitat of the demons. Cf. तमस.

dvarənti (v.l. °te, Kan.) √*dvar* to rush. A *daēva*-word.

19. *frāšmiš*—See above 10, note on *frāšmōdāim*. Kan. translates “prosperity-bringer”. Barth. (Hb. air. D.) says “refreshing”. Mills* (also Jack.) translates “the reviver” and explains, “the renovator as completing the progress which makes things fresh—*frāšō-karoti*”. The word is found used as an epithet of *Haoma*.

srirō—Beautiful, श्रीर. Probably refers to *χ^uahe gayēhe χ^uanvatō* in Yas. IX. 1.

ṣṣaṭryō—Royal, kingly, ऋषियः Cf. the phrase सोमो राजा of the Veda.

zairi-dōiθrō—Golden-eyed, a constant epithet of *Haoma* due to the yellow flowers of the plant†. *dōiθrō* may be connected with √*dai* (दि) to see; Per. ७५३ (*didan*) to see. Is Skt. दिष, to show, cognate? The word *dōiθra* is an *ahura*-word, the *daēva*-word being *ašōiθ*.

barəzište—7/1 super. of *barəz*, high. बरिष्ठ.

barəzahi—7/1 n. Height.

Haraiθyō... *barəzayā*—6/1 f. The word *Haraiti-bareza* is best translated as “the mount Haraiti”. The name becomes in mod. Per. البرز (*Alborz*). The variant *Harā* is also found in Av. It has been derived from √*har* (हर, ह to flow) and hence may mean a place from which the waters flow, hence a mountain watershed. Another suggested derivation is that the element *har* is Semetic as is found in *Ar-rarat*, *Har-mon*, *Her-at* (?) and other place names (Modi). The Bun. mentions 2244 peaks in the range. For the idea that *Haoma* dwells in lofty mountains cf. Yas. IX. 26. This mountain is the mount मेरु of Av., hence Nair. says मेरोवरि.

20. *havacā*—Of gracious words (Mills). This and the other epithets refer to *Haoma*. Mills also suggests an alternative rendering “who excites

* S.B.E., XXXI, p. 302. † This plant is said to be *Asclepias acida* or *Sarcostemma viminalis* (Vedic India by Z. A. Ragozin, p. 171). ‡ The Guj. word જોડો is used by Pārsis in the *daēva*-sense.

Is this also cognate? Mar. जोड़.

to much speech", but it is of doubtful value. The word is originally *hu-vacā** (हुवचाः) but drops the *u* owing to the rule of Av. orthography that three exactly similar strokes should be reduced to two. Thus *uv* and *iy* become *v* and *y*†.

pāpō-vacā (पप.)—Whose words protect. √*pā* (पा). The Pah. says *pānak gowišn* (lit. protecting speaker).‡ Kan. says that it means "reciting the *Pāpa-Nask*", which he explains is one (the 6th) of the 21 books which made up the Av. texts in the days of the Zoroastrian Empire. This *Nask* is said to have dealt with the seasons of the year and their appropriate ritual. Dar. agrees with the Pah. version as also Nair. (Skt.) रक्षावाचम्.

pairigā-vacā (v. l. °*gā-va*°, Jack.) (पि.)—Who properly chants the (sacred) words everywhere (Barth. Wb. 864). He derives it from *pairi* (परि) and √*gāy* (गै) to chant and compares the Skt. वामनाः. "Speaking timely words" (Dar. and Jack.). The Pah. has *pa hangām gowišn* (speaking according to the time) and Nair. (Skt.) says यन् येवा युज्यते वक्तुम्. • Kan. sees here also a reference to another *Nask*—the 8th—which dealt with ethics. Kan. is certainly correct as far as the names of the *Nasks* go, but probably the meanings of the names themselves are as indicated in the Pah. version. And there is perhaps also a play on words. Mills trans., "who intones our hymns on every side".

paithimnō—1 l pres. pt. atm. √*pat* (in the 4th, दिव- class), to possess||. Lit. being master or lord of (with acc.) hence possessing, पत्यमानः||. The change of *y* to *i* is a common occurrence (Jack., A. G., § 63). The variant form *paithimnā* (*Fravašayō*) is also found.**

vispōpaēsīm—2/l adj. All-adorning, manifold; lit. of all brilliance. Mills says "of every brilliant form". "Of varied brilliance" Dar.

mastīm—Cf. above Yas. IX. 22. Greatness (Kan.), understanding (Mills), wisdom (Jack.).

pouru-āzaintīm—Cf. above *maī-āzaintiš* (8). Rich in understanding (the meaning of the holy texts).

paurevatatē—2 l. obj. of *paithimnō*. Lit "priority", hence "mastery" (Jack.); first place, pre-eminence. Mills, though he gives the sense all right, conveys the impression that this word is an adj. of *Haoma*.

21. *vāreθrayni*—1 l n. Victorious. The form is made up of *vareθrayna* + *i* (*tad*.-affix). The वृद्धि is rather remarkable because in Av. the वृद्धि with *tad*.-affixes is rarer than in Skt. (Jack., A. G., § 825d; Whit. § 1204). As a matter of fact only about half a dozen instances, besides the present one, are quotable, the most common being *āhūiri* (belonging to the Ahura religion), *māzdayasni* (belonging to Mazda worship), and *hāvani* and *ārštya* above (IX. 1 and 11).

hazayrō-stūnem—1000-pillared. *stunā* f. a pillar (ह्युषा (a var. of ह्युषा).

° When written thus *separately* the *v* takes the initial form. † Jack., A. G., § 68. ‡ Quoted by Barth, Wb. 898. Lit. to be Lord (पति) of. * पृथिवीं पत्यमानः RV. VII. 18. 8.

°° Yt. XIII. 42.

vidātam—1 l p. pt. n. √*dā* (धा) with *vi*. Built. Kan. trans. “strong”.

χvā-raoχšnəm—1 l adj. n. *χvā* (खा=खेन) + *raoχšna* (रोचन). Self-shining. Cf. Pers. روشن (*roshan*), shining.

aṇtara-naēmāt—5/1 of *naēma* (n.) side. Cf. नेमधिनि, lit. “putting on the other side”, hence, battle*. Pers. نیم half, lit. “one side”. Lit. from the inner-side, from within.

nistara°—outside.

22. *snaiθiś*—Mills trans. here, as elsewhere (10 and 16), battle-axe, or halbert. See also below 29 and 31.

visata—3/1 impf. atm. √*vis* (विष्). Has become. Note the sg., each being a separate idea. Kan. trans. “has agreed to”, “has approved of”. He says the *Ahuna-Vairyā*, etc., have agreed to serve as the weapons of Sr.

Yasna-ṛa Haptaṇhāitiś—1 l. The *Yasna Haptaṇhāiti*. Lit. the *Yasna* of the seven *Hās* or chapters. *Hā* (chapter) is from √*hā* (‘हा, हौ to cut) hence it means lit. a part or section. This *Yasna* consists of chapters 35–42 of the *Yasna* portion of Av. The essential seven *Hās* are 35–41, *Hā* 42 being a supplement. It is given as Sel. XXI in Part II.

Fṣuṣas-ca Māθrō—1 l. Lit. the hymn (*Māθre*) of the cattle (*fṣu*—पशु). The hymn of prosperity. This is the special name given to the 58th *Hā* of the *Yasna*. The name is given on account of the word being repeated often in the hymn and aptly describing its contents. According to Yas. LXI. 33 this hymn formed part of the *Hādoχt Nask*.

-karṣtayō—1.3. Sections of the *Hās* of the *Yasna*† or of other hymns or religious works. “Verses” in the biblical sense. From √*kar* (कृन्) to cut. Pers. کارد (kardeh) section, P. Guj. કરદો. The Pah. rendering seems to understand the word from √*kar* (कृ) to do and trans. “acts of worship”. Nair. says रक्षि (sc. *Yasna*) कर्तृकाम. The Nir. says that the hymn *Yeyhe hātūm* is meant here because this is used in all sacrifices. Dar. follows this tradition and trans. “acts of worship”.

X. 23. *haozāθwa-ca*—3/1. n. Through good (or great) wisdom (Kan.): *hu* (हु) + *zāθwa* (√*zan*—जन्, ज्ञा to know). Wise conduct (Mills); gracious knowledge, reverence (Jack.); thorough knowledge (Barth. Wb. 1738).

vaēdyā-ca—3/1. f. विद्यया च; through knowledge.

avān (v. l. *avān*, Kan.)—3/3 impf. par. √*i* + *ava*. अवायन्, descended. Kan. takes his v.l. to be from √*av* to protect and translates “(the Holy Immortals) protect (i.e. rule over) (the world)”.

avi—अभि upon. Nair. trans. उपरि.

haptō-karṣvarim—2/1 adj. f. Consisting of the seven lands. (उपरि) उपरिपथ्या (पथियाम्) Nair. There are seven (*hapta*—सप्त) regions of the universe according to the Bun.‡ called *karṣvars* (Pers. کشر—*kishwar*). The land and water are equal in area and the seven refer to the land-divisions. These are (1) *Xvaniratha* in the centre, (2) *Savahi* to the East, (3) *Arzakhī* to the West, (4) *Fradadafšu* and (5) *Vidadafšu* to the South, and (6) *Vouru-barāšti* and (7) *Vournjarašti* in the North. Modi (Dict.) seems to

* Bv. I. 72. 4, etc.

† The *kardeh* in this hymn, for instance, are marked with roman figures.

‡ Bks. V and VII.

think they refer to the climatic zones of geography. Din., Bk. I mentions that because the earth is round only $3\frac{1}{2}$ Karšvars are illuminated at a time. These are described in detail in Pah. books, especially in Bun. XI. There does not seem to be any communication possible between the various Karšvars.

(1) *X^vaniratha* which is put last (and not the least, because it is best known to us mortals) in the old texts and is called therefore the *haptatha* (the seventh). There seems to have been an idea (Hād. I. 14.) that this is the only one inhabited by human beings. It is in the centre; and in its very centre stood the *Hara-barzaiti* (see above 19).* It was the cradle of the Aryan race because the land of *Airyana Vaēja* was situated within it. Six distinct human races are said to have inhabited this continent (or zone?). The name *X^vaniratha* seems to have been derived from *χ^vani*, splend^d ($\sqrt{\chi^v an}$ = to shine) and *ratha* (chariot?). The epithet *bāmi* shining is often added to it. (See below 31).

(2) *Savahī* (du.), lit., East, morning; cognate with *svar* (*sūram*), bright. The du. form is due to the fact that it is always associated with *Arazehi*. (cf. रोदही). See also Kan., A. G., §§ 85, 87.

(3) *Arazehi* (du.), lit., West. The name is connected with *araza* (darkness) in the comp. *arazaurvaēsa* (the second part of the first half of the night, i.e., the period between full darkness† and midnight). Barth. (Wb. 353) thinks that रात्रि is cognate.

(4) *Fradaḍaḥṣū*—situated south-east from the central *X^vaniratha*. Kan. trans. the name as “Cattle-protecting” (Cattle-breeding?). This form also is du.

(5) *Vīdaḍaḥṣū* (du.)—situated in the south-west. “Obtaining cattle” (?), “rich in cattle” (?).

(6) *Vouru-barəṣti* (du.)—situated in the north-west. The name is from *vouru* (उर, high) and *barəṣty* (बहि—peaks)—“the land of lofty peaks”.

(7) *Vouru-jarəṣty* (du.)—situated in the north-east. *jarəṣty*, बहि (?) is a variant of बहि, see Grass. Wb. 964 and 1679).

24. *yō . . . daēnayāi*—This *pāda* is included by Geld. in the previous verse. I have followed Jack. and Kan.; Mills too seems to have taken it the same way.

daēno-disō—Teacher (of religion); from \sqrt{dis} (दिश्) to show, to point out.

daēnayāi (v. l. $^o yā$ Kan.)—This is a tautology, hence probably Barth. (Wb. 667) marks the word as doubtful. For *daēnā* see Yas. IX. 26, above.

yām—Rel. pron. used in the sense of the def. art., Reich. 749-753. Cf. परि जो पाचि यदमम् AV. (Whit. § 512 b).

* Like मेरु among the Hindus. In fact Nair. trans. *Hara-barzaiti* by मेरु. There seems to be a great deal in favour of the polar theory of the Aryan Homeland. See Tilak's book *The Arctic Home in the Vedas*, where he draws copious comparisons with Avesta. † According to the orthodox Parsi custom, full darkness begins when the hair upon the arms becomes invisible.

aya—3/1 f.

daēnaya—3/1 f. Note the ending *-aya*; Skt. would have °या.

fraorənta—3/1 impf. atm. √*var* (वृ) + *frā* (प्र). Note the atm. This is a "technical term" meaning to profess a religion, used with the ins. (Barth. Wb. 1362). The root is conjugated in the 9th (क्वै) class. Thus also Jack.* Kan. trans. "was pleased". Mills trans. "Ahura Mazda has been confessed with faith" (S. B. E., XXXI, p. 303), and adds in a footnote that this meaning, if correct, "would show a very great degradation from the lore of the Gāthās". See below Yas. XII. 7. (Sel. V).

ašava—1/1. So Jack. and Kan. Mills needlessly takes 3/1 and trans. "with faith".

frā—Note the 𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀 alone used for the repetition instead of the full verb; Jack. A. G., § 752. 2. Cf. *nī* used similarly above, Yas. IX. 17.

The six "Holy Immortals" are mentioned here by name and in their order. These names occur in the Z. calendar for the names of the first seven days of the month, that of Ahura-Mazda being the first.† These six *Ameša-Spəntas* are:

1. *Vohu-Manō*—lit., Good-mind. He is the principal of the Holy Immortals, and his name occurs throughout the Av. literature. He rules over the human mind and also over the animal kingdom. Especially he is the guardian of cattle; and hence on the day of the month bearing his name (the 2nd) and also during the whole month bearing his name (at present the 11th‡) orthodox Parsis abstain from meat. He is *Bahman* of the later Z. works.

2. *Aša-Vahišta* (later *Ardi-besht*)—lit. Best-Righteousness. He is the Lord of Righteousness and Purity and is the *Aša* of the Gāth. Later on, because fire became the material symbol of purity, he came to represent the Holy Fire. We Parsis use his name as synonym for Fire. He is also the keeper of the keys of Heaven.

3. *Xšaθra-Vairya* (later *Shahrivar*)—lit., Sovereignty at will, i.e. Supreme Sovereignty. He rules over the mineral kingdom and especially over metals.

[It may be noted in passing that these three are orig. neu. in form as is also evident from the text where the names are 1/1. The next three names are fem.].

4. *Spənta-Ārmaiti* (later *Spendārmad*)—lit. the Holy Ārmaiti (=Harmony or Bounty?). She rules over the Earth and Womankind and typifies Wisdom and Obedience.

5. *Haurvatās* (later *Khurdād*)—lit. Wholeness, or Perfection, or Salvation. She rules over the waters. She is constantly in association with *Amərətātās*.||

6. *Amərətātās* (later *Amerdād*)—lit. Immortality. She represents the

* See also Jack., A. G., § 62. 2.

† See Sirozāh II. (Sel. XXIV, Part II). See also Int. and also

Modi. Dict.

‡ Originally the 2nd month. See Introduction.

See Kan., A. G., §§ 85ff.

|| Hence used in the du.

Immortal Life. She rules over the vegetable world. The last two form a pair which in other mythologies are represented by "the waters of life" and "the tree of life".

fraŋno—*𐬔𐬀𐬨𐬀*, Pers. *پرسش* (*pursish*) question. Jack. thinks this means the Revelation of God personified. Kan. takes it to mean "he who questions regarding the faith or God", i.e. a seeker after God. Dar. renders it like Jack.* Barth. (Wb. 813 and 1010) says that it refers to the questions asked by Z. to Ahura which were answered by the revelation of Ahura's word.† In any case the sg. is used collectively for plu.

-tkaēšō—see above, Yas. IX. 13. Jack. trans. "the Law of Ahura". Kan. says, "the Teachers of the Law of Ahura". Sg. used for plu. It may be noted that in *Gāθ.* the word, when used by itself, implies a false doctrine. Hence we always find in Y. A. the epithet *Ahura* (or some derivative of it, e.g. *āhūriš*) prefixed to it. Cf. *paoiryōtk°*, Yas. XXVI. 4. (Sel. III). Mills translates this passage very loosely thus: "and the question to the Lord is asked and Mazda's lore (is written)".‡ I have adopted Kanga's trans. but the following alternative may also be suggested for the last line: "which also did reveal (lit., did profess) the questions (put) to Ahura (by Z.) and the revelation of Ahura (in reply)".

25. *frā*—*𐬔𐬀* used as a prep. in the sense of "for" or "during".

ada—here (Kan.); then, so (Jack.). Barth. (Wb. 55-56) says that the word is an adv. and means "therefore." It is used always at the beginning of a sentence or clause and with the opt. to imply a wish or invocation. He regards the *frā* put first in this clause as wrong. See below also.

'vaēibya—4 2 of *dvay* m. The dropping of the initial *d* is paralleled, in Lat. *bis*, Guj. *बि*, also in *विंशति*. Geld. text prints the medial form of the *v* for this word, hence I have used the apostrophe in the transcription. Jack. explains this as connected with *𐬕𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀*—G. A. *ubōibya*—Y. A. **uwaēibya*—**uwaēibya*—*'vaēibya* (A. G., § 6, note 1).

ahubyā—4 2 m. Kan. trans. this by "life" (*जीवनौ*) and in the next *pāda* by the word "world" (*दुनिया*). It is better to take both the times in the former sense and understand the repetition as for emphasis. Mills takes it thus and trans.: "for the lives; yea, for both".

nō may be taken as 2/3 or 6/3 and either will give good sense.

nipayā—2/1 opt. par. Kan. takes it as ben. mood.

ai—Oh! Pers. *ای* (*ay*).

ahē-ca aghūš—Note the case. Trans. "(the life) of this world". *ahu* (*ayhu*) here means the world.

manahyō—1/1. Lit. belonging to the *mainyu* (spirit), hence spiritual. Nair. Skt. trans. says *परलोकौ*. Mills trans. "mental".

pairi—*𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀*, against, from.

drotat—Wicked, fiendish (Jack.). So also Barth. (Wb. 777)|| who

* Quoted by Kan. in a footnote Kb. A. b. M., p. 291.
UŠ. XLIV (Sel. XVI). ‡ S. B. E., XXXI, p. 303.

† Cf. YAS. XII. 5-6 (Sel. V), also Gāθ.
§ See also Jack., A. G., p. xxv, § 34.

regards this as a variant of *dragvant* (*druj*). See also Yas. IX. 8, above. Mills takes it as "unhappy". Kan. gives the lit. sense of "rushing on", "attacking". Nair. Skt. trans. says दुर्गतिमान्.

drvaḥbyō—5/3 adj. qualifying *haēnaēibyō* (f.), but the form is m. or n. The sense is the same as *patāibiyā* in Yas. IX. 18.

us . . . *garawnān*—3/3 sub. pres. par. class 9, √*garaw*. Lift against; lift up high (Kan.). Cf. Skt. *रुध (रुध्).

ḫrūrēm—रुध्, cfuel, bloody (Mills). See *viḫrumantēm* above 10.

draḥšem—Banners (sg. for plu.). So Mills who trans. "spears" but adds in a footnote* that probably "bannered spears" are meant. If this is true it may refer to lances such as our modern lancers use. Barth. (Wb. 771) translates this in the sg. and says it typifies the enemy of Irān. Cf. Yt. I. 11. *haēnayās-ca* . . . *ḫrūrēm draḥšem barəntyā* (of the army bearing the bloody standard). Skt. द्रश्, Pers. درفش (*dirafsh*), banner, Fr. *drapeau*. The famous national flag of Irān was called the *Gāuš draḥšō* (Yas. X. 14.)† which had been, according to the story (in Shāh. and elsewhere), originally the leather apron of *Kāva*, the Blacksmith. He was a subject of *Zohāk* (Aži Dahāka)‡ and he rose in revolt when two of his sons were required to feed the two monsters growing from the tyrant's shoulders. Probably also a bull's head was embroidered upon the original standard; P. Guj. ગાયાનો મુંદો.

parō—Against, with abl.

draomābyō—5/3 of °*mān*, n. Assaults, onslaughts; a *daēva*-word.

yā (f.) as it stands may refer to *haēnā* (f.) of the previous line. But more probably it refers to *draoman* (n.) being merely influenced by the *yā* in the previous line. Suggested reading *yā*, which is the real 2/3 of the n.

duždā—1/1 m. Evil-minded, evil-knowing (Kan.). From *duš* + *dāh* (f.), wisdom; *धा (धौ).

drāvayāt—3/1 caus. sub. pres. par. √*dru*. Causes to rush, i.e. launches (against us). Sub. in rel. clause, as in Skt.

maṭ usually governs ins., here it is irregularly the abl., probably due to the influence of *maṭ* itself which is orig. 5/1 (see above 8).

Viḍātaoṭ (v. l. °*dātaoṭ* Kan.)—The Demon of Destruction; Death (Kan.). From √*dā* (धा) + *vi* (वि), to destroy. As a proper name it is used for a Demon usually associated with *Aēšma* and *Vāyu* (वायु). Generally he is known by the name *Astō-vidātu* (lit. bone-breaker), i.e. the destroyer of the *astvanti gaēθā*. Also found as *Viḍōtu*.|| Probably he is the विधातृ of RV., who is a separate deity in RV., VI. 50. 12; IX. 81. 5; etc.

daēvō-dātāt—The *daēva* here is the arch-fiend *Aprō-mainyuš*.

26. *ada* here begins the sentence as it should. See above 25. The Skt. अथ is also used in the same sense of "therefore" and also occurs as the first word of the sentence generally; cf. RV., I. 55. 5, etc.¶

* S. B. E., XXXI, p. 303.

† Sel. XIX, Part II.

‡ Yas. IX. 8, above.

|| Modi. Dict.

¶ Grass., Wb. 42-43.

dayā—2/1 aor. opt. (ben.) √*dā* to grant.

hitaēibiyō—4/3 of *hita*. See above, Yas. IX. 22.

tanubyō—to (our) bodies.

pouru-spaxštīm—Complete subjection (Kan.); full watch over (Jack.).

From √*spas* (cl. 4), to see; cf. *स्पष्ट* (spy), *पश्यति* (* *स्पश्यति*), Lat. *specio*. The pri. suf. *-ti* is added and the *χ* is inserted before the conjunct *št* (see above Yas. IX. 21). Pah. trans. says *pūr pāspānih* (Pers. *پاسبانی*—*pāsbānī*) “keeping full watch”. The word occurs only in one other place, Yt. IX. 1 (Sel. XXII. Part II), where Kan. trans. correctly like Jack.

ibišyantām—Kan. trans. “of the envious (*बदेषा*) people”.

paiti-jaitīm—Smiting down. From √*jan* (*जन्*) + *paiti* (*प्रति*)

dušmaīnyunām—Lit. evil-minded (towards us), hence enemies. Pers.

دشمن (*dushman*), enemy.

haθrā-nivāitīm—Complete conquest. *haθrā* (complete) is the same as the Skt. *सर्व* (Ved. *सवा*) which is made on analogy of *सर्व*, *तत्*, *यत्*, etc. and means everywhere (*सर्वत्र*). Cf. *सवाहस् . पौसहस्* RV., V. 35. 4; *सवाजित् हवः* RV., IX. 27. 4, etc. *nivāiti* is from √*van* to conquer, to win + *nī*; hence it means conquest or overthrow. Barth. (Wb. 1764) trans. “conquest at one stroke”, taking *haθrā* = at once. Kan. in Kh. A. b. M. (p. 292) trans. “strength to overthrow” but not in Dict., where he agrees with the rendering of Barth.

hamərəθanām—Adversaries, foes (Jack. and others). Better take it lit. as “gathered together” (p. pt. pass. of √*arə*, *अर*). Cf. *सहति* a fight (RV., I. 32. 6, etc.).

aurvaθanām—Inimical, unfriendly. From *a* (neg.) + *urvaθa* (friend). The latter word is from √*var* to choose. One of the sons of Z. is called *Urvataθ-nara* (Friend of humanity?).

27. *auruša*—The Pah. version and all commentators say “white.” The names of colours are not very clear in ancient languages. The word is cognate with Skt. *अरुष** and *अरुष* in both of which the idea is that of red. The word also occurs in the *Tir Yašt* (Yt. VII. 2) where *Tir* (the star Sirius) is called *aurušem*, *raoṣṣnəm*, *frāderəsəm*. Kan. there translates *aurušem* correctly as “red”.†

frāderəsra—Beautiful (Kan.); seen afar (Jack.); shining forth (Barth. Wb. 1015). √*dərəs*, *दस्* + *frā* प्र.

spənta—Holy. Mills objects to horses being called holy and suggests the trans. “powerful”. The idea is that they are divine (see *asaya* below) and that they are bringers of blessings somewhat the same as Skt. *भद्र* in *भद्रा असा हरिताः सूर्यस्य* (RV., I. 115. 3).

vīdvāñhō—Wise, knowing, *विद्वांसः*. Mills says, “quick to learn”.

* E.g. in *रिषति ह्यग्नी अरुषाय पन्थास्* (RV., VII. 71. 1). † Sirius, as is well known, has changed his colour. The Iliad mentions him as red in colour; in fact the name itself signifies “fiery” or “burning”. Seneca compared the star to Mars in colour and Ptolemy has put it down as red. (A. Clerke, *Problems in Astrophysics*, pp. 225ff; E. W. Maunder, *Astronomy without a Telescope*, p. 114).

asaya—Shadowless (Jack., A. R., p. 40)—**आशय**. Cf. Pers. **سایه** (*sāyā*) shadow. This is a well-known characteristic of divine beings, as contrasted with the beings of the material world, that they cast no shadows. The same idea is found in Hindu mythology, e.g., Mbh. III. 57. 25. Mills proposes to read *āsava* (swift).*

mainivasayhō—Darting through heavens (lit. the spirit-world). From *mainyu* + *asah* (space, cf. **आश**). Kan. (Dict.) suggests as an alternative that the comp. is made up of *mainyu* + *vasayh* (divine will) and trans. “moving in accord with divine will”. Mills seems to have had some such idea in his mind, for he trans. “heeding orders from the mind”. The epithet is used for the horses of Sraoša and Miθra; and in one place† it is used for an arrow. —

vazanti—Bear, **वहनि**.

srvaēna—1/3 m. Hard (lit. horny). Cf. *srvara* above Yas. IX. 11. Kan. very strangely trans. “leaden”, probably misled by the Pers. **سرب** (*surb*) lead.

safāyehō—1/3. Hoofs, **स्फाय**. Note the Ved. plu. in **-वाच**.

zaranya—3/1. With gold, **चिरण्या**.

paiti-θwarštāyehō—1/3 p. pt. pass. $\sqrt{\theta}$ war + *paiti*. Shod (Jack.). The $\sqrt{\theta}$ war (*θwaras*) is incohate and means “to create”, “to cut”. (See also Gāṇ. Ahu. XXIX. 1.)‡ Covered with (Mills); gilt with (Kan.); chased with or inlaid with (Barth. Wb. 795).

28. *āsayāgha*—1/2 m. com. of *āsu* (**आसु**). Swifter.

aspaēibya—5/2. The abl. is used as in Skt. The horses of Sraoša number four, but each pair of them is compared to and contrasted with a pair of earthly objects hence the du. throughout. Barth.|| thinks that this passage is a later insertion. The want of metre is perhaps a supporting bit of evidence.

vāraēibya—Rain (showers). Mills trans. “rain (-drops, as they fall)”. Cf. Skt. **वारि**, Pers. **باران** (*bārān*) rain.

maēyaēibya—5/2. **मेघाभ्याम्**.

vayaēibya—Birds; Skt. **वि**.¶ It may be noted that the word is used in Veda for the flying horses of the Aśvins (RV. I. 104. 1., etc.) or for those of the Maruts (RV., V. 53. 3).**

hvapatarataēibya (v.l. *hupal*°, *patarataēibya* Geld.). Well-winged (Mills). * **सुपचित**. Note the *hva* for *hu*.

hvastayā—6/2 (? for 5/2). Well-aimed. Note the sudden change of case from abl. to gen.

aiyhimanayā (v. l. *ayhi*°. Barth.). 6/2. pres. pt. pass. \sqrt{ah} (**अयिमानयो**). Barth. says that this form is a variant of *ayhyamanayā* (Wb. 279). Mills trans. “arrow as it flies”. He notes†† a v.l. *ayhe manayā* (himself reading

* Geld. does not note this among his v. l. though he mentions *aśara*, an evident mistake.

† Yt. VIII. 6; Kan. is not quite correct there in his trans., Kh. A. b. M., p. 224. ‡ Sel. XV. below. || Wb. 342. ¶ RV., I. 25. 7, etc. ** Grass. Wb. 1285. †† S.B.E., XXXI, p. 304, fn. 4.

apḥamanayā) and for this reading he suggests the trans. "swifter than one's thought (?)".

29. *yōi*—1/3. वे. Note again the change from du. to plu. (the four horses).

viṣpā tē referring to the *aspa*, *vāta*, etc., of last verse.

apayēinti—3/3 pres. par. √i (इ) + *apa* (अप). Overtake.

yā—3/2 obj. of *paskāt*. Kan. reads *yōi* undoubtedly through the influence of the previous *yōi*.

ave—1 3 pron. stem *ava*. They. Skt. एव and Av. *aēva* (one) are cognates. Kan. reading *yōi* as noted above takes this as 2/3, and trans. the *pāda* thus: "(Those) who go in pursuit behind them", and connects it with what follows. The reading of Geld. would connect this with the preceding *pāda* (see trans.).

paskāt—adv. Behind, पश्चात्.

vyeinti—Go in pursuit. √i + vi.

āfante—3 3 pres. atm. √āp to obtain. Are overtaken. Note atm. used in a pass. sense. Kan. takes it as active in sense and trans. "they (those that go in pursuit) never overtake them (the horses of Sraoṣa) from behind".

vaēibya—3/2 n. See above 25.

snaiθiḥbya (v. l. *zibya*, Kan.)—3/2 n. Note the *z* owing to Sandhi, the surd *ś* becoming sonant *ž* while combining with the sonant *b*. Mills seems to take it as 5/2 and trans. "from both the weapons (hurled on this side and on that)". Barth. is unable to give any reason for the du.* The weapon of Sraoṣa is a sort of double weapon, a sort of halberd with a spear-point and an axe-head [see above *stərəθwata snaiθiṣa* (10) and *ərəθwa snaiθiṣa* (16)]. Or could it be because it was a two-handed weapon wielded by both hands (see *zastayō* below 31) ?

frāyatayeinti—3/3 pres. par. Speed on. √yat + frā.

vazəmna—1/3 m. pres. pt. atm. of √vaz, वज्, to bear. Bearing, carrying. Kan. takes it as 3/1 of a noun *vazəman* and trans. "in a chariot". Cf., एयेन वजन्ति.

yačit.... *yačit*—Whether.... or whether.... Kan. takes the first as the rel. referring to Sraoṣa just as *yaṭ* was used above (Yas. IX. 4.) for Yima.

uṣastaire—7/1 adj. com. of *uṣas*, eastern. Easternmost.

Hindvō—7/1 m. India. Dar. trans. "river" and says it is the Indus.

āgaurwayeite—3/1 pres. atm. √garaw (गृह्) + ā, to seize, to take. Kan. (also Mills) trans. "takes (his course)".

daōṣataire—7/1 adj. com. of *daōṣas* (cf. प्रदोषः). Westernmost.

Niṛne is practically *अन* and is taken in the most varied fashion. Jack. and Barth. take it as 3/1 pres. atm. of √gan (गन्) + nī and trans. "smites down". Mills trans. "alights" (from his chariot). Kan. (Kh. A. b. M.)

follows Mills in his trans. of these two *pādas*: "When he takes his course from India in the East and when he alights down in the West". Dar. says* that Sraoša starts from the river in the East (Indus) and alights at the river in the West (Tigris). Barth. (Wb. 1814) gives a trans. of this passage which is not very clear to me: "Whether he seizes it in Eastern India or (whether) he is in the West and throws it down"†; the "it" probably refers to the *snaiθiš* (see also Wb. 492). Kan. in his Dict. (p. 292) has the very illuminating suggestion that the word means *Niniveh*, though he does not give any references about this. The word *Niṣne* occurs in two places only, and in both the passages—here and Yt. X. 104—the first two *pādas* are identical. The latter runs as follows:—

yejhe darəyā-ciθ bāzava fragrəwənti Miθrō-aojanhō,

• + *yaθ-ciθ ušastaire Hindvō (āgaurvayeite)*

yaθ-ciθ daošataire Niṣne

yaθ-ciθ sanāke Raṣhayā

yaθ-ciθ vimaidəm aiṣhā zəmə.

The last two *pādas* may throw some light on the nature of the word *Niṣne*, because evidently the four *pādas* are equally balanced. The phrase *sanāke Raṣhayā* also occurs in Yt. XII. 19, where it is in contrast with *aodaēṣu Raṣhayā* (18). These are rendered generally by Barth. as the "mouths of the *Raṣhā*" and "the source of the *Raṣhā*". This river is identified with the Tigris by Dar., but the identification is not certain.‡ At any rate the "mouths of the *Raṣhā*" are generally placed in the South. The Pah. work Bun. mentions (XX) two big rivers the *Arang* (= Av. *Raṣhā*) and the *Veh-rōt*, which both rise out of *Hara-barəzaiti*; the former flows to the West and the latter to the East. But neither of these have been definitely identified (Barth. 1510-11). The *vimaiḍa* has been translated as the centre of the earth, the region of *Hara-barəzaiti*. This is where the *aoda* (or the headwaters of the *Raṣhā*) are to be found. The name *aoda Raṣhayā* is found in Ven. I. 19 as the name of a country which was a republic.§ When Ahura Mazda created this land, against it Anro Mainyuš created bitter cold winter. This points to a region in northern latitudes.** Thus the passage, Yt. X. 104, refers to lands at the four cardinal points. And in order to balance the first two of those *pādas* we must take *Niṣne* as the proper name of a land to the West. Hence the suggestion of Kan., that *Niṣne* might be *Niniveh*, is not so fanciful as may appear at first sight. Also note that the word *āgaurvayeite* is metrically an extra, and even if omitted the sense of the passage is quite clear.

30. *barəzō*—Tall.

* Quoted by Kan., Kh. A. b. M., p. 298. † "Auch wenn er im östlichen Indien ist, er packt (ihn); auch wenn er im westlichen ist, er schlägt (ihn) nieder." ‡ It may have originally been identical with Skt. *राष* (river) and then applied to a special river; cf. *सिन्धु*. § Skt. *राष*.

¶ *asdrō* (Barth. Wb. 210). ** Dar. states that the north basin of the Tigris is noted for its severe cold. But I think that we must seek much further north for our land of *aoda Raṣhayā*.

barəzdyāstō—High-girded, i.e. with well-girt loins; “so high, yea, even to the girdle” (Mills). Pah. says *buland aiwyāst*. See above Yas. IX. 26.

dāmān—See above 2. The form is here used for 7/1.

nīṣaphasti—3/1 pres. par. √*had* (चड्) + *nī* (निषीदति). Sits down. Pers. نشستن (*nīshastan*) to sit. Jack. trans. “decends to”, and Mills says, “stoops to.”

31. *āθritim*—Thrice: cf. *āxtūirīm* Yas. IX. 14, above.

hamahe—6/1 n. Entire. The sense is 7/1 (or 2/1 ?)—“during the entire day”.

ayān as opposed to *χšapō*. See above 17.

hamayā—6/1 f.

χšapō—6/1 of *χšap*, night. The stem *χšafan* is also used.

karṣvara—2/1 n.

avazāiti—3/1 pres. par. √*vaz* + *ā* to arrive at (acc. case). Lit., drives towards.

bāmim—This epithet is applied invariably to *Xvaniratha*. It is from √*bā* (भा) to shine out. Hence it means brilliant, magnificent. In Yt. X. 50, this epithet is used for *Hara-barəzaiti*. And in Ven. XIX. 28 (Sel. XIV) the same epithet is applied to the dawn. Cf. Pers. بامداد (*bāmdād*) dawn.

zastayō (v. l. *ṭaya*, Geld., which is 7/1)—7/2. This is the reading adopted by Mills; Kan. has like Geld. In both (his) hands, चक्षयोः. Mills adds in a note (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 305) that the *snaiθiš* must designate a double-handed weapon. This is probably also the reason of the dual *snaiθižbaya* above (29).

drazimnō—1/1 pres. pt. atm. √*drag* to hold. Cf. O. Bul. *drūzati* to hold. Perhaps the Skt. दृढ (firm) is connected. See *drājahya* above, Yas. IX. 26; also Barth. Wb. 774.

brōiθrō-taēžəm (ān.) (v. l. *barō* Kan.; *ṭižəm*; *ṭaēžim*, Barth. Wb. 973)—Sharp-edged; sharp as a knife (Jack.). *brōiθro* means “sharp” according to Barth.* Kan. (Dict.) says it means a weapon for cutting such as a knife; from √*brāj* to cut; cf. ब्रजानि, Pers. بریدن (*burridan*) to cut. *taēžəm* sharp; cf. वेजस्, तिष्ण, Pers. تیز (*tiz*) sharp, تیغ (*tigh*) sword, تیج (*tij*) arrow; Arm. *tegh* lance.

hvā-vaēyəm (ān.)—Striking of itself (Jack.); which flies as of itself (Mills). Pers. trans. says, نیک راند (*nīk ravandā*), well speeding. Whose stroke is strong (Barth. Wb. 1855), so also Kan. The word can be equivalent to *खवेगस्* or *सुवेगस्*. But though the Skt. वेग is connected, the Av. *vaēya* means “stroke” when used by itself, as in Yt. X. 98, and in compounds it means “impact” (Barth. Wb. 1313). If we adopt the rendering of Mills it would again emphasise the double nature of the weapon which has a sharp edge and which can be hurled like a javelin. Self-flying weapons are common to all mythologies.

* The word is found in Ven. XVII. 2 and 4.

॥ उपरताति वन्द्यम्. ¶ The form *Arīti* as a proper name occurs only here.

yəṣṣhāda—Wherein. Orig. an abl. f. rel. pron. used adverbially.

fryō friθō—Loving (and) beloved; प्रियः प्रीतः. Kan. reads *fritō*. The Eng. word *friend* is cognate.

paitizantō etc.—See above 17.

III.

III.

To the Fravašis—Yasna XXVI.

1. § ašāunām¹ vaŋhuis² sūrā³ | spentā⁴ fravašayō⁵ staomi⁶, | zbayemi⁷,
ufyemi⁸, yazamaide⁹, | nmānayā¹⁰, vīsyā¹¹, zantumā¹², | daḡyumā¹³,
zaraθuštrōtemā¹⁴.

2. § vispanām¹-ca² āhām³ paoir-
yanām⁴ fravašinām⁵ iḏa⁶ yazamaide⁷
+ fravašim⁸ avēm⁹ (yām)¹⁰ Ahurahe¹¹ Mazdā¹²;
mazištām¹³-ca¹⁴, vahištām¹⁵-ca¹⁶, sraēštām¹⁷-ca¹⁸, xraōdištām¹⁹-
ca²⁰,
+ xraθwištām²¹ (-ca²²) hukereptem-
ām²³ (-ca²⁴), ašāt²⁵ apanotemām²⁶-ca²⁷.

3. § ašāunām¹ vaŋuhis² sūrā³ | spentā⁴ fravašayō⁵ yazamaide⁶;
yā⁷ Amešanām⁸ Spentanām⁹, xšaetanām¹⁰, verezi¹¹-dōiθra-
nām¹²,
berezatām¹³, aiwyāmanām¹⁴, taχmanām¹⁵, āhūryanām¹⁶;
yōi¹⁷ aiθyajaŋhō¹⁸ ašavanō¹⁹.

4. § paoiryanām¹-tkaēšanām² | paoiryanām³ sāsno⁴-gūšām⁵ | iḏa⁶ ašao-
nām⁷ ašaoninām⁸ (-ca⁹) | ahūm¹⁰-ca¹¹, daēnām¹²-ca¹³, | baodas¹⁴-ca¹⁵, ur-
vānem¹⁶-ca¹⁷, | fravašim¹⁸-ca¹⁹ yazamaide²⁰, | yōi²¹ ašāi²² vaonare²³. |
Gəuš²⁴ (huḏāŋhō²⁵) urvānem²⁶ ya zamaide²⁷.

5. § yōi¹ ašāi² vaonare³;
Gayehe⁴ Mareθnō⁵ ašaonō⁶ | + fravašim⁷ yazamaide⁸;
Zaraθuštrahe⁹ Spitāmahe¹⁰ (iḏa¹¹) ašaonō¹² | ašim¹³-ca¹⁴ fravašim¹⁵-ca¹⁶
yazamaide¹⁷;
Kuvōis¹⁸ Vištāspahe¹⁹ ašaonō²⁰ | + fravašim²¹ yazamaide²²;
+ Isat²³-vāstrahe²⁴ Zaraθuštrōis²⁵ ašaonō²⁶ | + fravašim²⁷ yazamaide²⁸.

6. § nabānazdištanām¹ iḏa², | ašaonām³ ašaoninām⁴-ca⁵, | ahūm⁶-ca⁷,
daēnām⁸-ca⁹ | baodas¹⁰-ca¹¹, urvānem¹²-ca¹³, | fravašim¹⁴-ca¹⁵ yaza-
maide¹⁶; | yōi¹⁷ ašāi¹⁸ vaonare¹⁹, | mat²⁰ vispābyō²¹ (ašaonibyo²²)
fravašibyo²³,
yā²⁴ iririθušām²⁵ ašaonām²⁶, + yās²⁷-ca²⁸ jvantām²⁹ ašān-
nām³⁰,
yās³¹-ca³² narām³³ azātanām³⁴ frašō³⁵-careθrām³⁶ Saošyantām³⁷.

* Geld. nas this in prose.

III.

To the Fravašis—Yasna XXVI.

1. I extol⁶, invoke⁷, (and) weave⁸-(my-hymn of praise to) the excellent², heroic³ (and) pure⁴ Fravašis⁵ of the Righteous¹: (and) we worship⁹ (those Fravašis) belonging-to-the house¹⁰, belonging-to-the-village¹¹, belonging-to-the-province¹², (and) belonging-to-the-country¹³, (and also) those-of-the-highest-priests¹⁴.

2. And² first^{4*} among all¹ these⁵ Fravašis⁵ (do) we worship⁷ here⁶ that⁹ Fravaši⁸, which¹⁰ (is) of Ahura¹¹ Mazda¹², (which is) both^{14†} the most-mighty¹³ and¹⁴ the most excellent¹⁵, both^{18†} the fairest¹⁷ and²⁰ the firmest¹⁹, and²² the wisest²¹ and²⁴ the most-gracious²³, and²⁷ (which) through Righteousness²⁶ hath-reached-the-highest²⁶.

3. We worship⁶ the excellent², heroic³ (and) pure⁴ Fravašis⁵ of the Righteous¹, those^{7†} of the Holy⁹ Immortals⁸, the Rulers¹⁰ energetic¹¹. eyed¹², lofty¹³ (and) very-strong¹⁴, the mighty¹⁵ (ones) belonging-to-Ahura¹⁶, who¹⁷ (are) without-corruption¹⁸ (and) righteous¹⁹.

4. Here⁶ (do) we worship²⁰ the life-force¹⁰, and¹¹ the heart¹², and¹³ the mind¹⁴, and¹⁵ the soul¹⁶, and¹⁷ the Fravaši¹⁸ too¹⁹, of righteous-men⁷ and⁹ righteous-women⁸ of-the-ancient¹-faith², (and) of the first³ followers⁵||-of-the-commandments⁴ (of Ahura), who²¹ strove²³ for righteousness²². We worship²⁷ the soul²⁶ of the bounteous²⁵ Mother-earth²⁴.

5. Who¹ strove³ for righteousness² (theirs are the Fravašis we worship):

we worship⁸ the Fravaši⁷ of the righteous⁶ Gaya⁴-Maretan⁵;

we worship¹⁷ here¹¹ both^{14†} the Holiness¹³ and¹⁶ the Fravaši¹⁶ of the holy¹² Zaraθuštra⁹ Spitama¹⁰

we worship²² the Fravaši²¹ of the righteous²⁰ Kava¹⁸-Vištāspa¹⁹;

we worship²⁷ the Fravaši²⁶ of the righteous²⁶ Isaṭ-vāstra²³ son-of-Zaraθuštra²⁴.

6. Here² (do) we worship¹⁶ the life-force⁶, and⁷ the heart⁸, and⁹ the mind¹⁰, and¹¹ the soul¹², and¹³ the Fravaši¹⁴ too¹⁵, of righteous-men⁸ and⁵ righteous-women⁴ among¶ (our) nearest-brothers¹; who¹⁷ strove¹⁹ for righteousness¹⁸, (along) with²⁰ all²¹ (the other) holy²² Fravašis²³; (viz.) those^{24†} of the righteous²⁶ (who-are-)gone²⁶, and²⁸ those^{27†} of the righteous³⁰ (who-are-) living²⁹, and³² those^{31†} of heroes³³ (yet) unborn³⁴, the heralds^{36**}-of-renovation³⁵, the Saošyants³⁷.

* Orig. adj., "of the first Fravašis". † Lit., "and". ‡ Lit., "which". § Lit., "listeners".

¶ Lit., "of". ** Lit., "makers" or "workers".

7. § (iḍa¹) iristanām² urvānō³ yazamaide⁴, | yǎ⁵ aṣṣaonām⁶ fravašayō⁷; |
vīspanām⁸ ahmya⁹ nmāne¹⁰ | nabānazdistanām¹¹ (para¹²-)iristanām^{13*},
§ aēθrapaitinām¹⁴ aēθryanām¹⁵ | narām¹⁶ nāirinām¹⁷ iḍa¹⁸ | + aṣṣaonām¹⁹
aṣṣaoninām²⁰ | fravašayō²¹ yazamaide²².

8. vīspanām¹ aēθrapaitinām² aṣṣaonām³ fravašayō⁴ yazamaide⁵ :
vīspanām⁶ aēθryanām⁷ aṣṣaonām⁸ fravašayō⁹ yazamaide¹⁰ :
vīspanām¹¹ narām¹² aṣṣaonām¹³ fravašayō¹⁴ yazamajde¹⁵ :
vīspanām¹⁶ nāirinām¹⁷ aṣṣaoninām¹⁸ fravašayō¹⁹ yazamaide²⁰.

9. § vīspanām¹ aperenāyūkanām² | dahmō³-keretanām⁴ aṣṣaonām⁵ |
fravašayō⁶ yazamaide⁷ :
§ ā⁸-daḥyunām⁹-ca¹⁰ aṣṣaonām¹¹ | fravašayō¹² yazamaide¹³ :
uz¹⁴-daḥyunām¹⁵†-ca¹⁶ aṣṣaonām¹⁷ | fravašayō¹⁸ yazamaide¹⁹. —

10. § narām¹-ca² aṣṣaonām³ | fravašayō⁴ yazamaide⁵ : | nāirinām⁶-ca⁷
aṣṣaoninām⁸ | fravašayō⁹ yazamaide¹⁰.
(vīspā¹¹) aṣṣaunām¹² varjuhiš¹³ surā¹⁴ | spentā¹⁵ fravašayō¹⁶ yazamaide¹⁷ | yǎ¹⁸ haç¹⁹ Gayāt²⁰-Mareθnat²¹ | ā²² Saosyantāt²³ vere-
θraynat²⁴.

11. vīspā¹ fravašayō² aṣṣaunām³ yazamaide⁴.
§ iristanām⁵ urvānō⁶ yazamaide⁷, | yǎ⁸ aṣṣaonām⁹ fravašayō¹⁰.

* Geld. puts the stop (·) at the *fravašayō* preceding, and has no stop here.

† I have adopted Kan.'s reading; Geld. has °daḥyuz°, but he notes the other reading.

7. Here¹ (do) we worship⁴ the souls³ of the departed², (and) those^{5*} Fravašis⁷ of the righteous⁶, of all⁸ (our) nearest-brothers¹¹ (who have) gone¹³, beyond¹² from this⁹ fold^{10†}.

We worship²² here¹³ the Fravašis²¹ of the Teachers¹⁴ (and) the disciples¹⁵, holy¹⁹ men¹⁶ (and) holy²⁰ women¹⁷.

8. We worship⁵ the Fravašis⁴ of all¹ holy³ Teachers² :
 we worship¹⁰ the Fravašis⁹ of all⁶ holy³ disciples⁷ :
 we worship¹⁵ the Fravašis¹⁴ of all¹¹ holy¹³ men¹² :
 we worship²⁰ the Fravašis¹⁹ of all¹⁶ holy¹⁸ women¹⁷.

9. We worship⁷ the Fravašis⁶ of all¹ holy⁵ children² of innocent^{3†}-nature⁴.
 We worship¹³ the Fravašis¹² of the Holy-ones¹¹ within⁸-(this)-land⁹, and¹⁰ we worship¹⁹ the Fravašis¹³ of the Holy-ones¹⁷ without¹⁴-(this)-land¹⁶ as-well¹⁵.

10. We worship⁶ the Fravašis⁴ of the righteous³ men¹, and² the Fravašis⁹ of the righteous³ women⁶ (do) we worship¹⁰ as-well⁷.

All¹¹ the excellent¹⁸, heroic¹⁴, (and) pure¹⁵, Fravašis¹⁶ of the Righteous¹² (do) we worship¹⁷, (even) those^{13*} from¹⁹ Gaya²⁰-Morētan²¹ upto²² Saosyant²³ the victorious²⁴.

11. We worship⁴ all¹ the Fravašis² of the Righteous³.

We worship⁷ the souls⁶ of the departed⁵, (and) these^{8*} Fravašis¹⁰ of the Righteous⁹.

* Lit., "which". † Lit., "in this house". ‡ Lit., "pious".

NOTES.

1. Kanga: Khordeh Avestā bā Māenī, pp. 382-387.

2. Jackson: Avesta Reader, No. 2.

3. Mills: S.B.E., XXXI, pp. 278-279.

The conception of *Fravašis* is a special feature of the Z. faith.* They are the eternal part as it were of all sentient beings in the universe. Human and higher beings have *Fravašis*. According to this Yas. the human being is made up of five principles—*ahu*, *daēna*, *baodah*, *urvān*, and *Fravaši* (see below 4).† Each sentient being from the human‡ up to Ahura Mazda himself has got his or her *Fravaši* existing through eternity. “The *Fravašis* of men are the archtypal souls clothed in ethereal forms, after whose model each human being is formed on earth The very conception, however of a *Fravaši* as an archtypal causal soul, implies that each *Fravaši* is the pattern type both for the inner powers, and the outward form of bodily existence. The body of each man, with its peculiar physical, mental, moral, and spiritual capacities, is shaped and formed after the model which each particular *Fravaši* presents, and therefore it has to be admitted that the differences that we find among men, are due to the differences in the archtypal souls or *Fravašis* which inhere in mortal bodies We have now to find some explanation as to the differences among the *Fravašis* themselves. Has the Almighty created these differences among the *Fravašis* simply to please His Divine Will, or is there a profound plan, an inscrutable justice, underlying the creation of these differences? Limited and faulty though our conception of Divine Power may be, we can never dissociate the ideas of harmony and justice from the acts of God, and according to that view, we cannot but take it for granted that, owing to numerous and sufficient causes, the *Fravašis* as they arise in the invisible world are made with comparatively endless differences. The *Fravašis* are not special creations without a past, nor are they created all at once for the first time. They are as much the product of evolution and of slow and steady growth, as everything else in this world”.|| The *Fravašis* are, therefore, a part and parcel of the human being, and even when the man passes away from this earth the *Fravaši* “lives on” and helps God in His work of evolution. Of course it is but natural that in the Av. only the *Fravašis* of the good and holy ones are mentioned and adored, but that does not prove that the wicked have no *Fravašis* at all. Only they are of no use for helping the good creation onwards until they themselves come over to the path of *Aša*. The late Prof. Moulton takes a somewhat limited view of the *Fravašis*¶ and though he draws a number of very interesting comparisons with the ideas of ancestor-worship and of the *genius* among the Romans still one cannot quite agree with his essentially Christian point of view. The biggest

* See also Introduction. † For details see Introduction. ‡ The souls of various animals are mentioned in Yt. XIII. 74, but not the *Fravašis*. || Khan Bahadur N. D. Khandalawala in an article (*Fravokard and Rebirth*) in the *Cama Memorial Volume*, pp. 200-215. ¶ *Early Zoroastrianism* (Hibbert Lectures 1912), pp. 254ff.

source of our information regarding the *Fravašis* is the *Farvardin Yašt* (Yt. XIII) where the *Fravašis* of a large number of men and women and divine and semi-divine beings are mentioned.* In fact the Yt. constitutes a fairly extensive "Calendar of Great Men" of ancient Irān. The purpose served by these names is the same as that intended by Auguste Comte when he instituted the Positivist Calendar, namely,—“to impress on the public mind, a general conception of the Past, and to revive the sense of continuity in the ages”.† The invocation by name to the *Fravašis* of the great sons and daughters of ancient Irān, and of those who have done any great or notable service to the cause of the community or of the country, constitutes one of the principal features of our ceremonies to this day. Whenever a Zoroastrian passes away, who has done some notable good to his fellow-men, a general meeting of his co-religionists may decide to have his name on this “Roll of Honour and Remembrance”, and thenceforth he or she is remembered by name in every ceremonial of importance. Thus we find to-day among the great and the good of Zoroaster’s faith the names of Dadabhai Naoroji, of Phirozeshah Mehta, of Jamshedji Tata, to mention y three of those who have passed onwards comparatively recently. Nothing is so thrilling to the listeners, nothing which more inspires to worthily live the life laid down in the religion of Zoroaster, than to hear the names of these great souls who have “passed on” (*iristanəm*) repeated. Truly may we say that they live eternally in the hearts of the grateful generations that come after them.

1. This verse forms the first half of Yt. XIII. 21.

ašāunām (v.l. *ašao*°, *ašāv*°)—6/3 of *ašavan* (*ašāon* or *ašāun*).

vaguhīš—2/3 f. adj. of *vaghu*. वही, excellent,

staomī—1/1 pres. par. √*stu* to praise. स्तौमि.

zbayemi 1/1 pres. par. √*zbā* (° *zvā*, *zū*)—𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀 (𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀)—to invoke.

ufyemi—1/1 pres. par. √*vaf*, to weave. The word is used metaphorically in the sense of “weaving a hymn”, i.e. singing the praises of. Dar. and Sp. trans., “I make my own” (i.e. I meditate upon). This as Barth. points out‡ is due to a misreading of the Pah. script. The real word according to Barth. is *handēšīšn* (Per. اندیشیدن *andīshidan*—to meditate upon) which has been misread *χ^vēšēnišn* (to regard as one’s own). Har. says “I offer myself to”.||

nmanayā, etc.—2/3 f. adj. from *nmāna*, etc.

zarbuštrōtēmā—2/3 f. adj. sup. from *Zarabuštra*. Belonging to the highest priest; *Zarabuštra*, as hinted above (Yas. IX. 1)¶, was the name of a priestly office. The highest spiritual authority in Irān (the *Dastur-i-Dasturān*) was known by this title in the superlative (see Whit. § 473a). In

* See Introductory note to Yt. XIII, by Dar., S.B.E., XXIII, pp. 179 f. † *The New Calendar of Great Men* by Frederic Harrison, Preface. ‡ Wb. 1340. || Quoted by Kan., Kh. A. b. M., p. 383, fn. ¶ See also Introduction.

the ancient days the King was also the Chief-Priest, like the राजर्षि in India. Note that the previous four words indicate the *Ahus* whereas this word indicates the *Ratus* (see above, Yas. LVII. 1).

2. This verse is the same as Yt. XIII. 80.

āphām—6/3 f. pron. stem *a*. Of these, **आपाश्**.

paoiryānām—6/3 f. used adverbially.* Cf. *paoiryō* . . . *mašyō* above (Yas. IX. 3). Mills trans. "of these prior Fravašis"; Dar. says "of these ancient Fravašis".

avām—That. Jack., A. G., § 432. The word might be connected with *aēva* (one) and may mean "first" or "foremost".

yām—2/1 instead of 1/1 needed by strict grammar, due to case-attraction.

mazištām-ca—2/1 f. adj. sup. of *maz* (**मज्**). The greatest.

sraēštām-ca—the most excellent, the highest, **श्रेष्ठाश्**. The fairest (Dar. and Mills).

χraoždīštām-ca—2/1 f. sup. pt. adj. from the comp. $\sqrt{\chi}$ *raoždā*. Cf. *χraoždīyehya* (Yas. IX. 15). Most firm (Mills); most solid (Dar.); strongest (Sp.). Kan. trans. **बलोज हिंसत आपमारं** (most courage-giving). The Pah. trans. says "the most firm"† or the most severe (i.e. strictest) in decision, in other words "strictly just". Nair. Skt. says—**मज्जतर**.

χraθwīštām-ca—2/1 f. sup. of *°tumant* *Wisest*. The word *χratu* (**क्रतु**) is used more for soul-force (*Geisteskraft*‡), rather than physical-force. The Vedic **क्रतु** and **व्रतक्रतु** have probably a similar connotation. See above, Yas. IX. 23.

hukərəptēmām—Jack. and others trans. "the fairest in form"—as the sup. of *hukərəpta* (well-shaped): see also *hukərəfš* above, Yas. IX. 16. The sup. is rather irregular, one syllable (*ta*) being dropped.|| The same word, but in 6/1 m., occurs in Yas. I. 1. where Mills trans. "whose body is the most perfect", and explains in a footnote: "not that Ahura was conceived of as having a body proper. The stars are elsewhere poetically described as **his** body, as other divinities are said to be *tanu-māθra*¶, having the *māθra* as their body, that is incarnate in the *māθra*" (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 195, ftn. 2). The positive form *hukərəpta* is found in Yt. V. 121, where it means "well-shaped." The Skt. trans. says **किंवाद्याहानि चन्योन्यन-गुरुवतराणि**. Kan., however, strikes out in another direction by making this word sup. of *hukərəp* (**सुहृपा**) gracious and, distinguishing this word apparently from *hukərəpta-təma* (Dict, p. 591), trans. "practising good deeds in the highest degree" (**घर्षंज सवावकार**).

* This may be included in the "construction according to sense" of Reich, § 808. † *sakhtum* (Pers. **سخت**, *sakht*—hard). ‡ Barth., Wb. 635. || Unless we regard it as sup. of *hukərəfš*.

¶ He may have added Kava-Vīštāspa also Yt. (XIII. 99); he alludes however to *Sraoša*—Yas. LVII 33, above.

aṣāṭ apantotēmām-ca—Cf. above, Yas. LVII. 4. Mills. trans. "one that attains the most its ends because of Righteousness". Dar. and Kan. trans. "supreme in holiness".

3. This verse is the same as Yt. XIII. 82.

ṣṣāetanām—The Rulers (Kan.). See above *Yimō-ṣṣāētō* (Yas. IX. 4). Mills and Jack. trans. "shining" or "brilliant". The Holy Immortals are the rulers of the various activities of the world under Ahura Mazda. See above Yas. LVII. 24; also Introduction.

varēzi-dōiḥranām (āv.).—Of effective glance (Mills and Kan.); whose looks perform what they wish (Dar., S.B.E., XXIII, p. 199); of beneficent glance (Jack.).* Lit. the word means "of effective eye." $\sqrt{\text{varēz}}$. The comp. *varēzi-caṣman* is also used for the Fravašis—*yā* (sc. *fravaṣayō*) *hudōi-θrīš varēzi-caṣmanō sraoiθrīš* (Yt. XIII. 29), which is rendered by Barth (Wb. 1421) "who are five-eyed sharp-eyed and sharp-eared".

aiwyāmanām—Very strong (Barth., Wb. 97) from *aiwi* + *ama*. The sup. form *aiwyāmatama* is found in Yt. XIII. 3. and elsewhere. Mills trans. "devoted"; Kan. says, "coming for help", from *aiwi* (*avah* ?) + $\sqrt{\text{yā}}$; Dar. says, "quickly coming to do".

aiθyajāḡhō—Without corruption (Barth., Wb. 66-67). Neg. of *iθyajāḡ* corruption, the *i* being epenthetic; cf. Vedic *वज्रः* (assault) in R.V., I. 119. 8, etc.

4. The verse is the same as the first half of Yt. XIII. 149.

paoiryānām-ṭkaēšanām—Those of the ancient faith. The Z. faith has always recognized the ancient Mazda-worshipping (*māzdayasni*) faith† of the Aryans, which was the faith of Irān in the days before *Zaraθuštra*. The later religion of Z. is called *daēnā māzdayasni yā āhūiriš zaraθuštriš* (Yas. XII. 8; see below, Sel. V).

paoiryānām sāsnō-gūṣṣām—Those who first listened to the commandments (of Ahura). These were the ancient Teachers and Prophets of the *Māzdayasni* faith. In Yt. XIII. 87 *Gaya Marətan* is said to have been the first to listen "unto the thought and teaching of Ahura Mazda" (see below *Gayehe Marəθnō*, verse 5). From *sāsnā* (𐬱𐬀𐬎𐬌), commands or teaching, and $\sqrt{\text{guš}}$ to listen (cf. *गुश्*, *घोषण*, Pers. *گوش* *gūsh* ear). Kan. says it refers to those who first listened to the teaching of *Zaraθuštra* and thinks that the first disciples of Z., *Maiḍyō-Māyha*, *Vistāspa* and others (who are mentioned in Yt. XIII. 95-110), are meant.

aṣaoninām-ca—One notable feature of Z.'s teaching is the absolute spiritual equality of woman and man. In many other places we get the mention of men and women together on equal terms. See above the prayer

* i.e. not "evil-eyed" (Kan., Kh. A. b. M., p. 384, fn.).

† See above, Yas. IX. 26.

Yeṇhe hātām (Yas. LVII. 4) and verses 6, 7, 8 and 10 of this selection. In Yt. XIII verses 139–142 (comprising the 30th Kardeh) are devoted to the holy women of Irān beginning with Hvōvi, the wife of Z. It is also notable that among the six Holy Immortals three are of the feminine gender.*

*ahūm*¹-*ca daēnā*²-*ca baodas*³-*ca urvānəm*⁴-*ca fravašim*⁵-*ca*—This passage seems to give the constitution of the human being according to Av. In another passage, Yas. LV. 1, another list is given of the principles building up a human being† which however contains seven distinct principles instead of five as here. These are the only two passages in the Av. when the five-fold or seven-fold constitution of the human being is mentioned. Unfortunately no regular or detailed attempt has been made by Western scholars to define these terms more accurately, as evidently they are meant to be defined in the Av., hence also their renderings are vague and uncertain as may be seen by the following translations:—

I. Spirit¹, conscience², intelligence³, soul⁴ and Fravaši⁵—Mills.

II. Spirit¹, conscience², perception³, soul⁴ and Fravaši⁵—Dar.‡

III. Breath-of-Life¹, conscience², consciousness³, soul⁴ and Guardian-Angel⁵—Jack.

IV. Life-force¹ (*Lebenskraft*), Individuality² or the Inner Ego (*Inneres Wesen, geistiges Ich, Individualität*), perception³ (*Wahrnehmungskraft*), soul⁴ or spirit (*Seele, Geist*) and Fravaši⁵—Barth.

V. जान¹, चेतनःकरण², बुद्धि³, रथान⁴, and फरोहर⁵—Kan. (Kh. A. b. M., p. 384).||

1. *ahu* is the same word as अहु (आहु) the life-force (*Lebenskraft*) which keeps the physical body alive. On the whole “Life-force” is the best rendering. In this sense the word is used only in this passage (Barth., Wb. 283).

2. *daēna* according to Kan. is the faculty which differentiates between right and wrong. There is another word *daēna* (see above, Yas. IX. 26), which means “religion” and evidently Barth. (Wb. 665–666) mixes up the two ideas, for he defines *daēna* as “the sum-total of those characteristics of a human being which bear upon his religion and his soul”. This *daēna* is probably what appears to the departed soul as “a beautiful, well-shapen, strong and well-formed maid” upon the *Cinvat*-bridge. (Ven. XIX. 30ff., also Hād. II. 9, and other places). The trans. of Kan. seems to be nearest the idea—the चेतनःकरण which enables the human being to see (√*dāy* to see) the right from the wrong. The best English word would be “heart” which connotes the emotional and desire-aspect of the *daēnā* better than the word “conscience”.

* See also Introduction. † See Introduction for details. See also *Zarhoshti Rāhbar* by N. F. Billimoria for some explanation of the details, pp. 120ff., and pp. 164ff. ‡ See his note to Yt. XIII. 74 (S B.E., XXIII, p. 198). || Note that for the last three he uses practically the original Av. word in the Skt. or Pahl. form.

3. *baodah* (cognate with बुद्धि) is the faulty of the mind, the *intellect*, which enables us to acquire ज्ञान (Knowledge, अपरा विद्या).

4. *urvān* is the higher Reason, which enables us to acquire विज्ञान (Wisdom, परा विद्या) as distinguished from ज्ञान (or knowledge). Thus *baodah* and *urvān* respectively correspond to मनस् and बुद्धि of the Hindu systems.* Best translated by the Eng. word "soul".

5. *fravaši* has been rendered by many Western scholars as "guardian-angel", which is not correct. The Fravaši is the eternal portion of the human being and as such is emphatically a part and parcel of the human being, whereas a "guardian-angel" is an outside entity.

The five "principles" may therefore be best rendered as :

Life-force¹, heart², intellect³, soul⁴ and Fravaši⁵.

It would be interesting to work out how far these five correspond to the five *Koṣas* of *Vedānta*—अन्नमय, प्राणमय, मनोमय, विज्ञानमय and आनन्दमय.

aṣṭai—4 1. For righteousness, अताय.

vaonara—3/3 ppt. par. √van. Strove, struggled, बहिर.

Gēuš hūdāghō urvānēm—The first two words are G 1. Jack. and others see in this a reference to the Primal Bull who, like the first man (*Gaya Marōtan* (see below, 5), was slain by Ahriman. From this Primal Bull are derived all other animals.† The word *hūdāghō* is variously taken though all agree as to the etymology—*hu* (हु) + √*dā* (दा). Jack. renders "benevolent", Barth. trans. "gracious." In Yt. XIII. 86 we read *yām-ca* (sc. *fravašim*) *Gēuš yām-ca Gayehe*, which Dar. trans. "that of the Bull that of the living man".‡ Kan. trans. "that of animals, that of living beings". In *Sirōzah* I. 12. we have the mention of *Gāuš-āēvōdāta* "the first-created bull" (Dar. says "the only-created"), in connection with the *yazata Māgha* (the Moon), who is said to possess the seed of the bull.|| In *Sirōzah* II. 12 this is repeated. But in verse 14 in both *Sirōzah* I and II there is mention of the *Gēuš urvān*, and in the latter¶ we get the phrase *Gēuš hūdāghō urvānēm yazamaide* which Dar. trans. "we sacrifice unto the soul of the bounteous Cow" (S.B.E., XXIII, p. 17). Here the Cow is the Divine *Dravāspa*** also called *Gōš*, who "κατ' ἐξοχήν, is a personification of the animal kingdom whom she maintains and protects".†† Kan. in his Dict. (p. 159) says that in some places the word (*Gēuš-urvān*) is used for the (whole) animal creation. In the *Gāθ*. Ahu. (XXIX) we read of the complaint of the "soul of the Cow", by which is typified the mother-earth‡‡, which view is also maintained by Kan. So it would be best to trans. here the phrase by "the soul of the bounteous mother-earth". The same idea seems to be at the back of the

* मनसस परा बुद्धि: (Bg. III. 42).

† Jack., A. R., p. 38.

‡ S.B.E., XXIII, p. 200. The

living man evidently refers to *Gaya Marōtan*.

|| See trans. by Dar., S.B.E., XXIII, p. 6.

¶ See Sel. XXIV, Part II.

° Yt. IX, Sel. XXII, Part II.

†† Dar., S.B.E., XXIII., p. 110.

‡‡ See below Sel. XV.

legends of *Kṛṣṇa*, the Divine Cowherd, and the *Gopīs*; the very names गोपाल, गोपी etc., are suggestive. Cf. also the idea of the *Shepherd* in the Bible.

5. *yōi . . . vaonara*—refers to those mentioned below as the most conspicuous examples of such striving. Mills in his trans. (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 278) omits this phrase.

Gayehe Marəθnō—6/1 of *Gaya Marətan*—Lit. "the mortal man". The name is given to the first great ruler of Irān. He is regarded as the first man created by Ahura. He was the first to bring the Māzdayasni faith into the world and was thus the first of the line of *Rājar̥šis* who ruled in Irān. In Yt. XIII. 87 he is said to have been "the first who listened unto the thought and teaching of Ahura Mazda, of whom Ahura formed the race of the Āryan nations, the seed of the Āryan nations".* He was both the physical as well as the spiritual ancestor of Zarahuštra. From Z. to Spitama see above Yas. IX. 13 (notes), from Spitama to Oraētaona see above Yas. IX. 13, and from Oraētaona onwards the line continues as follows:—

Oraētaona (اورادون, *Faridūn*)—*Āθwya* (*Āspiyān Purtorat*)—Seven more people having the name *Āspiyān*†—*Yima-Xšaēta* (جمشید, *Jamshid*)—*Vīvayhvat*—*Taxma Daēvō-ībiš* (تخم دیوبند, *Tahmūrap-Divband*)—*Haošyayh* (هوشنگ, *Hūshang*)—*Shyāmāk* (شیامک, *Gaya-Marətan* (گیومرد, *Gayomard*).||

ašim-ca—Holiness. The Holiness of Z. was his pre-eminent characteristic, as it was also the foundation of his religion.

Kavōiš Vištāspahe—6/1 of *Kava Vištāspa*. For the title *Kava* (Pers. کیانی—*Kayāni*), royal, see above, Yas. IX. 18. *Vištāspa*, who is not to be confounded with Ὑστάσπης, the father of Darius the Great,|| was the first royal disciple of Z. He is remembered in Yt. XIII. 99ff. as "the holy king *Vištāspa*, the gallant one, who was the incarnate Word,** the mighty-speared, and lordly one, who, driving the *Druj* before him, sought wide room for the holy religion, . . . who made himself the arm and support of, this law of Ahura, of this law of Zarahuštra" (S.B.E., XXIII, p. 305).

Iṣaṭ-vāstrahe Zarahuštrōiš—6/1. *Iṣaṭ-vāstra* son of Z. The custom of mentioning the father's name with and after the son's is a very old one and is still the rule among Parsis. *Zarahuštra* is mentioned in the Av. and Pahl. books to have had three sons and three daughters, and three "mystic" sons, who are to be born as the *Saošyants* of future ages. His "children" are regarded by some to have been more in the spiritual sense rather than purely physical.†† The question is well discussed by N. F. Billimoria in his Gujarāṭi book *Asho Zarathosht ane temno Pegām* (ch. V, pp. 54-71). This

* S.B.E., XXIII, p. 201 (Dar.). † See Yas. IX. 7. ‡ According to *Bun*. || From Modi's Dict., where he gives a genealogical table at the end, based on *Bun*. and other authorities. ¶ *Jacq.*, A. R., pp. 95-96. ** *tanu-māgra*. Note that all the epithets here used are those of *Sraoša*; cf. also *brəzəiḥi* (Yas. LVII. 11) above. †† See Introduction.

point of view seems also supported by a note of Dar.: "Z. had three sons during his lifetime, *Isaṭ-vāstra*, *Hvara-ciθra*, and *Urvataṭ-nara* (Yt. XIII. 98), who were respectively fathers and chiefs of the three classes, priests, warriors, and husbandmen. They play no great part in Mazdean mythology, and are little more than three subdivisions of Z. himself, who was 'the first priest, the first warrior, the first husbandman' (Yt. XIII. 88)".* The Bun. XXXII. 5-6 says that *Isaṭ-vāstra* was chief of the priests, he became the Mobad of Mobads,† and passed away in the 100th year of the religion. The name signifies "he who desires pastures" according to Barth. (Wb. 372). *Hvara-ciθra*—(seed‡ of the sun) "was a warrior, commander of the army of *Pešōtanu* the son of *Vištāspa*"||. And *Urvataṭ-nara* (friend of man; Barth. says "hero-commanding")¶ "was an agriculturist and the chief of the enclosure formed by *Yima*"|| (Ven. II. 43). The three daughters of Z. were *Frānvi*, *θriti*, and *Pouru-cištā* (Yt. XII. 139). Their names signify "Fullness" (Barth., Wb. 1022), "Protecting" (?) (Barth., Wb. 807, *θrit*, *θrita*, *θriti*) and "Full wisdom", respectively. The last is said to have married *Jāmāspa* (Barth., Wb. 899).** The three "mystic" sons of Z. are *χšyaṭ-ərəta* (Pah. *Hoṣedar-māh*), *Uχšyaṭ-nəmah* (Pah. *Hoṣedar-bāmi*), and *ošyant*. Bun. XXXII. 8 relates the story thus: "Z. went near unto *Hvōvi* three times, and each time the seed went to the ground; the angel *Nairyō-saṃh* received the brilliance and strength of that seed, delivered it with care to the angel *Anāhita*, and in time will blend it with a mother".†† The seed is watched over by 99,999 Fravašis (Yt. XIII. 62) in the Lake *Kāsaoya*, where the maidens *Srūtaṭ-fedri*, *Vaṇhu-fedri* and *Fradaṭ-fedri* will respectively bring them forth. It may be noted that *Isaṭ-vāstra* is also mentioned in Yas. XXIII. 2, also, as here, with *Gaya Marətan*, *Zarəbuštra*, and *Vištāspa*, these four being evidently the most important of the "ancient counsellors".‡‡

6. This verse forms the second half of Yt. XIII. 149.

nabānazdištanām—Close-connected, next-of-kin. Lit. "nearest the navel" (*naba*—*नभः* + *nazdišta*—*नदिष्ट*). The word here refers to co-religionists, brothers in Z. faith, as distinguished from the *paōiryō-θkaēša* of the previous verse (Kan., Kh. A. b. M., p. 385, ftn.). Trans. "our nearest brothers". The list of blood-kindred included under the phrase *nabānazdišta* is given in Ven. XII. These include: (1) parents, (2) children, (3) brothers and sisters, (4) grandparents, (5) grandchildren, (6) children of brothers and sisters, (7) brothers and sisters of parents, and (8) children and grandchildren of (7) (Barth., Wb. 1040).

maṭ . . . Saōšyantiām—also found in Yas. XXIV. 5.

vispābyō aṣaonibyō are both f. because *fravaši* is f.

* Quoted by Billimoria, *op. cit.*, p. 69.

† For the word *Mobad* see below verse 7, as *arəpaiti*.

‡ Barth. "having the face like the sun", Pah. *χōarēt-cikr* (Wb. 1840).

|| Bun. quoted

by Dar., S. B. E., XXIII, p. 204. ¶ Barth., Wb. 1538, also see above Yas. LVII. 26.

** But see

Billimoria, *loc. cit.*

†† Quoted by Dar., S. B. E., XXIII, p. 195.

‡‡ Mills, S. B. E., XXXI, p. 273.

iriribuṣām—6/3 pft. pt. par. $\sqrt{raēθ}$, to pass away. Those who have passed away, i.e. have died (Barth., Wb. 1480-82). It is an *ahura*-word used especially in this sense. Cf. Goth. *leithan*, to go. There is another $\sqrt{rāθ}$ which is connected probably with Skt. रथ and which means “to cling to”, “to be joined with”, which also gives the form *iririθ*- or *irirāθ*-. Jack. postulates a $\sqrt{iriθ}$.

jvantiām—6/3 pres. pt. par. \sqrt{jiv} (जीव्) to live. Living—जीवन्ताम्. In Yt. XIII. 17, it is mentioned that the Fravaṣis of the *paoiryō-kaēša* and of the *Saošyantas* are the most powerful, and, of the rest, the Fravaṣis of the *living* holy men are more powerful than those of the dead.

narām—Here used in the sense of “heroes”.

azātanām—Unborn. Note that the soul yet to come into the world has also a Fravaṣi to which his (or her) future body will attach itself.

fraṣō-carəθrām—An epithet of the *Saošyantas*. Cf. *frāšmiš* used of *Haoma* above, Yas. LVII. 19. From *fraša* (renovated) and *carətar* (करते, \sqrt{kar} maker). Those who prepare the world for renovation, “those who herald in a new age”. The essential idea is that from time to time, as the need arises in the world by the accumulation of sin and wrong-doing, a great Soul comes down to renew the law of Ahura and to usher in a new civilisation. These great Renovators are the *Saošyants* (see Yas. IX. 1. above; also cf. Bg. IV. 7). Mills and Dar. agree with this idea. This renovation brought about by a *Saošyant* is called *fraṣōkerati*. See also *Cama Memorial Volume* pp. 200ff. referred to above in the Introductory note to this piece.

7. *iristanām*—6/3 p. pt. pass. $\sqrt{raēθ}$. See above *iriribuṣām*.

yā aṣaonām fravaṣayō—This phrase is repeated below in verse 11, where Jack. says that “the souls of the dead are the Fravaṣis”. Mills trans. the whole passage thus: “We worship the souls of the dead [(Pāzand) which are the Fravaṣis of the saints]”; and adds in a footnote*: “Whether a real distinction existed in the minds of these early writers, between a *Fravaṣi*. and a departed soul, is hard to say. That a Fravaṣi was worshipped as existing before a person to whom it appertained was born, may be owing to a poetical, and not a dogmatic, anticipation”. Mills, however, is certainly mistaken because the distinction is very clearly maintained all through (see above verse 4). In *Khurshid Nyayish* (verse 9) the worshipper invokes his own *urvān* and *fravaṣi* (the two highest principles in his constitution) and they are meant to be distinctly separate and clearly marked out from one another.† Mills putting the words into brackets, with the remark “Pāzand” preceding, seems to imply that he regards the words *yā aṣaonām fravaṣayō* as a later (Pāzand) interpolation. Geld. in his text gives a footnote to the word *aṣaonām* and says: “so all mss.”, as if he expected a different

* S.B.E., XXXI, p. 279.

† See Kan.’s note on this point, Kh. A. b. M., p. 32, fn.

reading, and therefore regards the passage as interpolated. It is certain that the grammatical construction is faulty. Kan. trans.: "those souls of the departed ones who belong to (i.e. are attached to?) the Fravašis of the holy ones". Har.* and Dar. translate "urvān and Fravašis", which is a reasonable way out of the difficulty.

ahmya nmāne—In this house. In the sense of "family" or "fold" (?).

para-iristanām—Gone beyond (the mortal life). Geld. puts a stop after the previous *fravašayō*; but it would perhaps be better to put a stop after *parairistanām*, thus taking the clause—"those of our kindred who have passed beyond from this house"—as defining the Fravašis and the urvāns, mentioned above.

aēθrapaitiñām—Teachers. Pah. *aērpat*, Per. *هرباد* (*herbad*). In P. Guj. the term *एरेवद* (abbreviated *ए१†*) is applied to a priest who is initiated and who has got the privilege of performing the rites and ceremonies. The distinguishing mark of these *Ervads* is the white turban. Note the orig. *-paiti* has become *-bad* (*-vad*) in modern times. Cf. also Pers. *موبد* (*mūbad*)—P. Guj. *मोवेद* (Priest)—from Av. *maryupaiti* (a Magus, Grk. *Múyos*).

aēθryanām—Disciples; Nair. *शिक्षापात्र*. Jack. derives this from *aēθra* (fire-wood ?) basing this interpretation on Yt. XIII. 105.—*Māθravākahe* . . . *aēθrapatōiš hamīδpatōiš* (*समिधपतेः*) *ašaonō fravašim yazamaide*. Dar. says‡ that *aēθrapaiti* is "master of the hearth" and *hamīδpaiti* is "master of the sacrificial log". Kan. trans. "religious teacher" and "sacrificial priest" (*बोय देनार*—which is a technical name in P. Guj. for the priest whose duty is to tend the Fire in the temples). Barth. (Wb. 1777) trans. the latter word by "Master of the assembly". He (as also Kan.) derives the *aēθrapaiti* (and *aēθrya*) from a hypothetical word *aēθra* (education)—through an Ar. word **aitra*.|| Very probably the Skt. *ऐतरेय* has the same meaning and signifies "education (in religious rites, etc.)." Ultimately perhaps the word is connected with *ātar* (Fire). See my paper on *ऐतरेय* in *Trans. 1st Ori. Con.* (Poona, 1919).

narām nāirinām—To be taken with *aēθryanām*. Note here also the equality of the sexes. At about the age of seven "the daughter entered into the *aērpatastān*, a religious school".¶

8. In this verse *all* teachers and disciples, belonging to any place in the world and to any creed, are mentioned; the *nabānazdišta* teachers and disciples have been already mentioned above.

vispanām nāirianām—Note that the form of the 6 3 adj. is the same for both m. and f.

* Quoted by Kan., Kh. A. b. M., p. 384, fn.

† Orig. from *आथोरमाथ* (*Āθrawa*).

‡ S.B.E., XXIII, p. 200, fn.

|| Wb. 20; also Kan., Dic.

¶ Darab Dastur Peshotan Sanjana—*The Position of Zoroastrian Women in Remote Antiquity*, p 17. On the subject of Iranian Education generally see Modi, *Education among the Ancient Iranians*.

9. *apərənāyūkānām* (v. l. °*nāyu*°, Kan.)—Youths; lit., “those who have not attained full age”; *a* + *pərəna* (पूर्व) + *āyu* (आयुः). The word is used to designate infants or minor persons.

dahmō-kərətanām—adj. Begotten of pious parents (Jack. and Dar.); those who fulfil deeds of piety (Mills); brought up by a *Dahma* (religious teacher or *Dastur*) (Barth., Wb. 706; cf. दह्म lordly*). The word *dahma* also means the duties of a *dahma* (or religious teacher) hence the rendering of Mills is quite satisfactory. Nair. also says *उत्तमकार्यवाद्*. Kan. says, “of pious nature” (*सुवर्णकर*—doing pious deeds). The word also occurs in Ven. XIII. 23, where it seems to refer to children under the age of fifteen or those who have just attained that age.† Cf. also *pañcadasa* in Yas. IX. 5.

ā-daṣṣyunām—adj. In this land, i.e. belonging to this land (Irān).

uz-daṣṣyunām (v. l. °*daṣṣyu*°, Geld.)—Adj. Outside this land, i.e. not belonging to Irān, i.e. foreigners. The ancient Z. distinctly recognized the righteous in other lands also, beyond the limits of the Āryas‡. In Yt. XIII. (143-144) the Fravaṣis of the Righteous from non-Aryan lands—*Turān*, *Sairimya* (Europe and Western Asia), *Sanai* (China) and *Dahi* (*Dahae*—*Δάαι*) are mentioned.|| And Yt. XIII. 145 says: “we worship the Fravaṣis of the holy men and of the holy women of *all* countries”. This is the clearest recognition of universal brotherhood by the ancient Zoroastrians. This is all the more remarkable because the Turanians at least were the national enemies of the Āryans of Irān all through their history.

10. *ā Sāoṣyāntāt vərəθraγnaṭ*—5/1 for 2/1 by case-attraction. From *Gaya Marətan* to *Saoṣyānt* means a whole world-period.

* दह्म दह्मः, RV, I. 129. 3. † See S.B.E., IV, p. 161, fn. ‡ For the Aryan lands see Ven. I. || S.B.E., XXIII, pp. 226-227.

IV.

IV.

Tandarosti—Yasna LX.

1. at¹ hvó² vañhēuš³ vahyō⁴ nā⁵ aibi-jamyāt⁶,
yē⁷ nā⁸ erežūš⁹ savañhō¹⁰ paθō¹¹ sišōit¹²,
ahyā¹³ añhēuš¹⁴ astvatō¹⁵ manañbas¹⁶-cā¹⁷,
haiθyēng¹⁸ ā¹⁹-stīš^{20*} yēng²¹ ā²²-šāēti²³ Ahurō²⁴:
aredrō²⁵ θwāvāš²⁶ huzēntuše²⁷ spentō²⁸ Mazdā²⁹.

2. tā¹ ahmi² nmāne³ jamyāreš⁴, yā⁵ ašāonām⁶ xšnūtas⁷-ca⁸, ašayas⁹-
ca¹⁰ vyādaibiš¹¹-ca¹² paiti-zantayas¹³-ca¹⁴: us¹⁵-nū¹⁶ aiñhāi¹⁷ vīse¹⁸
jamyāt¹⁹ ašem²⁰-ca²¹, xšaθrem²²-ca²³, savas²⁴-ca²⁵, x^varenas²⁶-ca²⁷,
x^vāθrem²⁸-ca²⁹, dareyō³⁰-fratemaθwem³¹-ca³² aiñhā³³ daēnayā³⁴, yat³⁵
āhurōiš³⁶ zaraθuštrō³⁷.

3. § + asista¹-nū² aiñhat³ (haca⁴)
vīsat⁵ gāuš⁶ buyāt⁷, asistem⁸ ašem⁹,
asistem¹⁰ narš¹¹ ašāonō¹² aojō¹³, asistō¹⁴ āhauriš¹⁵ tkaēšō¹⁶.

4. § jamyān¹ iθra² ašāunām³ vañuhiš⁴ | surā⁵ spentā⁶ fravašayō⁷, |
ašōiš⁸ baēšaza⁹ hacimnā¹⁰, | zem¹¹-fraθaṇha¹², dānu¹³-drājaṇha¹⁴, |
hvare¹⁵-barezaṇha¹⁶, ištēē¹⁷ vañhañhām¹⁸, | paitištātēē¹⁹ ātaranām²⁰, |
(frašā²¹)-vaχšyāi²² rayām²³-ca²⁴ x^varenanñhām²⁵-ca²⁶.

5† § + vainīt¹ ahmi² nmāne³ Sraošō⁴ asruštīm⁵, āχštīš⁶ anāχštīm⁷,
rāitiš⁸ arāitiīm⁹ Ārmaitiš¹⁰ aršuxδō¹² vāχš¹³ miθaoχtem¹⁴ vācim¹⁵
tarōmaitīm¹¹,
+ Aša¹⁶ drujem¹⁷.

6. yaθa¹ ahmya² Amešā³
Spenta⁴ Sraošāda⁵ ašyāda⁶ paitisān⁷
vañhūš⁸ yasnēas⁹-ca¹⁰ vahmēs¹¹-ca¹²:
vohū¹³ yasnem¹⁴-ca¹⁵ vahmem¹⁶-ca¹⁷,
§ + huberetīm¹⁸(-ca¹⁹), uštaberetīm²⁰(-ca²¹), vantaberetīm²²(-ca²³),
ā²⁴-dareyāt²⁵ x^vābairyāt²⁶†.

* Geld. reads *astīš*. † Geld. divides this verse differently, the *pādas* ending at *Sraoša*, *anāχštīm*,
Ārmaitiš, *viχš* and *drujam*. ‡ *χōt bair*°, Geld. He prints the last two lines as prose.

IV.

Tandarosti—Yasna LX.

1. Verily¹ doth (that) man⁵ alone² attain⁸ the highest⁴ good^{3*} who⁷ unto us⁹ would point-out¹² the straight⁹ path¹¹ of bliss¹⁰ for† this¹³ corporeal¹⁵ life¹⁴ (and) for† the spiritual¹⁶ (life) as-well¹⁷—(the path which leads) unto¹⁹ the worlds²⁰ of-truth^{18†} over²² which²¹ Ahura²⁴ rules²³: the faithful²⁵ (worshipper) possessed-of-wisdom²⁷ (and) pious²⁸ (becomes), O Mazda²⁹, merged-in-Thee²⁶.

2. May these¹ (blessings) come⁴ into this² house³—namely^{5*} the satisfaction⁷ of the Holy Ones⁸ and³ (their) blessings^{9†}, (their) guileless-nature¹¹ and¹² (their) welcome-presence¹³ (among us) †: may there indeed¹⁶ arise¹⁵, in this¹⁷ place^{18†} both²¹|| righteousness²⁰ and²³ power²², both²⁵|| happiness²⁴ and²⁷ splendour²⁶, both²⁹|| salvation²⁸ and³² long-enduring³⁰-predominance³¹ for¶ this³³ faith³⁴, which³⁵ (is) of-Ahura³⁶ (as) revealed-by-Zara-θuštra³⁷.

3. (And) verily² may there always¹ be⁷ prosperity^{6*} within⁴ this³ place^{5†}, always⁸ Righteousness, always¹⁰ the power¹³ of holy¹² men^{11†}, (and) always¹⁴ the Law¹⁶ of-Ahura¹⁵.

4. (And) may the excellent⁴, heroic⁵ (and) holy⁸ Fravašis⁷ of the Righteous³ come¹ hither², bringing¹⁰ (us) the healing-virtues⁹ of (their) blessing⁹—(virtues) as wide¹²-as-the-earth¹¹, as-extensive^{14*}-as-rivers¹³, as-exalted¹⁶-as-the-sun¹⁵,—for-the-establishment^{17†} (in this place) of-better-men¹⁸, for-the-overcoming¹⁹ of wicked-foes²⁰, (and) for the (yet) greater²¹-increase²² both^{24†} of the splendour²³ and²⁶ of the glory²⁵ (of the Spirit).

5. In this² house³ may Obedience^{4*} triumph-over¹ disobedience⁵, peace⁶ (over) discord⁷, generosity⁹ (over) niggardliness⁸, Reverence^{10†} (over) contempt¹¹, the true-spoken¹² word¹³ (over) the word¹⁵ false-spoken¹⁴, (and) Righteousness¹⁶ (over) evil¹⁷.

6. So-that¹ in this² (place), because-of-(the presence of)-Sraoša⁵ the Holy⁸, the Holy⁴ Immortals³ may eagerly-expect⁷ both^{10*} excellent⁹ worship⁹ and¹² praises¹¹; (and) may we† during²⁴ long-ages²⁵ offer-with-reverence²⁶ (to Them) both^{15*} excellent¹³ worship¹⁴ and¹⁷ praise¹⁶ in-words-of-praise^{18†} and¹⁹ words-of-welcome²⁰, and²¹ words-of-triumph²² too²³.

Verse 1. * Lit., "better than the good". † Lit., "of". ‡ Lit., "true". *Verse 2.*
* Lit., "which". † ca 10 and ca 14 is omitted. ‡ Lit., "village". || Lit., "and". ¶ Lit.,
"of". *Verse 3.* * Lit., "cattle". † Lit., "village". ‡ Orig. eg. *Verse 4.* * Lit.,
"long". † Lit., "possession" or "lordship". ‡ Lit., "and". *Verse 5.* * Sraoša.
† Armaiti. *Verse 6.* * Lit., "and". † Orig. 3rd sg. ‡ Lit., "bearing-words-of praise", etc.

7. § mā¹ yave² imaṭ³ nmānem⁴, χ^νāθravaṭ⁵ χ^νarenō⁶ frazahīṭ⁷,
 mā⁸ χ^νāθravaiti⁹ īstis¹⁰, + mā¹¹ χ^νāθravaiti¹² (āsna¹³)
 frazaiṇtiš¹⁴ :

+ χ^νāθrō¹⁵-disyehe¹⁶ [paiti¹⁷ Ašōiš¹⁸-ca¹⁹ Vanhuyā²⁰] dareyem²¹
 haχma²².

8. § + vasas¹-ca² (tū³, Ahura⁴) Mazda⁵!

uštā⁶-ca⁷

χšāēšša⁸ havaṇām⁹ dāmanām¹⁰,

vasō¹¹ āpō¹², vasō¹³ urvarā¹⁴,

+ vasō¹⁵ vīspa¹⁶ (vohū¹⁷) Aša-
 ciθra¹⁸

χšayamnem¹⁹ ašavanem²⁰ dāyata²¹, + aχšayamneim²² drvaṇtem²³.

9. vaso-χšāθrō¹ χyāt² ašava³,

avaso-χšāθrō⁴ χyāt⁵ drvā⁶,

gatō⁷ hamistō⁸ nižberetō⁹

+ (haca¹⁰) Spēntahe¹¹ Mainyēuš¹²
 dāmabyō¹³;

varatō¹⁴ avasō-χšāθrō¹⁵.

10. § + haχšaya¹ aze² ciṭ³ (yo⁴

Zaraθuštrō⁵) fratemā⁶,

nmananām⁷-ca⁸, vīšām⁹-ca¹⁰,

zantunām¹¹-ca¹², daχyuuām¹³-
 ca¹⁴,

• aiñhā¹⁵ daēnayā¹⁶ anumatayaē¹⁷-
 ca¹⁸, •

anuxṭayaē¹⁹-ca²⁰, anvarštayaē²¹-
 ca²²,

yā²³ āhūiriš²⁴ zaraθuštriš²⁵.

11.* § + yaθa¹ (nō²)† āñhām³

šyātō⁴ manā⁵

vaštō⁶† urvānō⁷ χ^νāθravaiti⁸ tanvō⁹

+ (hēntō¹⁰)|| vahistō¹¹ anjhuš¹²;

ākās¹³-coiṭ¹⁴¶

+ āhūire¹⁵ mazda¹⁶ jasentām¹⁷.

12. § Aša¹ vahišta², Aša³ sraēšta⁴ daresāma⁵ θwā⁶,

paiṛi⁷ θwā⁸ jamyāma⁹, hamem¹⁰ θwā¹¹ haχma¹².

~~~~~

Verse 1 is from G&θ Ust. (Yas. XLIII, 3).

Verses 2-7 are also found in the Afrin. Dahmán.

Verses 8-10 are repeated in Yas. VIII, 5-7; Yas. XI, 12-14; Yas. LII, 5-7; Yas. LXVIII, 16-18, and  
 Yas. LXXI, 26-28. They also occur in the hymn *Hoī-bēm* addressed to the Dawn.

Verses 11-13 are found also in Yas. LXXI, 29-30 and in the *Hoī-bēm*.

\* Geld.'s text is differently divided. See notes.      † yaθa-wō, Geld. and Kan.      ‡ cahēō,  
 Geld. and Kan.      || hēnti, Geld.      ¶ akāscōit, Geld. and Kan.

7. May not<sup>1</sup> the radiance<sup>4</sup> of-heaven<sup>5</sup> ever<sup>2</sup> leave<sup>7</sup> this<sup>3</sup> house<sup>4</sup>, nor<sup>8</sup> the strength<sup>10</sup> that-leads-to-salvation<sup>9</sup>, nor<sup>11</sup> clever<sup>13</sup> offspring<sup>14</sup> full-of-glory<sup>12</sup>: may we constantly<sup>21\*</sup> be-in-companionship<sup>22</sup> with<sup>17</sup> the Teacher<sup>14</sup>-of-(the-path-to)-salvation<sup>16†</sup> and<sup>19</sup> (with) Aši<sup>13</sup> Vaghui<sup>20</sup>.

8. At-will<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> supreme<sup>6</sup> too<sup>7</sup> Thou<sup>3</sup>, O Ahura<sup>4</sup> Mazda<sup>5</sup>, rulest-over<sup>9</sup> Thine-own<sup>9</sup> creations<sup>10</sup>, at-(Thy)-will<sup>11</sup> the waters<sup>12</sup>, at-(Thy)-will<sup>13</sup> the trees<sup>14</sup>, at-(Thy)-will<sup>15</sup> all<sup>16</sup> the good<sup>17</sup> (creation), the generation-of-Aša<sup>18</sup>.

Make ye<sup>21</sup> (O Ahura, and ye Holy Immortals!) the holy<sup>20</sup> (man) powerful<sup>19</sup>, (but) the infidel<sup>23</sup> without-power<sup>22</sup>.

9. May the holy<sup>3</sup> (man) be<sup>2</sup> full-of-sovereign-power<sup>1</sup>, (but) may the infidel<sup>9</sup> be<sup>6</sup> without-free-power<sup>4</sup>; (may he be) defeated<sup>7\*</sup>, smitten-down<sup>8</sup>, (and) thrown-out<sup>9</sup> from<sup>10</sup> the creations<sup>13</sup> of the Holy<sup>11</sup> Spirit<sup>12</sup>; (may he who hath) turned-way<sup>14</sup> (from the Law be) without-free-power<sup>15</sup>.

10. I will guide<sup>1</sup>, even<sup>3</sup>-I<sup>2</sup>, who<sup>4</sup> (am) Zaraθuštra<sup>5</sup>, the leaders<sup>8</sup> of (these) houses<sup>7</sup> and<sup>8</sup> of (these) villages<sup>9</sup> and<sup>10</sup> of (these) provinces<sup>11</sup> and of (these) lands<sup>13</sup> too<sup>14</sup>, to follow-in-(their) thought<sup>17,\*</sup> to-follow-in-(their) -words<sup>19,\*</sup> and<sup>22</sup> to-follow-in-(their)-deeds<sup>21\*</sup> this<sup>15</sup> Faith<sup>14</sup>, which<sup>23</sup> (is) of-Ahura<sup>24</sup>, revealed-by-Zaraθuštra<sup>25</sup>.

11. So-that<sup>1</sup>, verily<sup>2</sup>, the minds<sup>6</sup> of these<sup>3</sup> (leaders) (may be\*) full-of-joy<sup>4</sup>, (and their) souls<sup>7</sup> (be\*) with-every-wish-fulfilled<sup>8</sup>, (and their) bodies<sup>9</sup> full-of-heavenly-glory<sup>8</sup>, (and thus too theirs) may be<sup>10</sup> the best<sup>11</sup> life<sup>12</sup> (hereafter): may they reach<sup>17</sup>, O Mazda<sup>16</sup>, the regions-of-Ahura<sup>15</sup>, even<sup>14</sup> after the dis-closure<sup>13</sup> (of their actions in this life).

12. Through the best<sup>2</sup> Righteousness<sup>1</sup>, through the highest<sup>4</sup> Righteousness<sup>3</sup>, may we catch-sight<sup>6</sup> (of) Thee<sup>6</sup>, may we approach<sup>7,9</sup> Thee<sup>3</sup>, may-we-be-in-perfect\*-union<sup>10, 12</sup> (with) Thee<sup>11</sup>.

Verse 7. \* Lit., "for long ages." † Bṛaoša.

Verse 9. \* Lit., "gone".

Verse 10.

\* ca<sup>18</sup> and ca<sup>20</sup> omitted.

† Lit., "for the following-in-thought, etc. ... of this Faith".

Verse 11. \* *hantō* to be construed with each clause, hence plu.

Verse 12. \* Lit., adv.

## NOTES.

1. Kanga: Khordeh Avesta bā Māenī (5th ed.), [verses 2-7 at pp. 409-411, verses 8-12 at pp. 24-25] and Gāthā bā Māenī (1st ed.) [verse 1, at pp. 100-101].

2. Mills: S.B.E., XXXI, [verses 1-7 and 11-12 at pp. 310-312, verses 8-10 at pp. 229-230].

This is a prayer invoking blessings on the heads of the pious and according to Mills were recited at farm homesteads by wandering priests. It is named *Tandarosti* by Kan. and other Parsi writers. The name means lit. "health of the body", and the prayer is intended for invoking blessings whether of the material or spiritual world. It shows very well what the Zoroastrian conception of happiness (here and hereafter) is. The first verse is from Gāθ. Ušt. (Yas. XLIII. 3). The last five verses are found in the prayer *Hōš-bām* (the bright Dawn) which is recited before sunrise. It may be noted that the *Tandarosti* usually recited by Zoroastrians at the end of the daily "service" is not this *Tandarosti* but a small *Pāzand* prayer of a much later date which was probably composed by Dastur Ādarbād Mārāspand in the Sassanian times.\* Needless to say that despite the great piety and learning of Ādarbād his composition has not touched the high spirituality of the original Yasna.

1. *aṭ*—अथ. Mills takes "now", so also Kan. Best trans. "verily".

*hvō*—1/1 pron. अः. When used with *nā* it has an adjectival force,—that very man, that man alone (Barth., Wb. 1845).

*vaghāuš*—Barth. (Wb. 1396) regards it as 5/1 to be construed with the adj. *vahyō*. The 5/1 and 6/1 of all nouns, except those ending in -a, are identical in Skt. In Gāθ. the forms are largely identical but later on we find the ending -āṭ being universally applied for the abl.†

*vahyō*—2/1 n. adj. com. Barth. (Wb. 1405) mentions that this "better than the good" has a special meaning. It is the special spiritual level higher than what an ordinary man understands by the word "good" or "happiness". Hence probably Kan. translates this phrase *vaghāuš vahyō* as "supreme good" (अर्थोत्तमं सुखम्) or "*summum bonum*"‡.

*aibi-jamyāt*—3/1 aor. opt. par. √gam (*jam*) + *aibi* (अभि),|| to attain.

*yō*—1/1. यः. This is a special Gāθ. form but is occasionally borrowed consciously or unconsciously in Y.A.¶

*nā* (v.l. *nā*)—4/3. To us, नः (अस्मभ्यम्)! This is a Gāθ. form. Barth. takes this as 2/3.\*\*

*arazūš*—2/3 n. adj. Straight.

\* See Introduction. † Jack., A. G., § 222 (Ablative). ‡ G. b. M., p. 100, fn. || Note ४ = G. A. b; see above note on *arazūš* (Yas. IX, 11). ¶ Jack., A. G., § 401. \*\* Wb. 1031.

*savaṇḥō*—6/1. Bliss, happiness. The usual meaning in Gāθ. is the eternal happiness (आर्त्तिक सुखम्);\* but in Y.A. it is used for either material or spiritual bliss (Barth., Wb. 1562). Nair. trans. *साधः*; Kan. compares Skt. *सुखम्*.

*paθō*—2/3 n.

*siḡōiṭ*—3/1 opt. pres. √*sāh* (साह्) to teach. Barth. says it governs two accusatives as in Skt. (Wb. 1574).

*ahyā*—अह्य (Gāθ), Y.A. has *ayhe* or *aighe*.

*manayhas-cā*—Lit., pertaining to the mind. Used in Gāθ. the mean spiritual as opposed to corporeal or physical.† cf. *ahvā astvatas-cā hyaṭ-cā manayhō* (Gāθ. Ahu., XXVIII. 2).‡

*haiḡyēng*—2 3 m. Real, सत्यम्. Barth. (Wb. 1710) trans. "correct" or "right", and takes the adj. to refer to *paθō*; but *paθō* is neu. Mills trans. "the eternal worlds"; Kan. says, "the real worlds". The paths leading to the eternal worlds, hence the acc.

*ā-stiḡ* (v.l. *āstiḡ*, Geld.). *ā* is prep. meaning "to". *stiḡ* is 2 3 of *sti*. Barth. (Wb. 1592) takes *sti* to mean creation or world. *सि* (m.) is found in RV.,|| where the word seems to mean "members of the household". We also get *सिपा*. Barth. (loc. cit.) suggests deriving from √*ah*, to be (cf. Pers. *هستی* *hasti* existence); Kan. (Dict., p. 537) suggests √*stā*, *स्था* (cf. *स्थिति*). The word *sti* when it occurs elsewhere in Av. is fem. It is noteworthy that the Skt. cognate is mas. as required in this passage; in any case *stiḡ* would be 2/3 for both m. and f.\*\* In Ven. II. 40, we get the comp. *stiḡdāta* (made in the world or artificial) as opposed to *χ<sup>v</sup>adāta* (self-created).†† Geld.'s reading *āstiḡ* means "subjects".

*yēng*—यान्.

*ḡaēti*—3/1 pres. par. √*ḡi* (ḡि) to rule. Cf. *χḡaētiḡ*, Yas IX. 4.

*arədrō*—Worshipper, a pious or faithful person. Kan. (Dict.) postulates a √*arəd*, to worship; but probably this word is cognate with *राध्* + *आ*. Nair. trans. *दक्षिणादाना*. Mills has "servant".

*θwāvās*—Like unto Thee (Barth.); *तनुसा* (Nair.); Mills says, "worthy of Thee". It probably means "absorbed in Thee". The same idea occurs in the last verse of this passage *haməm θwā haχma* (see below 12). See Whit. § 517; †† Reich. § 276; Jack., A. G., § 857, note 2.

*huzəntuḡ*—1/1. Possessing good wisdom (Kan.); cf. *haozəθwa-ca*

\* Unless expressly stated otherwise, as here.

† Barth., Wb. 1127.

‡ Sel. XV below.

|| VIII. 19. 11; X. 148. 4. ¶ RV., VII. 98. 3; X. 80. 4.

\*\* Kan., A. G., § 108.

†† Barth., Wb. 1807.

explains *stiḡdāta* as "created for the world", i.e. "evanescent" and *χ<sup>v</sup>adāta* as "eternal".

Sel. X below.

‡‡ Also § 1233 f.

above, Yas. LVII. 23. The *a* at the end is metrical.\* Mills trans. "good citizen" (*hu + zantū*), but he himself says (Gāθ., p. 511) that *zantū* in this sense is unknown in the Gāθ. He also suggests the meaning "noble-hearted".

*spəntō*—Pious. Kan. trans. "prosperity-bringing".

2. *tā*—2/3 f. तः, these.

*ahmi nmāne*—7/1 with verb of motion implying that the blessings are to come to the house and remain in the house.

*jamyārəš*—3/3 ben. atm.  $\sqrt{gam}$  (*jam*). Jack., A. G., § 646; Reich. § 257.

*χšnūtas-ca*—Satisfaction (Kan.), reward (Barth.); wise perceptions (of the saints) (Mills). Kan. takes it as 1/1 if the stem is taken as ending in *a*, or 1/3 if it is taken as ending in *-t*.† Cf. Per. خوشنود (*khushnūd*) satisfied, glad.

*ašayəsa-ca*—1/3. See above, Yas. IX. 3., etc.

*vyādaibiš-ca* (*ān.*)—Openness or freedom from deceit (Kan.); from *vi + ā + daibi* ( $\sqrt{dab}$ -दभ- to deceive). Barth. (Wb. 1478) takes this as 3/3 used for 1/3 of *vyādā* and trans. "gifts". The v.l. *vyādaibyas-ca* seems to support this view. Barth. also quotes from Pur. 39. *narš-ca āšaonō χšnūtim-ca arətim-ca vyādas-ca paiti-zaintayas-ca*. Kan. however gives (*pāiti-*) *vyādā* as a separate word meaning "gifts made in return (i.e. as reward) for worship" (Dict., p. 305). Mills says (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 310), "their guileless characteristics".

*paitizantayas-ca* (*ān.*)—Kan. in Kh. A. b. M. says धुकर गुजारी (thanks-giving) but in Dict. (p. 303) says, "welcome", "warm reception". Barth. (Wb. 835) also takes it the latter way. Cf. *paitizantō*, Yas. LVII, 14 and 35. Mills trans., "recognition of what is due".

*us . . . jamyāt*—Note the sg., each being a separate blessing to be desired. Kan. trans. उत्पन्न याचो (may arise).

*nū*—Certainly, नु. It is enc. (see below verse 3). The *nū* is also used with an accent and can then begin a sentence or *pāda* (Yas. XLV. 1), and sometimes it is combined with *ci*.||

*aīghāi vise*—4/1 for 7/1. For this village (Mills). See above *ahmi nmāne*.

*χšaθrəm*—This word implies strength physical as well as spiritual. See *χšaθryō* (Yas. LVII. 19). The *χšaθryō* (अविच) implied a certain degree of spiritual growth, as also among the Hindus. Divine Sovereign Power (Mills).

\* Kan., G. b. M., p. 101, fn.; probably to avoid the two sibilants coming together.

† Dict., p. 155. ‡ If we accept this we may as well trans. 3/3 literally, "together with their gifts". || Barth., Wb. 1089.

*savas-ca*—Prosperity (Kan.);\* benefit (Mills). Cf. *savayhō* in verse 1.

The word is from  $\sqrt{su}$  (सु). Mod. Per. سود (*sūd*)-profit, interest, is a derivative from the same root. Barth. (Wb. 1561-62) notes the remarkable fact that the du. form *savā* (m.) or *savōi* (f.) is used to mean "profit and loss". He quotes in support Yas. XLIII. 12 and XLV. 7. Kan. however takes these differently.†

*χ<sup>v</sup>arānas-ca χ<sup>v</sup>āḍrām-ca*—Fame and health (Kan.); glorious welfare (Mills—he apparently takes the first as adj. to the second word). Kan. elsewhere renders the word as "salvation" (आराणी) in the sense of मोक्ष‡. Kan. (also Mills) puts a fullstop after *χ<sup>v</sup>āḍrām-ca*, not so Geld.

*darəyō-fratəmaṣwəm-ca*—Long-continued prominence (Mills); दीर्घ-इयमलम्. Mills takes this with the next verse. Kan. construes with *būyāt* understood.

*yat*—See above Yas. IX. 4.

3. *asista* (v.l. *āsi*)—Kan. trans. "always" and remarks that the orig. form is *āsiṣṭa*. He also notes that Dar. derives it from *a* (neg.) + *sista* "cut off, from  $\sqrt{syagh}$ —स्य) and that hence the word means that which is not destroyed i.e. eternal.¶ Mills evidently takes it as sup. of the adj. *āsu* and trans. "with the greatest speed". Barth. takes it as pft. pt. pass. of *saēd* (सिद् and trans. "undisturbed" (Wb. 1547).

*haca*—Within (Mills). •

*gāuš*—Sg. used in a collective sense. This implies prosperity.

*būyāt*—Kan. trans. as a ben., "may arise" (उत्पन्न भवो).

*narš*—6 1. नृ.

4. *iθra*—to this place. From the pron. stem *i*; Skt. has इत्थ.

*ašōiš*—6 1 of *ašī* (आशिस्) blessing. Of holiness (अशोरता) (Kan.); blessed gifts (Mills). Cf. Vis. IX. 1, *Haomanām ašōiš cištōiš baēšaza hacimnanām* (where Mills trans. *ašōiš* by "sanctity").

*baēšaza*—Means (उपायो), Kan.; he takes this as 2/3. Mills takes this as 3/1 and trans. "with healing virtues". Cf. Yas. XI. 17. In Yas. LXVIII. 15. we have *hazagrām baēšazanām*, *baēvarə baēšazanām* (a thousand healing remedies, ten thousand healing remedies). The word is neu.

*hacimnā*—1/3 f. pres. pt. atm.  $\sqrt{hak}$  (हक्), to accompany, to follow.¶ When used with an acc. it means to bring to, to carry (Barth., 1739ff.). Here the acc. is *baēšaza*. Mills trans. "may they go hand in hand with us".

\* In Dint. (p. 522) he gives the meaning "blessing" also.

† G. b. M., p. 108 and p. 187.

‡ He evidently in some places confuses the idea with that of worldly happiness. || Kh. A. b. M.,

p. 410, fn. ¶ Skt. सचो is cognate.

*zam-fraθaŋha*—2/3 n. adj. to *baēšaza* (thus also the following two words). Wide as the earth. Cf. *इष्टु*, *इष्टी*, etc.

*dānu-draǰāŋha*—Long as the rivers. The word *dānu* is cognate with Oss. *don* (river). *दानु* in RV., means “dew” or “trickling drops of water”\*; the epithet *दानुवसन्ती* is used of *मिषाववसा* in RV., I. 136. 3 and for the Aśvins in RV., VIII. 8. 16. For *drājaŋha* see Yas. IX. 26.

*hvarə-barəzaŋha*—High as the sun. *hvar* is *खर* of Skt. but there is a change of meaning.

*ištē*—Dat. inf. *इष्टे*. For the fulfilment of desires (Kan.). For the furtherance of better men (Mills). Barth. takes it as dat. inf.  $\sqrt{aēš}$  to rule, to possess and trans. “so that (this *vis*) may possess better men”.

*vaŋhaŋām*—6/3 com. adj. from *vohu* (*vaŋhu*). Better people. Note th  $\sqrt{aēš}$  governs gen. like the *ईष्ट* of Skt.

*paitištātē*—Dat. inf.  $\sqrt{stā}$  + *paiti*, to oppose.

*ātaranām*—Wicked (Kan.); hostile (Mills). From  $\sqrt{tar}$  (𐬔) to attack, hence “one who attacks”. Cf. *इवतुरम् वसम्* (RV., X. 99. 1) and *इवम्* (RV., VI. 13. 1).† Probably the Skt. *वातुर* (sick) is also cognate.

*fraša-vaxšyāi*—Dat. inf.  $\sqrt{vaxš}$  (to increase, to wax) + *frāš* (𐬑𐬀). For the greater increase (Barth., Wb. 1007). Cf. *उवचन्, वचयम्* etc. Ger. *wachsen*. The  $\sqrt{vaxš}$  is also used for the waxing of the moon: *mā uxšyēi* (Yas. XLIV. 3, Sel. XVI). The noun *vaxša* used with *hū†* means the rising of the sun (Yt. V. 91, etc.).

*rayām-ca xʷarənaŋhām-ca*—Wealth and fame (Kan.): but he suggests (Kh. A. b. M., p. 410, fn.) “splendour and glory”. Cf. *ahē raya xʷarənaŋha-ca* above (Yas. LVII. 3, etc.).

5. *vaini†*—3/1 root-aor. ind. par.  $\sqrt{van}$ . *ववनीत्*. Jack. thinks it may be an opt. aor. with a weak ending (A. G., §§ 463 and 637). If we take it to be ind. the *i* may be compared to the *ī* in *ववनीत्*, *ववोत्* etc.

*sraošō*—used here in the lit. sense (from  $\sqrt{sru}$  to hear) of “obedience”. This is obedience to the Law of Aša which is the Law of God. In fact *Sraoša* represents this Obedience to Divine Law. See introductory note to Yas. LVII (Sel. II).

*asruētīm*—Disobedience.

*āxētis*—Peace. The derivation is doubtful. Probable cognate words are Pers. *آشتی* (*āšti*), peace, and the word *अष्टि* which occurs in AV. (VI. 54. 1) and seems to mean “victory” or “attainment”. This *अष्टि* is also

\* RV., I. 54. 7, etc.; Grass., Wb. 694f.

† Grass., Wb. 1335.

‡ See above Yas. LVII. 10.



found in the comp. **अरदृष्टि\*** which would mean lit. "attainment of old age" hence "long-life" or (when adj.) "long-lived".

*rāitiś*—Generosity. Cf. **रानि**, offering; Pers. **رای** (*rād*), generous.

*ārmaitiś*—Reverence or piety; right-thought.† Orig. the word was *arəm-maiti* which with the corresponding *arəm-uxti* and *arəm-varāti* is found in Pur. 25 (Barth., Wb. 188–189). The form **अरमनि** is found in RV., VII. 35. 8; 42, 3, where Sāyana trans. **अरिषी**. (Barth., Wb. 335ff). Grass. (Wb. 103) says that the word means "devotion" or "piety" and also means the Goddess of Devotion. See also Spēnta-Ārmaiti above (Yas. LVII. 24), who is the fourth of the Holy Immortals. She is the ruler of the earth and is also called the "daughter of Ahura" (Modi, Diet.).

*tarōmāitīm* (v.l. *tarō-mai*)—Contempt, pride, impiety. The word is also spelt *tarmaiti*. In the later Pah. works (e.g., Bun. XXX. 29) this is the name of a daēva—*Tarmat-dēv*—who is a special foe of Ārmaiti. In the Skt. trans. of Yas. XXXIII. 4, Nair. renders this word by **दुहसना**. From *tarə* + *man*, to hold in contempt (Barth. Wb. 641 and 1123).

*arəuxδō-vāxš*—Cf. *arəzūxδəm* . . . *vācim*, Yas. **XX** 25 above.

*miθaoxtəm*—Falsely spoken. Cf. **मिथ्या**. The word is also spelt *miθōxta*.

*Aša druǰəm*—Geld. and Kan. read *aša-druǰəm* and Kan. takes it as a comp. adj. to *vācim* and trans., "inimical to righteousness". He however (Kh. A. b. M., p. 411, fn.) suggests the reading here adopted and the trans. "(may) righteousness (overcome) evil". Barth. (Wb. 230) reads the words‡ separately. He mentions that the ideas of *Aša* and *druǰ* are to be found opposed to each other both in G. A. and in Y. A., e.g. *yezi* . . . *ašā druǰim vānaphaiti* (Yas. XLVIII. 1) (when the righteous man shall overcome the *druǰ*); also Yas. XLIV. 17 (Sel. XVI). Barth. also observes that the form *aša* here (as well as *ašā* in Yas. XLVIII. 1) is 1/1 n. Therefore, *Aša* and *druǰ* here correspond to **अर्ष** and **अधर्ष**.

6. *yaθa*—So that. (Kan.). Mills trans. "as" (= because).

*Sraoṣāda*—5/1. Mills in his trans. adds the explanation, "who governs hero". Kan. trans. "through *Sraoṣa*"; he being the first to praise the Holy Immortals, who come down when they are invited by him. Cf. above Yas. LVII, 2, 6, 8 and 12.

*paitiṣṇ-*3/3 sub. impf. par. Mills trans. "seek for". Kan. says "desire eagerly". Cf. Yas. LVII. 13.

*vayhūs-*2/3 m.

*yaśnōs-ca vahmāś-ca*—Cf. above Yas. LVII. 6. 8. Kan. explains *vahma* as mental repetition of the name of a deity.

\* RV., VII. 37, 7; X. 65, 36.

† "The name *Sraoṣa* had not lost its original meaning, so o f

*Ā(a)maiti*"; Mills, S. B. E., XXXI, p. 311, fn.

‡ But Barth. reads *druǰim*.

*vohu*, etc. The repetition of the three words in the sg. is rather remarkable. This may be an interpolation. Mills suggests that the sg. implies that the worship is of each particular Immortal.\* Or is the plu. used for the Holy Immortals and the sg. for Sraoša?

*hubərətim-ca*—Mills trans. "good offering" but adds (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 311, ftn.), "possibly 'good support'". Kan. trans. "good gift" *hu* + *√bar* (𐬨).

*uštəbəratim-ca*—Offering for salvation (Mills); gift of health (Kan.). Barth. (Wb. 418) trans. "desired offering" and thinks that the word probably means "those hymns beginning with the word *ušta*". The *Gāthā Uštavairi* is so called from its first word *uštā*.† Cf. also Vis. XVIII. 1, *ušta Ahurəm Mazdām yazamaide ušta Aməšə Spəntə yazamaide*, etc. (we worship Ahura Mazda with *ušta*, we worship the Holy Immortals with *ušta*). This word means "hail!" or "welcome!" Cf. also Yas. IX 25, above. Is there possibly a connection between this word and the Skt. वृष्ट? The second suggestion of Barth. is certainly supported by the v.l. he adopts (also noted by Geld.) *ušta-bəratim*.‡

*vəntəbəratim-ca* (v.l. *vanta-bərə*°, Barth.)—Good offering in praise (Mills); friendly offering (Kan.); offering of respect (or homage) (Barth.).

Kan. puts a full stop after *vəntəbəratim-ca*, taking the last words as an independent sentence.

*ā*—Mills takes this prep. as governing the abl. and trans. "together with". Kan. takes *ā-darəyāt* as an adv. phrase and trans. "for a long time".

*darəyāt*—Mills takes this as an adj. and trans. "long-continued".

*χ<sup>v</sup>ābairyāt* (𐬭𐬀)—This word is taken in varied ways. Mills takes it as a noun (5/1) and trans. "offering of the whole self", or complete self-surrender to the Divine Will. And Mills puts a comma at the end of this verse, thus connecting it with the following. Kan. in his Ij. Vis. (p. 145) definitely takes the sentence *ā . . . χ<sup>v</sup>ābairyāt* with verse 7. In Kh. A. b. M. (p. 411), however, he takes it as in the text. In the latter he takes this to be an entirely independent sentence, unconnected with either what precedes or what follows. His trans. seems to imply that he takes the word as 3 l opt. pres. par. of *χ<sup>v</sup>ā* (𐬭) + *√bar* (𐬨), to be independent, and trans. "may (this community) be independent for a long time".|| But in Ij. Vis. (p. 145, ftn.) he suggests the trans. "on account of their (i.e. of the Holy Immortals)

\* "As they seek for (one) good sacrifice and act of homage (more especially their own)"; S.B.E., XXXI, p. 311. † *uštā ahmāt yahmāt uštā kuhmāt-eit* (Yas. XLIII. 1). See also *Ēl*, XVI, last verse, ‡ Probably all the three words *hubəreti*, *uštəbəreti* and *vəntəbəreti* refer to formulae used in invocation. || That is to say, with the help of the Holy Immortals and of Sraoša there needs be no fear of a conquest by foreigners. The Pahl. version quoted by Barth. (Wb. 1878) seems to support this view.

long-continued support may not glory desert this house, etc.” Barth. (Wb. 1878) is uncertain of the meaning though he takes this as 5/1 for 2/1 (case-attraction) and trans., “welcome-home\* during long ages”. He seems to think that the word also implies the last judgment and that the reward of good deeds given at that time are “welcomed” (i.e. gratefully received) by the faithful of this place. The word is most probably (as Kan. takes it) 3/1 opt. pres. par. of  $\sqrt{\text{bar}}$  with the prefixes *su* and *ā*. The transfer of the  $\sqrt{\text{bar}}$ , usually thematic, to the non-thematic root-class is a common enough phenomenon in the Veda as well as in Avesta.† The  $\sqrt{\text{br}}$  with  $\text{आ}$  in Veda means to extol (a divinity) through sacrifice; cf.  $\text{आसने भौनाय नमसा समक्षरे} \dots \text{अभरा पनीषदे} \ddagger$  (RV., I. 57. 3), “To him the terrible, most meet for lofty praise . . . bring gifts with reverence in this rite”||. Probably the sense here meant to be implied is 1/3 but the form 3/1 (ending in *-āt*) has been used owing to the attraction of *darśyāt*.

7. *yave*—Adv. Ever. Probably orig. it was 7/1 of *yav*, duration. The phrases *yavē vispāi* and *yavōi vispāi* mean “for all time” ¶ (Barth., Wb. 1264-65). Kan. (Dict.) compares the Ger. *jewels* and Fr. *jamaïs*.

$\chi^v \text{āθravaṭ}$ —Kan. trans. “salvation bringing”; brilliant (Mills).

*frazahit*—3/1 opt. pres. par.  $\sqrt{\text{zah}}$  with *frā*, to leave completely, to abandon. Cf.  $\text{निजघत}$  (RV., I. 191. 7).

*īstis*—Happiness (Kan.); abundance (Mills); strength (Barth., Wb. 376). Cf. *ahmāi īstīm pouruṣ-χ<sup>v</sup>āθrām* (to him strength of full-salvation) Yas. LXVIII. 11; Skt.  $\text{इष्टिः}$ .

*āsna*—Naturally wise (Kan.); legitimately born (Mills). Barth. (Wb. 341) says “clever” or “intelligent”. He says that the word when used with  $\chi\text{ratu}$  also means “inborn”, the phrase meaning “natural (or inborn) strength (or wisdom)”. Cf. Yas. XXV. 6, Yt. X. 107, etc. Barth. also suggests that there may be here a play upon words. The two senses are due to two derivations. The meaning “clever” is through *ā* +  $\sqrt{\text{zan}}$  ( $\text{ज्ञा}$ ), and in the other sense Barth. derives it as *ā* +  $\times z(\text{dh})\text{-na}$  ( $\text{आ} + \text{आध्} + \text{न}$ ). The Skt. version translates this as  $\text{सुधी}$ . Cf. *ahmāi āsnām-ciṭ frazañtim*, Yas. LXVIII. 11.

$\chi^v \text{āθrō-disyehē}$ —Teaching salvation (Kan.); lit., “pointing out salvation”. Probably this refers to Sraoṣa; cf. *daēnō-disō*, Yas. LVII. 24. “Which teaches concerning glory” (Mills), but he takes it as an adj. to *Aṣōis-ca Vanhuyā*.\*\* And this is not very possible because of the *ca*. Kan. and Barth. construe: “He who shows the way to salvation and Aṣi Vanuhi”. Note gen. used with *haṣma*.

\* Einheimisch. † Whit. § 625; Jack. (A. G., p. 145, fn. 2) notes the opposite type of transfer, from the non-thematic (root-class) to the thematic (a-class, 1st conj.). ‡ Note that the  $\text{ससु} + \text{आ}$  here corresponds almost exactly to *su + ā + bar*. || Trans. by Griffith. ¶ Yas. XLVI. 11; XLIX. 8.

\*\* “That good blessedness which teaches concerning glory”; S.B.E., XXXI. p. 312.

*paiti*—With; governing the gen. here. Barth. (Wb. 825) says it governs the acc. (†)\*

*Ašōiš-ca Vayhuyā*—See above Yas. LVII. 3, where she is associated with Sraoša. I regard the words *paiti* . . . *Vayhuyā* as interpolated.

*haṣma*—Barth. takes it as 3 l of a noun. Kan. also (with Mills) takes it to be a noun "companionship" and construes with *mā yave imaḥ nmānəm frazahit*. Better to take it as 1/3 aor. of  $\sqrt{\text{hak}}/c$  used as a sub. "may we be in companionship of". See below verse 12.

8. *vasas-ca*—Adv., orig. 2 l. At will, i.e. unrestricted, unhampered. This adv. form is specially used with  $\sqrt{\text{χ}}\xi$  (Barth., Wb. 1383). Cf. *vasō-χṣaθrō*, Yas. IX. 17 and below in verse 9; also *vasō* below.

*tū*—1. 1. A variant of *tūm*, तूम्.

*uštā-ca*—3 l used as adv. With glory (Kan.); with a saving rule (Mills). Barth. takes it to mean much the same as *vasas-ca* and as 7 l of *uštā*, wish (Wb. 417).

*χṣāēša*—2/1 opt. pres. atm.  $\sqrt{\text{χ}}\xi$ . The sense is almost indicative. Note also atm.

*havanām*—6, 3 governed by *χṣāēša*. Belonging to thee, thine own (𐬥𐬀). The gen. with  $\sqrt{\text{χ}}\xi$  is also to be found in RV. (V. 42. 11, X. 120. 8, etc.).

*āpō* etc.—Kan. takes these as referring to and enumerating the *dāmān* of Ahura. Mills construes differently and trans. "render ye the holy man also a sovereign at will over the waters, etc."

*vohū*—2/3 n. Kan. regards this as an irregular G.A. form† and trans. "all good things"; "all clean and sacred (creatures)" (Mills). In the Veda too वहु (n.) is used in this sense especially with other words like विश्व (RV., VIII. 103. 6, etc.); उरु (RV., IV. 31. 8); दिवानि पार्थिवा (RV., VI. 59. 9, etc.); सार्व (RV., II. 23. 9) and others (see Grass., Wb. 1234-1236).

*Aša-ciθra*—Which contain the seed of Righteousness (Mills). Rather it means "the seed of Aša," i.e. produced by (or in accordance with) the Law of Aša. *ciθra* in the sense of progeny, family or race is found in comp. words like *daēvō-ciθra*,‡ *Hvara-ciθra* (the name of the second son of Z.)|| The word is found in O. Pers. in the phrase *ariyah-ciθrah* (of the Aryan race), Beh. VI. 2. In Pers. the word becomes *chih* (𐬵𐬀) as in *Minū-chih* (𐬢𐬀𐬵𐬀), Av. *Mainyuš-ciθra*. The other sense of the word is "clear" (𐬵𐬀).¶ The etymology of both these may or may not be the same. After *ciθra* Kan. puts a semi-colon (;).

*χṣayamnəm*—2/1 pres. pt. atm.  $\sqrt{\text{χ}}\xi$ . Ruler, i.e. powerful.

*aṣavanəm*—2/1. Sg. used collectively in a plu. sense.

\* Probably he takes *Ašōiš-ca Vayhuyā* as acc.

† A.G., § 122.

‡ See below Sel. VI.

|| See above Yas. XXVI. 5. (Sel. IV.), note on *Isat-vātra*.

¶ Sel. VI, below.

*dāyata*—2/3 imp. par.  $\sqrt{dā}$  (𑀢𑀺) to create, to make. Note the double acc. The change from the sg. ( $\chi\check{s}ā\check{e}\check{s}a$ ) to the plu. is remarkable. Probably the Holy Immortals are also included in this word.

9.  $\chi yāt$  (v.l. *hyāt*, Geld.)—3/1 opt. pres. par.  $\sqrt{ah}$  (𑀢𑀺) to be; 𑀢𑀺𑀸𑀓.

*drvā*—1/1 of *dravant*. See Jack., A.G., § 291; Kan., A.G., § 134. The forms *drāvā* and *drvō* are also found but the last is usually the 8/1.

*gatō*—Gone (Mills), i.e. from the world of the pious; defeated.

*hamistō* (v.l.  $\check{s}tō$ )—Met as a foe (Mills). Kan. seems to take *gatō hamistō* as almost a comp. and trans. "fallen into pain", taking *hamistō* as 7/1 of  $\check{s}ti$  (f.). The word also means "battle".\* Barth. (Wb. 1778) takes it as pft. pt. pass. of *ham* +  $\sqrt{ma\check{s}}$  (*ham* + *mista*) and trans. "thrown down", "defeated". He compares O. Eng. *smītan*, Eng. *smite*, Ger. *schmeissen* (to fling down). His rendering of the whole passage is: "may the infidel be smitten down, and be taken away from the creation of Spēta Mainyu".† In Yas. LXI. 2, we have *hamistāe nīžberatāe višpayā drvatō stōiḥ* where Mills trans. "for the encounter with", and Kan. "for opposing".

*nīžberatō*—Carried out from (Mills); cast out of (Kan.). Nair. for this passage in Yas. VIII. 6, says 𑀢𑀺𑀸𑀓 𑀢𑀺𑀸𑀓 𑀢𑀺𑀸𑀓 𑀢𑀺𑀸𑀓 𑀢𑀺𑀸𑀓 𑀢𑀺𑀸𑀓.

*varatō* (v.l.  $\check{r}atō$ , Barth. Wb. 1368)—Hemmed in (Mills);‡ having failed (in his schemes) (Kan.). Barth. explains the word as "surrounded", i.e. "deprived of free movement". Pers. 𑀢𑀺𑀸𑀓 (*bardeh*) means "a prisoner".  $\sqrt{var}$  (𑀢𑀺) to surround. Possibly the word may be derivable from  $\sqrt{var}$  (to turn away from) and may mean "he who turns away from the law", hence a heretic. Cf. note on *drvant*, Yas. IX. 8.

*avasō-χṣaθrō*—Mills trans., "without power over any wish".

10. Mills says about this verse: "this piece is a reproduction, or close imitation, of some earlier fragment. It sounds like an exhortation delivered while the Faith was still new".

*haχṣaya*—1/1 imp. caus. atm.  $\sqrt{hak/c}$  (to guide) used in the sense of sub. with a slightly future connotation. I will incite (Mills); I will lead (Kan.). Barth. (Wb. 1740) regards this as 1/1 opt. atm. and trans. it interrogatively—"Shall I incite?"

*azem-ciṭ yō Zarahuštrō*—Even I who am Z. (Mills). Kan. says "I who am Z.", but in a ftn. on p. 25, (Kh.A.b.M.), he says: "I and others" (i.e. Z. and his disciples). Possibly the last two words were added later.

*fratamā*—2/3. The leaders, the heads, lit. the first, 𑀢𑀺𑀸𑀓.

\* Kan., Dict., p. 580. † Wb. 1105. ‡ He adds (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 229, ftn.), "Or 'shut out' which would seem better adapted".

† He adds (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 229, ftn.), "Or 'shut out' which would seem better adapted".

*anumatayaē-ca*—4/1 used as an adv. Lit., according in thought, i.e. following in thought.

*anvarštayaē-ca*—For the dropping of the *u* of *anu* see above *hvacā* (Yas. LVII. 20). Cf. also *hvaršta*.

11. *āphām*—Kan. omits this word in his trans. (Kh. A. b. M., p. 25). Mills takes it as an auxiliary verb and trans. "may be". He evidently reads *āphān\**, a form which is not known, the nearest being *āphan*, which is 3/3 sub. pres. par. *√ah* (Jack., A.G., § 531). Barth. (Wb. 271) takes it as 3/3 sub. pft. par. (in the thematic conjugation irregularly). In any case the *-ām* ending is irregular and is probably due to the influence of the *nō* preceding, which has led to the use of this quasi-1/3' ending.

*šyātō* (v. l. *šātō*, Barth.)—Kan. takes it as p. pt. par. 1/1 (for 1/3).† Barth. (Wb. 1707) takes it as inf. of *√šyā(šā)* 'to be satisfied', and construes with the auxiliary *āphām* above. The word is also found as *šātō*. Cf. O. Pers. *šiyāti* (happiness), Mod. Pers., *شاد* (*shād*) happy and *شادی* (*shādī*) happiness (used specifically to mean marriage).

*manā*—1/3.

*vaštō* (v. l. *vahištō*, Geld. and Kan.)—This is the reading of Barth. He explains this as an adv. in much the same sense as *vasas-ca* above (verse 9). He translates this passage "may our souls be as they wish" (may their wishes be fulfilled, in other words, "may they get salvation").‡ Kan. takes *vahištō* as 1/1 for 1/3.

*√aθravaitiś*—1/3. Full of heavenly glory. The idea seems to be that of attaining the ecstasy of spiritual life even while *in the body*, like the idea of some saints (Kabir, for example) of *जौवे चि मर जाना* (dying while alive).

*tanvō*—Geld. remarks (p. 211, ftn.) that all mss. read *tanō*.

*həntō* (v. l. *hənti*, Geld.)—Mills takes it as 6/1 of the pres. pt. of *√ah* (× *चन्तः*, *चन्तः*) and trans. in the plu. "of saints". Kan. takes it as 1/3 m. pres. pt. *√ah* (*चन्तः*) and trans. "our bodies being, etc." Barth. (Wb. 274) explains this as 3/3 imp. pres. par. *√ah* (*चन्तु*). The ending *-antō* for *-antu* is also found in *jasəntō* (Yt. XIX. 66) and *iθəntō* (Yt. XIII. 141)||. The use of imp. (instead of sub.) in the relative clause (with *yabə*) is noteworthy.

*vahistō aṇhuš*—1/1. See above Yas. IX. 19.

*ākās-cōit*—Clearly, openly (Kan. and Mills). Kan. derives this from *ā* + *√kāś* (*काश्*) + *cōit* (*चेत्*, *चित्*).¶ Barth. (Wb. 309) takes *ākās-cōit* as made up of *ākā* and the enc. particle *cōit* (cf. *azəm-ciē* above, verse 10). He takes *ākā* here as 5/1 of *ākā* (disclosure, revealing). The word has the specific sense of the opening out of the record of the departed soul's life-work upon the Cinvaṭ-bridge.\*\*

\* S.B.E., XXXI, p. 312, ftn. 2. † Dict., p. 553. ‡ Wb. 1393. || Barth., Wb. 31, note 12; and 279, note 28. ¶ Dict., p. 76. \*\* Cf. Gâth. Yohā. LI. 13 (Sel. XXXVI, Part 2).

*ahūire*—Kān. takes this as 3/1 of *Ahura* and trans. "O Ahura!" Mills trans. "devoted to Ahura" (case ?). Barth. (Wb. 346-7) takes this as 2/3 of *āhūrya* (n.), lit. "belonging to *Ahura*" hence "the regions where *Ahura* dwells", Skt. आहुरीय. For the form ending in *-re* from a stem in *-rya* cf. *aire* 1/3 from *airya* (Yt. V. 69).\*

*jasəntām*—3 3 imp. pres. atm. Kān. trans. "let these reach us" (i.e. be fulfilled for us). Mills says "let them (the minds, etc.) go likewise etc.". Barth. (Wb. 494) trans. "arrive at" with acc. of the goal reached. But in his trans. of the whole passage (Wb. 584) he takes this as 3/3 used for 1/3 ("So that we may reach").

The whole passage is, as may have been gathered, very obscure in construction. The individual words are by no means difficult but the construction is difficult to grasp.† In the first place I have ventured to alter the metrical arrangement. Geld. reads and divides the verse thus:—

*yathā-nō āṇhām śyātō manā vahištō urvānō*  
*χ<sup>o</sup>āθravaitiš tanvō hənti vahištō aṇhuš ākâscōit*  
*ahūire Mazda jəsəntām.*

Kān. trans. :—

So that our minds (may become) full of joy (and our) souls become (i.e. attain) the best; (and our) bodies being full-of-heavenly-glory (may be fit) for the best world (i.e. Heaven): O Ahura Mazda, may (all this which we have desired) reach (us) openly.

The defects of this rendering are: 1. *āṇhām* is omitted; 2. *həntō* is taken in the sense of the Eng. nom. absolute which construction seems foreign to the genius of Av.

Mills trans. thus:—

In order that our minds may be delighted and our souls the best, let our bodies be glorified as well, and let them, O Mazda, go likewise openly (unto Heaven) as to the best world of the saints as devoted to Ahura, and accompanied by Aša, etc. (he joins this on to the following verse).

Mills himself admits that the nom. *vahištō aṇhuš* "is difficult" (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 312, ftn. 3), also the rendering of *āhūire* is not clear as regards the case.

Barth. has this:—

In order that our minds may be happy and that our souls may be with every wish fulfilled‡ and in order that our bodies may be full of glory (may) the best life (come to us); so that we may reach, O Mazda, from the disclosure (at the Cinvat-bridge) to the regions of Ahura.

[Auf dass unsre Gedanken froh seien, unsere Seelen sich nach Wunsch befinden, soll uns das Paradies zu teil werden, indem wir, von der Offenlegung weg zu den ahurischen Räumen gelangen. Wb. 1393 (up to the word "befinden") and 585.]

\* Jack., A.G., §§ 63 ff. † See also Kān., Kh. A. b. M., p. 25, ftn., where he makes the same remark and adds that he is uncertain about his own trans. ‡ He reads *vahištō urvānō*.

The weak points in this rendering are: 1. he construes *nō aṇhaṭ* (lit., be to us, i.e. come to us) understood with *vahištō aṇhuš*, which is not very convincing; 2. taking the 3/3 *jasəntām* in the sense of 1/3 *jasāmaide* is also a difficulty, though this latter difficulty is by no means insuperable.\*

I propose to join this verse (in sense) with the previous one, remembering the remarks of Mills quoted at the beginning of verse 10.† I now give my suggestions for what they are worth:

(1) I read *yaθa nō* (separately), i.e. I do not regard *nō* here as the enc. pron., but as a particle. This particle *nō* (sometimes *nā*) is orig. the same as the pron. *nō*. It is a sort of mildly emphatic assertion like the *नू* in Veda. This particle never begins a sentence or *pāda*. (Barth., Wb. 1072).

(2) I propose to take *āṇhām* as 6/3 f. of the dem. pron. (= *आहाम्*) referring to the *fratəmā* of the previous verse. There is the gender difficulty but probably the influence of the last words of the previous verse which are fem. (adj. to *daēnā*) has worked in this case; (see Reich, § 802).

Hence my trans. runs:

So that, verily, ~~the~~ minds of these (leaders) (may be) full of joy, (and their) souls (be) with every-wish-fulfilled (and their) bodies full-of-heavenly-glory; (and thus too theirs) may be‡ the best life (hereafter): may they reach, O Mazda, the regions-of-Ahura even after the disclosure (of their actions in this life).

12. *Aša*—3/1. Mills takes this verse with the preceding.

*darəsāma*—1/3 sub. aor. par.  $\sqrt{\text{darəs}}$  (*दरस्*).

*pairi . . . jamyāma*—May we come near (Kan.); may we come round about Thee (Mills); may we reach Thee (Barth., Wb. 499).

*haməm-θwā haṇma*—(May we attain) Thy eternal friendship (Kan.) taking *haṇma* as 2/1 n. Mills also takes the same way. Barth. (Wb. 1739) takes it as 1/3 sub. aor. par.  $\sqrt{\text{hak/c}}$ . May we consort completely with Thee, or may we completely unite with Thee, *यमं त्वा* \* *यज्म*. This best suits the spirit of the hymn which thus closes with a fine climax—seeing, reaching, completely uniting with, Ahura.

\* See the final remarks on *X<sup>u</sup>dbairyaḍ* above (verse 6).  
to be construed with each of the four clauses, hence the plu.

† See above p. 119.

‡ The *həntō* is



V.

## V.

### The Zoroastrian Creed—Yasna XII.

1. § nāismī<sup>1</sup> daēvō<sup>2</sup>.

fravarācā<sup>3</sup> mazdayasnō<sup>4</sup> zaraθuštriš<sup>5</sup> | idaēvō<sup>6</sup> ahurā<sup>7</sup>-tkaēšō<sup>8</sup>, | staōtā<sup>9</sup>

Amešanām<sup>10</sup> Spəntanām<sup>11</sup>, | yastā<sup>12</sup> Amešanām<sup>13</sup> Spəntanām<sup>14</sup>.

Ahu, āi<sup>15</sup> Mazdāi<sup>16</sup> vaŋhavē<sup>17</sup>, vohumaitē<sup>18</sup>

vīspā<sup>19</sup> vohū<sup>20</sup> cinahmī<sup>21</sup>, ašāunē<sup>22</sup>, raēvaitē<sup>23</sup>, .

χ<sup>24</sup>arenanuhaitē<sup>25</sup>, yā<sup>26</sup>-zī<sup>27</sup> cīcā<sup>28</sup> vahištā<sup>29</sup>;

yeŋhē<sup>30</sup> gāuš<sup>31</sup>, yeŋhē<sup>32</sup> ašem<sup>33</sup>, yeŋhē<sup>34</sup> raocā<sup>35</sup>,

yeŋhē<sup>36</sup> raocēbīs<sup>37</sup> rōiθwen<sup>38</sup> χ<sup>39</sup>āθrā<sup>40</sup>.

2. § + Spəntām<sup>1</sup> Ārmaītīm<sup>2</sup> vaŋuhīm<sup>3</sup> verənē<sup>4</sup>: hā<sup>5</sup>-mōi<sup>6</sup> astū<sup>7</sup>.

us<sup>8</sup> gēuš<sup>9</sup> stuyē<sup>10</sup> tāyāat<sup>11</sup>-cā<sup>12</sup> hazanhat<sup>13</sup>-cā<sup>14</sup>,

+ us<sup>15</sup> mazdayasnašām<sup>16</sup> (vīšām<sup>17</sup>) zyānayaē<sup>18</sup>-cā<sup>19</sup> vīvāpat<sup>20</sup>-ca<sup>21</sup>.

3. § ferā<sup>1</sup> Manyaeibyō<sup>2</sup> rāŋhē<sup>3</sup> vasē<sup>4</sup>-yāitīm<sup>5</sup> vasē<sup>6</sup>-šēitīm<sup>7</sup>,

yāi<sup>8</sup>š upairī<sup>9</sup> āya<sup>10</sup> zema<sup>11</sup>\* gaobiš<sup>12</sup> šyentī<sup>13</sup>;

nemanhā<sup>14</sup> Ašāi<sup>15</sup> uzdatā<sup>16</sup>† paitī<sup>17</sup> avat<sup>18</sup> stuyē<sup>19</sup>.

+ nōit<sup>20</sup> (ahmāt<sup>21</sup> ā<sup>22</sup>) zyānīm<sup>23</sup>‡ nōit<sup>24</sup> vīvāpēm<sup>25</sup> χ<sup>26</sup>stā<sup>27</sup> māzdayasnīs<sup>28</sup>

(aoi<sup>28</sup> vīsō<sup>29</sup>);

+ nōit<sup>30</sup> astō<sup>31</sup> nōit<sup>32</sup> uštānahē<sup>33</sup> cinmānī<sup>34</sup>.

4. § vī<sup>1</sup> daēvāi<sup>2</sup>š ayāi<sup>3</sup>š,

akō<sup>4</sup>-dābīš<sup>5</sup> sarem<sup>6</sup> mruyē<sup>7</sup>;

hātām<sup>10</sup> draojištāi<sup>11</sup>,

hātām<sup>14</sup> avanuhutemāi<sup>15</sup>;

+ vī<sup>16</sup> daēvāi<sup>17</sup> vī<sup>18</sup> daēvavaŋbīs<sup>19</sup>, vī<sup>20</sup> yātuš<sup>21</sup> vī<sup>22</sup> yātumaŋbīs<sup>23</sup>

+ vī<sup>24</sup> kahyā-cī<sup>25</sup> (hātām<sup>26</sup>) ātarāi<sup>27</sup>;

vī<sup>28</sup> manēbīs<sup>29</sup>, vī<sup>30</sup> vacēbīs<sup>31</sup>

vī<sup>36</sup>-zī<sup>37</sup> anā<sup>38</sup> sarem<sup>39</sup> mruyē<sup>40</sup>,

avanhīš<sup>41</sup>||, anaretāi<sup>42</sup>š,

hātām<sup>12</sup> paošīštāi<sup>13</sup>,

vī<sup>32</sup> šyaoganāi<sup>33</sup>š, vī<sup>34</sup> ciθrāi<sup>35</sup>š,

+ yaθanā<sup>41</sup> dregvātā<sup>42</sup> rāχsayantā<sup>43</sup>.

5. aθā<sup>1</sup> aθā<sup>2</sup> cōit<sup>3</sup> Ahurō<sup>4</sup> Mazdā<sup>5</sup> Zaraθuštrēm<sup>6</sup> aθaχšayaētā<sup>7</sup>, vīspaēšū<sup>8</sup>

ferušnaēšū<sup>9</sup>, vīspaēšū<sup>10</sup> hanjamanaēšū<sup>11</sup>, yāi<sup>12</sup>š aperesaētem<sup>13</sup> Muz-

dāš<sup>14</sup>-cā<sup>15</sup> Zaraθuštras<sup>16</sup>-cā<sup>17</sup>.

\* Geld. reads āya-zemī.

† Geld. has odatā.

‡ Geld. has āyā.

: Geld. and Kan. have ʾanā.

## V.

### The Zoroastrian Creed—Yasna XII.

1. I shall cause the Daēvas<sup>2</sup> to perish<sup>1</sup>.

I profess-myself<sup>3</sup> (to be) a Mazda-worshipping<sup>4</sup> follower-of-Zara<sup>9</sup>uštra<sup>5</sup> opposed-to-the-Daēvas<sup>8</sup>, acting-according-to-the-Law<sup>8</sup>-of-Ahura<sup>7</sup>, a praiser<sup>9</sup> of the Holy<sup>11</sup> Immortals<sup>10</sup>, (and) a worshipper<sup>12</sup> of the Holy<sup>14</sup> Immortals<sup>13</sup>. Unto Ahura<sup>15</sup> Mazda<sup>16</sup>, the Good<sup>17</sup>, the Lord-of-(all)-Goodness<sup>18</sup>, the Holy<sup>22</sup>, the Resplendent<sup>23</sup> (and) the Glorious<sup>24</sup>, do I attribute<sup>21</sup> all<sup>19</sup> good<sup>20</sup> (things)—yea<sup>26</sup>, all<sup>27\*</sup> (things) which<sup>25</sup> (are) the best<sup>29</sup>; (unto Him) whose<sup>29</sup> (is this) Earth<sup>30</sup>, whose<sup>31</sup> (is) Righteousness<sup>32</sup>, whose<sup>33</sup> (is) Light<sup>34</sup>, in whose<sup>35</sup> Light<sup>36</sup> (all other) lights<sup>38</sup> are clothed<sup>37</sup>.†

2. I choose-for-myself<sup>4</sup> the excellent<sup>3</sup> Holy<sup>1</sup> Piety<sup>2‡</sup>; may she<sup>6</sup> be<sup>7</sup> mine<sup>6</sup>. I solemnly-condemn<sup>8</sup> <sup>10</sup> both<sup>12‡</sup> the robbing<sup>11</sup> and<sup>14</sup> the plundering<sup>13</sup> of cattle<sup>9</sup>, (and) solemnly (-condemn)<sup>16</sup> both<sup>19‡</sup> ~~the~~ damaging<sup>18</sup> and<sup>21</sup> laying-waste<sup>20</sup> of the villages<sup>17</sup> of Mazda-worshippers<sup>16</sup>.

3. I attribute<sup>3</sup>-completely<sup>1</sup> free<sup>4</sup>-movement<sup>5</sup> (and) absolute<sup>6</sup>-sovereignty<sup>7</sup> unto the Spiritual-Lords<sup>2</sup>, who<sup>8</sup> upon<sup>9</sup> this<sup>10</sup> earth<sup>11</sup> rule<sup>13</sup> over (all) created-beings<sup>12</sup>; by-means-of<sup>17</sup> fervent<sup>18</sup> salutations<sup>14\*</sup> to Aša<sup>15</sup> I praise<sup>19</sup> these<sup>18\*\*</sup> (as well).

Never<sup>20</sup> from now<sup>21</sup> onwards<sup>22</sup> shall I stand-up<sup>26</sup> against<sup>23</sup> the village<sup>28</sup> of the Mazda-worshipper<sup>27</sup> (for) damaging<sup>23</sup> (it) or<sup>24††</sup> (for) laying-(it)-waste<sup>25</sup>; (nor shall I entertain) designs<sup>34</sup> (against) either<sup>30††</sup> the limb<sup>31</sup> or<sup>32††</sup> the life<sup>33</sup> (of the Mazda-worshipper).

4. Away<sup>1</sup> do I fling<sup>9</sup> (all) allegiance<sup>3</sup> to the wicked<sup>3</sup> Daēvas<sup>2</sup>, without-purity<sup>4</sup> (and)-without-the-Law<sup>5</sup> (of Aša), creators<sup>7</sup>-of-evil<sup>6</sup>, most-untruthful<sup>11</sup> among†† beings<sup>10</sup>, most-loathsome<sup>13</sup> among†† beings<sup>12</sup>, most-devoid-of-virtue<sup>15</sup> among†† beings<sup>14</sup>; away<sup>16</sup> (do I fling all allegiance) to the Daēvas<sup>17</sup> (and) to the Daēva-worshippers<sup>19</sup>; to the wizards<sup>21</sup> (and) to the companions-of-the-wizards<sup>23‡</sup>; away<sup>24</sup> (do I fling all allegiance) to (these beings) inimical<sup>27</sup> to every<sup>25</sup> living-creature<sup>26¶¶</sup>; to (their) thoughts<sup>29</sup>, to (their) words<sup>31</sup>, to (their) deeds<sup>33</sup>, (and) to (all their) manifestations<sup>36\*\*\*</sup>—away<sup>38</sup> indeed<sup>37</sup> do-I-fling<sup>40</sup> (all) allegiance<sup>39</sup> to any<sup>38</sup> whatsoever<sup>41</sup> (of) the infidel<sup>42</sup> tormentors<sup>43</sup>.

5. Thus<sup>1</sup>, even<sup>3</sup> thus<sup>2</sup>, did Ahura<sup>4</sup> Mazda<sup>5</sup> instruct<sup>7</sup> Zara<sup>9</sup>uštra<sup>6</sup>, during all<sup>8</sup> the questionings<sup>9</sup>, during all<sup>10</sup> the meetings-together<sup>11</sup>, when<sup>12†††</sup> (They two) conversed-together<sup>13</sup>, both<sup>15‡</sup> Mazda<sup>14</sup> and<sup>17</sup> Zara<sup>16</sup>uštra<sup>16</sup>.

\* Lit., "whosoever". † Lit., "are mixed". ‡ *Senta Armaili*. || Lit., "and". ¶ Orig. sg. \*\* *avat* neu. sg. †† Orig. is negative. †† Lit., "of". ||| *ē* 18, *ē* 20 and *ē* 22 omitted. ¶¶ Lit., "(any) whatsoever among living-beings". \*\*\* *ē* has been omitted in four places (28, 30, 32 and 34). ††† Lit., "during which".

6. aθā<sup>1</sup> aθā<sup>2</sup> cōit<sup>3</sup> Zaraθuštrō<sup>4</sup> daēvāiš<sup>5</sup> sarem<sup>6</sup> vyāmrvitā<sup>7</sup>, vīspaēšū<sup>8</sup> fērašnaēšū<sup>9</sup>, vīspaēšū<sup>10</sup> hanjamanaēšū<sup>11</sup>, yāiš<sup>12</sup> aperesaētem<sup>13</sup> Mazdāiš<sup>14</sup>-ca<sup>15</sup> Zaraθuštras<sup>16</sup>-cā<sup>17</sup>.

aθā<sup>18</sup> azēm<sup>19</sup>-ci<sup>20</sup>, yō<sup>21</sup> mazdayasnō<sup>22</sup> zaraθuštriš<sup>23</sup>, daēvāiš<sup>24</sup> sarem<sup>25</sup> vīmruyē<sup>26</sup>, yaθā<sup>27</sup> anāiš<sup>28</sup> vyāmrvitā<sup>29</sup> yō<sup>30</sup> ašavā<sup>31</sup> Zaraθuštrō<sup>32</sup>.

7. § yāvarnā<sup>1</sup>\* āpo<sup>2</sup>,  
yāvaranā<sup>5</sup> gāuē<sup>6</sup> hudā<sup>7</sup>;  
+ yāvaranō<sup>8</sup> Ahurō<sup>9</sup> (Mazdā<sup>10</sup>),

yāvaranā<sup>3</sup>\* urvarā<sup>4</sup>,

[ + yō<sup>11</sup> gēm<sup>12</sup> dadā<sup>13</sup>, yō<sup>14</sup> narem<sup>15</sup>  
(ašavanem<sup>16</sup>), ]†

yāvaranō<sup>17</sup> (as<sup>18</sup>) Zaraθuštrō<sup>19</sup>,  
+ yāvaranā<sup>23</sup> Fērašaostrā<sup>24</sup>-

yāvaranō<sup>20</sup> Kavā<sup>21</sup> Vištāspō<sup>22</sup>;

Jāmāspā<sup>25</sup>,†

+ yāvaranō<sup>26</sup> kas-ci<sup>27</sup> Saošyāntām<sup>28</sup>, [haiθyāvarežām<sup>29</sup> ašāunām<sup>30</sup>]†  
+ tāvarenā<sup>31</sup>-cā<sup>32</sup>\*- -tkaēšā<sup>33</sup>-cā<sup>34</sup> (mazdayasnō<sup>35</sup>) ahmi<sup>36</sup>.

8. § [jasa<sup>1</sup>-mō<sup>2</sup> ava<sup>3</sup>hē<sup>4</sup>, Mazda<sup>4</sup>! mazdayasnō<sup>5</sup>-ahmi<sup>6</sup>],||  
mazdayasnō<sup>7</sup> zaraθuštriš<sup>8</sup> fravarāne<sup>9</sup> āstūtas<sup>10</sup>-cā<sup>11</sup>,  
fravaretas<sup>12</sup>-ca<sup>13</sup>; āstuyē<sup>14</sup> humatēm<sup>15</sup> manō<sup>16</sup>,  
+ āstuyē<sup>17</sup> hūxtēm<sup>18</sup> vacō<sup>19</sup>, āstuyē<sup>20</sup> hvarštēm<sup>21</sup> šyaōθanēm<sup>22</sup>.

9. § āstuyē<sup>1</sup> daēnām<sup>2</sup> vaŋhuīm<sup>3</sup>¶, mazdayasnīm<sup>4</sup>,

+ fraspāyaoxēdrēm<sup>5</sup>, niδāsnaioišēm<sup>6</sup>, (χ<sup>v</sup> aētvadaθām<sup>7</sup>, ašeonīm<sup>8</sup>),

+ yā<sup>9</sup> hāiti nām<sup>10</sup>-cā<sup>11</sup>, būšyeiŋtinām<sup>12</sup>-cā<sup>13</sup>,

mazištā<sup>14</sup>-cā<sup>15</sup>, vahištā<sup>16</sup>-cā<sup>17</sup>, sraēštā<sup>18</sup>-cā<sup>19</sup>,

+ yā<sup>20</sup> ahūiriš<sup>21</sup> zaraθuštriš<sup>22</sup>.

Ahurāi<sup>23</sup> Mazdāi<sup>24</sup> vīspā<sup>25</sup> vohū<sup>26</sup> cinahmi<sup>27</sup>,

+ ašā<sup>28</sup> asti<sup>29</sup> daenayā<sup>30</sup> (māzdayasnōiš<sup>31</sup>) āstūitiš<sup>32</sup>.

\* Geld. reads *yā-varanā*; and so also below *tā-varanā-cā*.

† I regard this *pāda* as a later addition. ‡ Geld. has the names separately. || This line is not in the text of the Yasna itself, but the last two verses with this line added make up the shorter "creed" which is known popularly as *Jasa-mē-avayhē-Mazda*. ¶ Geld. omits this word.

6. Thus<sup>1</sup>, even<sup>3</sup> thus<sup>2</sup>, did Zaraθuštra<sup>4</sup> fling-away<sup>7</sup> (all) allegiance<sup>6</sup> to the Daēvas<sup>5</sup>, during all<sup>9</sup> the questionings<sup>8</sup>, during all<sup>10</sup> the meetings-together<sup>11</sup>; when<sup>12\*</sup> (They two) conversed-together<sup>13</sup>, both<sup>16†</sup> Mazda<sup>14</sup> and<sup>17</sup> Zaraθuštra<sup>15</sup>.

In-the-same-way<sup>18</sup>, even<sup>20</sup> I<sup>19</sup>, who<sup>21</sup> (am) a Mazda-worshipping<sup>22</sup> follower-of-Zaraθuštra<sup>23</sup>, do fling-away<sup>26</sup> (all) allegiance<sup>25</sup> to the Daēvas<sup>24</sup>, just as<sup>27</sup> He<sup>30,‡</sup> the Holy<sup>31</sup> Zaraθuštra<sup>32</sup>, flung-away<sup>29</sup> (all allegiance) to them<sup>28</sup>.

7. Of-what-faith<sup>1</sup> (are) the waters<sup>2</sup>, of-what-faith<sup>3</sup> the trees<sup>4</sup>, of-what-faith<sup>5</sup> the bounteous<sup>7</sup> Mother-Earth<sup>6</sup>; of-what-faith<sup>8</sup> Ahura<sup>9</sup> Mazda<sup>10</sup>, [who<sup>11</sup> created<sup>13</sup> the earth<sup>12</sup> (and) who<sup>14</sup> the holy<sup>16</sup> man<sup>15</sup> (did also create)], of-what-faith<sup>17</sup> was<sup>18</sup> Zaraθuštra<sup>19</sup>, of-what-faith<sup>20</sup> (was) Kava<sup>21</sup> Vištāspa<sup>22</sup>, of-what-faith<sup>23</sup> (were the two) Fərəšaoštra<sup>24</sup> (and) Jāmāspa<sup>25</sup>, of-what-faith<sup>26</sup> (has been) any<sup>27||</sup> of the truth-working<sup>29</sup> holy<sup>30</sup> Saošyantas<sup>28</sup>; of-that-faith<sup>31</sup> and<sup>32</sup> of-(that)-Law<sup>33</sup> as-well<sup>34</sup>, a Mazda-worshipper<sup>35</sup>, am I<sup>36</sup>.

8. Come<sup>1</sup> unto my<sup>2</sup> help<sup>3</sup>, O Mazda<sup>4</sup>: I am<sup>5</sup> a Mazda-worshipper<sup>6</sup>, I profess-myself<sup>9</sup> (to be) a Mazda-worshipping<sup>7</sup> follower-of-Zaraθuštra<sup>8</sup>, both<sup>11†</sup> a devoted (-follower)<sup>10</sup> and<sup>13</sup> an ardent-believer<sup>12</sup> (in this faith): I solemnly-dedicate-myself<sup>14</sup> to the true-conceived<sup>15</sup> thought<sup>16</sup>, I solemnly-dedicate-myself<sup>17</sup> to the true-spoken<sup>18</sup> word<sup>19</sup>, I solemnly-dedicate-myself<sup>20</sup> to the true-performed<sup>21</sup> act<sup>22</sup>.

9. I solemnly-dedicate-myself<sup>1</sup> to the excellent<sup>3</sup> religion<sup>2</sup> (of) Mazda-worship<sup>4</sup>, (which is) quarrel-removing<sup>5</sup>, weapon-lowering<sup>6</sup>, self-devoting<sup>7</sup> (and) holy<sup>8</sup>, which<sup>9</sup> of both<sup>11</sup> those-that-are<sup>10</sup> and<sup>13</sup> of those-that-shall-be<sup>12</sup> (hereafter) (is) the greatest<sup>14</sup>, and<sup>15</sup> the best<sup>16</sup>, and<sup>17</sup> the loftiest<sup>18</sup>, as well<sup>19</sup>, which<sup>20</sup> (is the religion) of-Ahura<sup>21</sup> revealed-by-Zaraθuštra<sup>22</sup>.

Unto Ahura<sup>23</sup> Mazda<sup>24</sup> do I attribute<sup>27</sup> all<sup>25</sup> good<sup>26</sup> (things).  
Such<sup>28¶</sup> is<sup>29</sup> the vow<sup>32</sup> of the religion<sup>30</sup> (of) Mazda-worship<sup>31</sup>.

\* Lit., "during which".  
† Lit., "this".

+ Lit., "and".

‡ Lit., "who".

§ Lit., "whosoever".

## NOTES.

1. Kanga: *Khordēh Avestā bā Mānī* (5th ed.), pp. 413-418. The last two verses (8-9) are also found at pp. 9 and 10.

2. Reichelt: *Avesta Reader* (verses 1-7 only); text at pp. 75-76, notes pp. 176-177.

3. Mills: *S.B.E.*, XXXI, pp. 247-250.

Linguistically this passage is among the oldest in the Younger Avesta or the youngest of the Gāthic dialect. The names mentioned in verse 7 also give an indication of the age, but as Mills rightly remarks\* the names are "not mentioned with any fanciful or superstitious exaggeration". Thus the period may have been within a couple of generations after the Prophet, before exaggerations had time to gather round his name.

The essential portions of this prayer are the last two verses which are repeated by every Zoroastrian each time he ties on his sacred girdle. They give the essential features of the religion—the establishment of peace and the stopping of bloodshed and fighting. But this is not a mere negative type of faith, but a positive one of actively suppressing evil. We shall see more evidences of it in later selections—*Yaθā-ahu Vairyo*,† and in the *Gāthās*.

If Mills' idea be correct the opening verses, especially the 2nd and 3rd, would prove that the establishment of the Zoroastrian Faith marked definitely the adoption of agriculture and of settled conditions of life by the Iranian nations. Some support is lent to this view by the legend of the colony founded by Yima (Ven. II) and also by the very high praise of agriculture in other passages.‡ The view of Mills is well developed by Dr. J. J. Modi in a very interesting essay: *अवस्था जमानानुं एकरारनामुं* (The Confession of Faith of the Avestan Age).|| But though interesting as a speculation the view of Mills is not generally accepted.

We may however take it that the *daēvas* and the *daēva*-worshippers represent tribes who were in a comparatively lower stage of civilisation as compared to the Iranian culture of this epoch, and in verse 4 there are abused in strong terms which means that the Zoroastrian was expected to be actively opposed to them. And this active opposition to the *daēvas* has continued to be the most marked feature of the Zoroastrians all through their history.

Verse 7 is very remarkable. The religion is said to be the religion of the waters, of the trees, of the bounteous Earth, and of Ahura Himself. The main feature of the *Māzdayasna* faith, as revealed by Z., is the Law of

\* *S.B.E.*, XXXI, p. 247, fn. 4. † *Sol.* VII a. ‡ *Sol.* X; also *Ven.* III (*Sol.* XXIX. Part 2).

|| Published with other essays on the Domestic Life and the Geography of the Avesta in the year 1887. The full title of the book is *अवस्था जमानानी वरसंसारी जीर्दगी. मुमोज अने एकरारनामुं* (Bombay).

Aša, which is another name for the Law of God. To put it in modern language the basis of this religion (in fact of all religion) is the eternal Law of Progress so finely described by Tennyson as

“That God which always lives and loves,

“One God, one law, one element,

“And one far-off divine event

“To which the whole creation moves.”

No doubt the Sage who composed the seventh verse of this Yasna had an idea similar to that of Tennyson's in his mind.

1. *nāismī*—Note the final long *i*, a characteristic of the older dialect. Kan. explains this form as the caus. of  $\sqrt{nas}$  (नश्). This, as he explains (A.G., § 523), is made without the *-aya* and the root is conjugated in the thematic conjugation with a वृद्धि strengthening. He trans. this, therefore, as “I cause the *daēvas* to perish”. Mills says, “I drive hence”; but he adds (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 247, fn. 5) that possibly it is from  $\sqrt{nad}$ , to curse. Reich. suggests a  $\sqrt{naēd}$ , also Barth. (Wb. 1034). Cf. Yt. XIII. 89, *Zarathuštrō . . . yō paōiryō . . . nāist daēvō*. Nair. says निश्दयामि. Jack. (A.G., § 655) takes it as *s-aor.* (sub. ?) of  $\sqrt{nās}$  (a caus. form of  $\sqrt{naś}$ , नश्, to perish) which is used in the caus. sense without the *-aya*.

*daēvaō*—2 3. This is a unique example of the transfer of an *-a*-stem to the consonantal declension.

*fravarāne*—1/1 pres. atm.  $\sqrt{var}$  (वृ) + *frā*. Note atm. Cf. *fraoranta* above Yas. LVII. 24.

*mazdayasnō zarathuštris*—A Mazda-worshipping follower of Z. The *paōiryō-θkaēša* (Yas. XXVI. 4) were also Mazda-worshippers. Note also that the adj. *zarathuštriš* when applied to persons means “a follower of Z.”, when applied to the *daēnā* (religion) it means “revealed by Z.”

*vidaēvō*—The name *Vendidād* is a corruption of *vidaēvadāt*, i.e. the law given in order to oppose the *daēvas*.

The formula *fravarāne . . . ahura-θkaēšō* occurs very frequently throughout the Av. ritual.

*vaphavē*—4/1 of *vohū*. Good, वसुवे. Cf. Skt. वासव.

*vohumaitē*—Possessed of goodness (Kan.); endowed with good possessions (Mills); वसुमते.

*vīspā vohū*—2 3 n. All good (things that are created).

*cinahmī*—From  $\sqrt{k/caēs}$ , to attribute something (acc.) to some one (dat.)\* Cf. Yas. XLIV. 6.†

*raēvaitē* (v.l. *°vantē*)—Possessing riches (Kan.); resplendent (Mills). Barth. (Wb. 1484) says that when applied to human beings it means “rich”‡; but when applied to divine beings, especially to Ahura, it

\* Barth., Wb. 429-30. † Sel. XVI below. ‡ Cf. *maēyānušm raēvastəm*, Ven. XX. 1.

means “resplendent”.\* The word is also used as a proper name too of a mountain about which it is said (Bun. XII. 18): “*Raevand-kuh* (is) in Khorāsān on which the *Ādar-Burzin* (the *Burzin-Fire*) is established. It is called *Raevand* because it is full of splendour”. Cf. रेवन्तो.

*yā-zī cīcā vahistā* (v.l. *cīcā*†)—Mills trans. “Whose are all things whatsoever which are good” (omitting the *zī*). Kan. says: “For whatsoever things are best (are His)”. *zī* (ꣳ) is enc. and orig. means “because” and generally introduces a reason-clause. But sometimes it introduces a well-known-fact which is incontrovertible and self-evident.‡ Hence it is best to translate it here by the emphatic “yea”. *cīcā* is a reduplicated form of the inter. pron. with palatalisation. (Barth., Wb. 420). Nair. trans. यच्च यतो या काचित् उत्कृष्टतमता (किञ्च यां काचित् उत्कृष्टतमतां यतो ददो). The ददो introduces an idea foreign to this context but Nair. has evidently imported it from Yas. XLVII. 5 where this phrase *yā-zī*, etc., is repeated.

*gāuš*—Cattle. Kan. suggests (Kh. A. b. M., p. 414, ftn.) that the Earth is meant; cf. *yē gām dadā* verse 7 below.

*raocā*—when used in the plu. it means “light”.

*yēghē . . . χ<sup>v</sup>āθrā*—This is a quotation from Gāθ. Ahu. XXXI. 7.¶

*rōiθwən*—Barth. (Wb. 1528) takes this as an inf. (used with ins. *raocābiš*) from the  $\sqrt{\text{raēθwa}}$ , to mix with.\*\* Reich. takes it the same way and adds that it is originally a loc. form (§ 373), but he gives the meaning of  $\sqrt{\text{raēθwa}}$  as “to be filled with” (A.R., Gloss.), Kan. (Dict., p. 434) takes this as 3/3 impf. par. of the den. verb from the noun *raēθwa* (n.), impurity; he says the verb originally means to become impure or contaminated, then it came to mean “to mix with”. Cf. *nōiθ para ahmāt . . . yaθ aēša (daχmō) pāšnu raēθwāt* (Ven. VII. 50) “not before this (body) is mingled with the dust”. In the phrase *Tistryō . . . kəhrpəm raēθwayēiti* (Yt. VIII. 13) the verb means “takes on the shape of”.

*χ<sup>v</sup>āθrā*—Kan. takes it as 1/3 and trans. “light” or “glory”. Barth. (Wb. 1876) says that the orig. meaning is “well-being”, “happiness”, etc., hence he takes it in the sense of a place where one finds happiness, i.e. paradise, blessed spaces.

The phrase *yēghē . . . χ<sup>v</sup>āθrā* has been rendered variously. Kan. says, “whose splendour has blended with the (infinite) lights (in the sky)”. In G. b. M. (p. 38, ftn.) he explains that Ahura’s essence is in every star that shines in the sky. Mills says: “In whose glory the glorious beings and lights are clothed”. But in Gāθ. Ahu. (XXXI. 7.) he renders the phrase: “they (all) as (His) glorious (conceptions first) clothed themselves in the stars (*raocābiš*)” (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 44). Reich. (A.R., p. 177) following

\* Ved. रेवन्त is used exactly similarly; Grass., Wb. 1182. † Metre requires *cīcā*. ‡ Reich., p. 504. ¶ Barth., Wb. 1480. § Sel. XXXIV., Part 2. \*\* See also Barth., Wb. 1482.



Barth. trans. "with whose lights the rooms (i.e. heavenly spaces) would be filled". Nair. says: यस्स रोचिःसंस्तिष्ठानि सुभानि (good things).

2. *varanē*—1/1 pres. atm. I choose; हणे. The word is used similarly in the Veda also, cf. इन्द्रमग्निं कविच्छदा यज्ञस्य जूता हणे RV., III. 12. 3. Nair. says निमन्त्रयामि, which at any rate expresses the sense.

*hā-mōi astū*—Nair. says ने वपुषि चभ्यागता अस्तु. Cf. Gāḥ. Ahu., XXXII. 2. *Spəntām vō Armaitīm vaguhīm varomaidi*: *hā-nō aṇhaṭ*.

*us-stuyē* (𐬰𐬀𐬎𐬌).— $\sqrt{stu}$  + *us* according to Kan. means to protect something (acc.) by prayer from an evil (abl.). Mills trans. "I loudly deprecate". Barth. (Wb. 1594) says that the verb means "to solemnly abjure (abl.)". The verb would literally mean "to praise away from"; *us* being in the privative sense, or the sense of opposition.\* *us* is frequently used in this sense, e.g. *uz-uštān* (Ven. V. 45), lit. "without heat", i.e. dead; *uz-baoda* (Ven. V. 12), without intelligence; *uz-varaz* (Ven. XIII. 3), lit. "to undo", i.e. to expiate a fault; *uz-vad* (Yt. XVII. 59), lit. "not to marry", i.e. to carry away a maiden by force,† etc. See also Kan., Yt. b. M., p. 332, ftn. Other prep. also have this sense of opposition, or privation, e.g. *apa yaz*, *vī-vap* (below), *vī-mrū* (below verse 4).

*tāyāat-cā* (𐬀𐬎𐬌).—5/1 m. Robber (Kan.); robbery (Mills); so also Barth. (Wb. 647). The word *tāyu* was orig. \* *stāyu* hence probably *tāya* is the same as Skt. स्तेय.‡

*hazayhaṭ-ca*—5/1 of *hazāh* n. Kan. says "plunderer"; Mills and others "plundering". The word is the same as Skt. वरस, strength, hence it came to be "taking away by force". In this sense it is used only here and in the *Frahang-i-oīm* (25. b).|| The word is used in a good sense as well, e.g. *Vaṇhəuš hazē . . . Manayhō* (Yas. XLIII. 4). Nair. says, उवैर्गोपयन् सौमि क्षेत्र्यः इतिश्वस . . . इती वसन्तारौ ||

*zyānayaē-cā*—4/1 for 5/1. Injury or wasting. From  $\sqrt{zyā}$  (a variant of  $\sqrt{z/ji}$ ), to injure, orig. to conquer. Pers. زیان (*ziyān*) injury. Nair. trans. चानिभ्यः अजयौनि (invulnerability) seems to be cognate.¶

*vivāpat-cā* (v. l. *vīyā*°, proposed by Mills)\*\*—Mills is evidently thinking of *vī* + *āp* (water) and trans. "drought"; so also. Kan.; Barth. takes it from *vī* +  $\sqrt{vap}$  (to sow) and trans. "laying waste" (Wb. 1452); Nair. has उदासेभ्यः.

Mills trans. *zyānayaē-cā vivāpat-cā* as "all drought to (leading to) the wasting".

3. *farā . . . rāghē*— $\sqrt{rā}$  + *frā*, to grant, to attribute. Kan. takes this as dat. inf. "for the sake of granting". He also suggests (Dict., p. 445)

\* Hence the abl. "object".

† The opposite is *up-vad*.

‡ See also Barth., Wb. 638.

|| Barth., Wb. 1799. ¶ RV., IX. 96. 6. and 97. 30.

\*\* S. B. E., XXXI, p. 245, ftn. He also proposes to read *vīyāp* in verse 3 as well.

that this may be 1/1 atm. fut. Mills trans. "I wish to lead away". Reich. takes it as 1/1 s-aor. atm. Barth. (Wb. 1518) takes it as 1/1 sub. s-aor. atm. governing dat. of person and acc. of thing (or quality attributed).

*manyaēibyō* (v.l. *mainyā*, Reich)—4/3. Reich. says (A.R., Gloss.) that as adj. it means "authoritative", as substantive "landlord" (i.e. householder). Kan. takes this as 5/3 and trans. "from (or through) the spiritual Lords" (i.e. the Holy Immortals and others). Mills also takes it as 5/3 but trans. "from their thoughts". Barth. (Wb. 1896) trans. as Reich. does, "persons in authority" or "heads of households", and quotes several parallel passages in support,\* all of which are rendered differently both by Kan. and Dar. (S.B.E., XXIII).

*vasō-yāitīm* (f.)—Freedom of movement (Kan. and others); wandering at will (Mills).

*vasō-šōitīm* (f.)—Freedom of dwelling; freedom of rule; Mills, thinking of nomadic tribes (see Introductory note to this sel.), trans. "free (nomadic) pitching of the tent".

*yāiš*—3/3 for 1/3 *yōi*, Reich. and Kan. Case attraction probably due to *gaobīš* following. Mills takes it in connection with *gaobīš*.

*āya-zēmā*—Cf. Yas. IX. 12.

*gaobīš*—Kan. takes it as "property". Cf. Lat. *pecunia*.

*šyenti*—Live, or dwell (Kan.), also Mills. Reich. and Barth. (Wb. 1706) take it as "protect".

Geld. puts a stop after *šyenti*. Reich. and Kan. put a full-stop, taking the next clause with the rest of the verse. I propose to put a semi-colon here.

*nəmaghā*—3/1. नमसा, with salutations (to Aša). Used with dat. (Reich. § 467).

*uzdātā* (v.l. *°dātā*, Geld. and Barth.)—Kan. takes this reading and explains it as adj. 3/1 to *nəmaghā* and trans. "fervent"; from *us* (warmth, cf. उष्ण) and *√dā* (दा). Barth. reading *°dātā* takes it as adj. 2/3, qualifying *zaoθrā* (offerings) understood. He trans. "uplifted" from *√dā* + *us* (उत्). It is the usual term for the bringing of offerings to the proper place, especially used of *haoma* and *zaoθra* libations (Barth., Wb. 719).†

*paiti*—Kan. takes this as an *upasarga* with *stuyē*. Barth. (Wb. 825) takes this as a particle connecting the foregoing clause or conditions with what follows, and trans. "with (or together with) the uplifted (offerings)".

*ayať*—2/1. This. Used for 2/3 (*ave*) referring to *manyaēibyō* above (cf. *yať* in Yas. IX. 4). Barth. takes it as a conj. introducing direct narration (Wb. 166).

\* Yt. X. 137 (twice) and 138, and Yt. XVII. 10. † Cf. Afrin. IV. 5., Ven. IX. 56., Vis. IX. 1, etc.

*stuyē*—1/1 pres. atm. Barth. (Wb. 1594) explains this as “I promise solemnly”. This is the only passage in which  $\sqrt{stu}$  is used in this sense. Note *stuyē* for *stuvē* (𐬥𐬀𐬌) to avoid the combination *uv* in writing. Cf. also *mruiē*, Skt. मृवे.

Geld. puts a stop here after *stuyē*. Kan. has a comma, Reich. has a colon. I propose to put a fullstop here, taking what follows as an independent sentence.

*ahmāt*—5/1 used  $\dot{a}dv$ . From henceforth, Kan. Cf. Yas. IX. 15. Could it mean “from this (person)”, i.e. myself?

$\dot{a}$  is to be taken with *ahmāt*. From now onwards, from this (time) forth. Kan. reads *āzyānim* which he trans. as “damage”.

*vivāpəm*—See above verse 2.

$\chi\dot{s}tā$ —1/1 aor. sub. par.  $\sqrt{stā}$  (𐬥𐬀𐬌)\*. Note the  $\chi$  affixed (cf. *fraxštāne* above, Yas. IX. 20)†. Kan. takes it as pres. but the regular pres. form is *hištāmi* (cf. ἵσταναι). This form is to be distinguished from *stā* which is 2/3 pres. par. of  $\sqrt{ah}$ —𐬥 (Jack., A. G., § 531). Reich. trans. “I shall practise against”; Barth. trans. “I shall not make myself guilty of” (Wb. 1691 and 1700–01).

*aoi*—𐬀𐬌, towards; with gen. *visō*.

*astō*—6/1 governed by *aoi*. Lit. the bone, hence the limb. Cf. “life and limb”.

*cinmānī*—Kan. and Mills take this as 7/1 of  $\sqrt{man}$  and trans. “in the love of” (i.e. out of love of), from  $\sqrt{ci}$ , to love. Barth. (Wb. 595) takes it as 2/3 n. from  $\sqrt{kan}$  (*cin*) and trans. “designs”.

The verse is difficult in construction and has been variously rendered. Kan. says:

“I shall with fervent hymns praise (Ahura) in order, through the Spiritual Lords, to grant unto those who live upon this earth possessing property (lit. cattle), the power of moving about at will, and that of ruling at will; with fervent prayers I shall praise (Ahura) for the sake of Righteousness (i.e. in order that the people may live righteously). (And therefore) I shall not stand for (i.e. be responsible for causing) damage and drought to the village of the Mazda-worshipper (i.e. I would not engage in acts such as would bring these about),—neither (shall I act thus even) for the love of (my) body or (for the love) of my life (itself)”.

He omits *avač* altogether and, in my opinion, needlessly complicates the sentence, e.g. the way he takes *ašāi*.

Mills trans. (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 248):

“Away from (?) their thoughts do I wish to lead (the thought of) wandering at will, (away the thought of) free nomadic pitching of the tent,

\* Jack., A. G., § 642. † Reich., § 174. 1.

for I wish to remove (?) all wandering from (their) kine, which abide in steadfastness upon this land; and bowing down in worship to Righteousness I dedicate my offerings with praise so far as that. Never may I stand as a source of wasting, never as a source of withering to the Mazdayasnian villages, not for the love of the body or of life".

Mills has here in mind the idea that the advent of Zoroaster meant a change in the life of the Iranians from the nomadic to the agricultural stage (see Introductory note). Doubtless the age-long rivalry between Turān and Irān, and later on between Arab and Persian, is due to this fundamental difference between the nomadic and the settled agricultural stages of civilization. But, even apart from the severe straining of the construction in order to reach this sense, Mills is himself not quite sure of his ground. He himself suggests (p. 248, ftm.) an alternative trans. for *forā . . . . ſyenti*:

"Forth to their thoughts I offer in my prayer free ranging at their choice, and a lodging where they will, together with their cattle which dwell upon this land".

Barth. trans. thus (also Reich.):

"To these heads of households do I grant wandering at will, and lodging at will, (to those) who protect the kine upon this earth, with reverence unto Aša (and) with (offerings) lifted up I promise solemnly this:—'Never from now shall I be guilty of damaging or laying waste the Mazdayasnian village, nor (shall I ever entertain) any design upon the body or the life (of a Mazda-worshipper)'".

I venture to trans. thus:

I attribute completely free movement and undisputed sovereignty unto the Spiritual Lords (the Holy Immortals and the Yazatas) who upon this earth rule over (all) created beings: through fervent salutation to Aša do I praise them as well. Never from this (time) forth shall I stand up against the lands of the Mazda-worshipper for the purpose of damaging (it) or for laying (it) waste, nor (shall I entertain) designs (against) either the limb or the life (of a Mazda-worshipper).

4. *vī . . . . mruyē*—Lit. I speak against, hence I abjure or renounce completely or utterly. The trans. of Kan., "I do not accept", is distinctly weak. "Away do I abjure" Mills. Barth. (Wb. 1196) notes that it is used with the acc. (here *sarəm*).

*dārvāiš*—3/3. The ins. in this connection is doubtless due to the separative *vī*.

*ayāiš*—Cf. Yas. IX. 8.

*avaghīš\** (*āp*. v.l. *hūš*, Geld. and Kan.)—3/3. The form in *-īš* is special to Av. only (Reich. § 350). "Without goodness or purity". If we accept the other reading it would be 2/3 used for 3/3.

\* This is the reading given by Barth.

*anarātāiš* (ān.)—अनरतः; opposed to Aša (the Holy Law), (Barth., Wb. 120). The variant *arata* for *aša* is used here. The same *arata* is used in such names as *Artaxšaôra* (*Artakshir*, Artaxerxes). Kan. trans. "not going in the straight path"; Mills says, "utterly bereft of good".

*akō-dābiš* (ān.)—Evil-knowing (Kan.): from *aka* (evil) +  $\sqrt{dā}$  (Pers. دانشن *dānishtan*, to know). Mills trans. "deceitful in their wickedness", from *aka* +  $\sqrt{dab}$  (दभ्) to deceive. Barth. (Wb. 47) takes it as "creators of evil" ( $\sqrt{dā}$ , धा, to create) as opposed to *vajhudāh* (in Yas. I. 19; XVI. 9 and other places).

*sarəm*—Authority (Kan.); shelter and headship (Mills); Barth. (Wb. 1564) takes it as f. and trans. "companionship" from  $\sqrt{sar}$  (to consort with), and compares Grk. *κεραίω* to mix with (Skt. श्राविन is also cognate). Nair. says सारमिन्. Kanga's trans. seems correct because the word *asārō* (without a ruler) occurs in Ven. I. 19\* (cf. Pers. سردار *sardar*, leader).

*hatām* refers to all created beings.

*draoijštāiš*—Most lying (Kan.); Mills trans. "most like the demon (*druj*)". Cf. Pers. دروغ *(durūgh)*, a lie, untruth.

*paošišštāiš*—3/3 sup. of  $\times pauš$  ( $\sqrt{pu}$ —पू). Most filthy (Kan.); most loathsome (Mills). Nair. says चुड़नम.

*daēvavaḥbiš* (ān.)—Those belonging to *daēvas*, i.e. the *daēvayasna* people.

*yātuš*—3/3 though the form is indistinguishable from 2/3. This is due to the peculiarity of the Av. script, *-biš*, *-viš*, *-uš*.†

*kahyā-ciṭ*—कस्यचित् in the sense of "whatsoever". Note sg.

*ātarāiš*—Enemies. Cf. Yas. LX. 4. Kan. trans. "any wicked man"; Mills says: "every existing being of that sort"; Reich. (A.R., Gloss.) says: "pernicious (i.e. inimical) to", with gen.

*ciθrāiš*—Kan. says 3/3 used adv. and trans. "openly". Mills says: "and their seed". Barth. (Wb. 586) says: "in all their manifestations".

Geld. has a stop after *ciθrāiš*, Kan. puts a full-stop, Reich. has a semi-colon.

*zī* is emphatic (cf. verse 1).

*anā*—3/1 of dem. pron. Kan. (Kh. A. b. M., p. 416, ftn.) says it is used adv. and trans. "in the same way". Reich. and Barth. (Wb. 1247) take *anā* . . . *yaθanā* to mean "each and every", "all . . . whatsoever".‡

*yaθanā* (v.l. *yaθa nā*)—Kan. takes "in the manner which". Kan. trans. the last line of this verse: "I abjure (their) authority in the same way as I do (that of) the *druj*", which seems rather tautological.

\* Barth., Wb. 210.

† Barth., Wb. 1284; also Reich., § 364, note 6.

‡ See also Barth.,

Wb. 113, and Reich. § 397.

*rāxšayaṇtā* (v.l. °*tām*)—3/1 fut. pt. √*rañj*. Tormenting (Kan.). Cf. رنجیدن (*ranjidan*) to give pain; probably Skt. रञ्ज् is cognate. Barth. (Wb. 1528-29) is not sure of the exact sense but says it is somewhat like *ghīṣyaṇt*. Nair. says वेदक. Mills trans. "the iniquitous of every kind (*yaθanā*) who act as *Rākshasas* act".

5. *aθā aθā*—Kan. takes this as if it were *yaθā yaθā* and hence he takes verse 5 and 6 together; Barth. trans. "thus and so"; Mills also trans. the same way.

*cōit*—Kan. says, "earnestly", "by way of injunction" (तात्कीदयी); Mills trans. "in very deed". Cf. *ākās-cōit* above Yas. LX. 11.

*aḍaxšayaētā*—3/1 aor. atm. √*daḥs* to instruct (दिष्ट). The initial *a* may be the augment or may be the upasarga *ā* (आ). Cf. आदेश उपदेश etc. Kan. reads *aḍā xšayaētā*\* and trans. "ordered (√*xš*) at that time" (*aḍā*, अथ). But in a ftn. Kh. A. b. M., p. 417, he gives the reading of Geld. and gives the correct trans. Mills too notes the two readings (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 249, ftn. 1).

*farəṇaēšū* (v.l. °*fraš*)—Questionings, प्रश्नेषु. This refers to the "conversations" between Ahura and Z. through which the religion was revealed. Cf. Yas. LVII. 24, above.

*hanjamanaēšū*—Meetings, संशमनेषु lit. coming together. Pers. انجمن (*anjuman*), assembly. This is an *ahura*-word, the corresponding *daēva*-word is *handvarena* (Yt. XI. 4.)†

*yāiš*—3/3. The ins. implies "during which".

*apərəsaētəm*—3/2 impf. atm. \*अपश्येताम्. Note the augment and also atm. The sense here is "conversed", i.e. "questioned (and answered)".

6. *vyāmrvītā*—3/1 impft. atm. Note the retention of the augment.

*aθā*<sup>18</sup>—Thus, in the same way.

*anāiš*—See above *anā*, verse 4. This is of course 3/3.

*yā*—See above Yas. LX. 1.

7. *yāvaranā*† (v.l. *yā-varanā*, Geld., in both the places)—1/3 f. Kan. trans. "of what faith". "To that religious sanctity to which the waters appertain" (Mills). √*var* (वृ), to choose; cf. *varənē* above verse 2.

*gāuš huda* (v.l. °*ḍā*)—Well-created cattle (Kan.); kine of blessed gift (Mills). Cf. Yas. XXVI. 4 above. Barth. (Wb. 1825) considers that the meaning is the same in both the passages.

*gām*—Kan. trans. "earth".

*as*—3/1 impf. par. (Gāθ) √*ah*. The form *ās* is also found (Jack., A.G.,

\* Geld. notes this v.l.

† Barth., Wb. 1728.

‡ Kan.

§ 532). The form is from \**āst*, the final *t* being lost on account of the *s* (Jack., A. G., § 192, note).

*yavaranā*—1/2.

*Ferašaoštrā-Jāmāspā*—This is a *देवनागरी* (Whit. § 1255), both words being du. Geld. takes them separately. They were two brothers, who are almost always mentioned together. They were both high in the favour of king Vištāspa and were among the most devoted disciples of Z. They were of the family of Hvōgva\* (*Hvōva*, Pah. *Habub*), who was probably their father.† From the same family comes Hvōvī, the wife of Z. *Ferašaoštra* (also spelt *Fraša*°) was probably the elder as his name always occurs first. They are said in later books to be sons-in-law of the Prophet and in one place (Yt. XXIV. 11) Z. addresses him as *puθra* (Modi, p. 136). But in another place where *Ferašaoštra* is mentioned (Yas. LI. 17)‡ he is taken by some scholars to have been the father of Hvōvī and hence the Prophet's fathers-in-law|| (Barth., Wb. 1007). His two sons, Hušyaoθna and Xvādaēna, are mentioned in Yt. XIII. 104. The name *Ferašaoštra* is of uncertain origin, probably it means "he whose light is renewed". *Jāmāspa*¶ (Grk. *Ζαμάσπης*) the younger brother—the more famous person because he was the Prime Minister of Vištāspa. In the *Gāθ*. he is mentioned as *Dā-Jāmāspa*, i.e. the Wise *Jāmāspa* (Yas. XLVI. 17). In later works he has the epithet *حکیم* (*Hakim*)—the Wise—added to his name. In Yt. V. 68 he is mentioned as a warrior fighting with the enemies of Vištāspa and the new religion. The traditional legend says that on being initiated into the new faith, *Jāmāspa* was given a consecrated flower by Z., on smelling which he became full of wisdom. His name is attached to a book on astrological predictions called *Jāmāspī* (West, Pah. Lit., in the *Grundriss*, § 66). The origin of the name is doubtful. The *-aspa* indicates probably a prince. The word *jāmā* occurs only once in Yt. II. 7, which Dar. trans. "scornful"; Kan. in his Dict. says, "brotherliness", but in Kh. A. b. M., p. 208, trans. "generation". Barth. (Wb. 607) merely quotes the passage without any comment or trans. *Jāmāspa* had a son *Haṇhaurvāh* (Yt. XIII. 104). Another *Jāmāspa* is also mentioned in Yt. XIII. 127, but he is distinguished as *aparazāta* or "the Younger".\*\*

*haiθyāvarazām*—Working truly. Mills says "doing deeds of real significance".

*tavarenā-cā* -*fkauēšā-cā*—The *tā-* is to be compounded with both.

*mazdayasnō ahmī*—Kan. takes these words with the next verse. This is no doubt due to the fact that the last two verses (8-9) are repeated each time the girdle is tied on and they are prefaced with the words *jasā-mē*

\* The meaning is probably "possessing five cows" (सुग्गु). See Barth., Wb. 1857. † In Yt. XIII. 103 they are mentioned as sons of *Hvōva*. ‡ Sel. XXXVI, Part 2. || This seeming discrepancy has been well explained in Hillimoria's book on Z. also quoted with reference to *I. agaoštra* (Yas. XXVI. 5 above). ¶ Barth., Wb. 607; Modi, pp. 81f. \*\* For farther details see Jack., Z.

*avanhe, Mazda!*\* *mazdayasnō ahmī* (come to my aid, O Mazda! I am a Mazda-worshipper).

8. *āstūtas-cā*—Praiser (Kan.). He takes it as an agent noun *āstūtar*.† Barth. (Wb. 1594) takes it as pft. pt. of  $\sqrt{stu} + \bar{a}$  (to dedicate oneself to, to vow) governing the acc. "A devotee" would perhaps be the nearest equivalent.

*fravarətas-cā*—Agent noun  $\sqrt{var} + frā$ . Believer (Kan.).

*āstuyē*—1/1 pres. atm.  $\sqrt{stu} + \bar{a}$ . I dedicate myself to, or I devote myself to. The word when used as a noun means the Yasna verses from XII. 8 to XIII. 8 inclusive.

9. *fraspāyaoχədrām* (āπ)—Quarrel removing (Kan.); from  $\sqrt{spā} + frā$  (to throw down)‡ and *yaoχədra* (quarrel, from  $\sqrt{yuj}$ , to join). Mills reads *°yaoχədrām* and says it lit. means speech without hesitation and trans. "which has no faltering utterance". Barth. (Wb.\* 1003) agrees with Kan. Nair. says पस्तिव्यवर्तिनाद्.

*niḍāsnaithiṣəm* (āπ. v.l. °śīm)—Which lowers the weapons (Kan.), i.e. peace giving. Mills gives exactly the opposite sense and trans., "which wields the falling halbert", and in support quotes Gāh. Ahu., XXXI, 18,|| where Z. asks his people to smite down evil-doers with the halbert (*snai-thiṣā*). But though Z. preached smiting down the evil-doer, he stands for peace within the fold, and among all the creation of the Good Spirit. Nair. says, संन्यस्तसज्ज. Barth. agrees (Wb. 1082).

*χ<sup>v</sup>aētvadaθām*—Self-devoted (Kan.); the faith of kindred marriage (Mills). Barth. (Wb. 1860) agrees with Mills and derives from *χ<sup>v</sup>aētu*, consanguinity and *vadaθa*, marriage. The marriage between first cousins was expressly allowed among the Iranians as opposed to the Hindu Aryans who denounced such marriages. Kan. in his Dict. (p. 138) gives the meaning of *χ<sup>v</sup>aētu* as "relationship" and he gives three meanings to the word *χ<sup>v</sup>aētvadaθa* (he derives *-daθa* from  $\sqrt{dā}$  to give): (1) self-devoted; (2) patriotic, devoted to the welfare of his native country; and he quotes Vis. III. 3 and Gāh IV. 8; ¶ and (3) domesticated or tame (Ven. VIII. 13).

*būšyeiṇtinām-cā*—6/3 f. fut. pt.  $\sqrt{bū}$  (भू) to be. Of those that shall be hereafter.

*mazištā-cā*—1/1 f. sup. of *maz* (मज्) great. मजिष्ठ.

*āstūitiš-*—Praise (Kan.); worship (Mills); vow (Barth., Wb. 340).

\* This is repeated thrice.

† Dict., p. 65.

‡ Barth., Wb. 1016; cf. Yt. X. 43.

|| Sel. XXXIV, Part 2. ¶ *yədnəm . . . χ<sup>v</sup>aētvadaθəm . . . yəzamaide*, Gāh. IV. 8.



VI.

## VI.

### Kēm-nā Mazdā—Vendīdād VIII. 20-21.

1. (20)\* kēm<sup>1</sup>-nā<sup>2</sup>, Mazdā<sup>3</sup>, mavaitē<sup>4</sup> pāyūm<sup>5</sup> dadāt<sup>6</sup>  
 hyat<sup>7</sup> mā<sup>8</sup> dregvā<sup>9</sup> dīdarešatā<sup>10</sup> aēnaṇhē<sup>11</sup> ?  
 anyēm<sup>12</sup> θwahmāt<sup>13</sup> Āθras<sup>14</sup>-cā<sup>15</sup> Mananhas<sup>16</sup>-cā<sup>17</sup>,  
 yayā<sup>18</sup> šyaoθanāi<sup>19</sup> ašem<sup>20</sup> θraoštā<sup>21</sup> Ahurā<sup>22</sup> ?  
 tām<sup>23</sup> mōi<sup>24</sup> dāstvām<sup>25</sup> daēnayāi<sup>26</sup> frāvaocā<sup>27</sup>.

kē<sup>1</sup> vereθrem<sup>2</sup>-jā<sup>3</sup> θwā<sup>4</sup> pōi<sup>5</sup> sēnghā<sup>6</sup> yōi<sup>7</sup> hēnti<sup>8</sup> ?  
 ciθrā<sup>9</sup> mōi<sup>10</sup> dām<sup>11</sup> ahūm<sup>12</sup>-biš<sup>13</sup>-ratūm<sup>14</sup>† ciādī<sup>15</sup>;  
 aṭ<sup>16</sup> hōi<sup>17</sup> Vohū<sup>18</sup> Serošō<sup>19</sup> janṭū<sup>20</sup> Mananḥā<sup>21</sup>,  
 Mazdā<sup>22</sup>, ahmāi<sup>23</sup> yahmāi<sup>24</sup> vašī<sup>25</sup> kahmāi-ciṭ<sup>26</sup>

2. (21) pāta<sup>1</sup>-nō<sup>2</sup> tbišyantaṭ<sup>3</sup> pairi<sup>4</sup> Mazdās<sup>5</sup>-ca<sup>6</sup> Armaiti<sup>7</sup>-ca<sup>8</sup> spēntas<sup>9</sup>-  
 ca<sup>10</sup>. nase<sup>11</sup> daēvi<sup>12</sup> druḥs<sup>13</sup>, nase<sup>14</sup> daēvō<sup>15</sup>-ciθre<sup>16</sup>, nase<sup>17</sup> daēvō<sup>18</sup>-  
 frakerāte<sup>19</sup>, nase<sup>20</sup> daēvo<sup>21</sup>-fradāite<sup>22</sup> †: apa<sup>23</sup> druḥs<sup>24</sup> nase<sup>25</sup>, apa<sup>26</sup>  
 druḥs<sup>27</sup> dvāra<sup>28</sup>, apa<sup>29</sup> druḥs<sup>30</sup> vinase<sup>31</sup>, apāxeθre<sup>32</sup> apa<sup>33</sup>-nasyehe<sup>34</sup>;  
 mā<sup>35</sup> merēncaini<sup>36</sup>|| gaōθā<sup>37</sup> astvaiti<sup>38</sup> ašahe<sup>39</sup>.

3. ¶ nemas<sup>1</sup>-cā<sup>2</sup> yā<sup>3</sup> Ārmaiteš<sup>4</sup> īxā<sup>5</sup>-cā<sup>6</sup>.

\* The first five lines of this verse (20) are from Yas. XLVI. 7, the last four from Yas. XLIV 16. (Sel. XVI). † Geld. has *ahūmbi ratūm*; Kan. reads *ahūmbi* (Kh. A. b. M., p. 6.). ‡ Geld. reads *ōi*. || *māmerēncā*, Geld. ¶ From Yas. XLIX. 10. This line is not found in the Ven.

## VI.

### Kēm-nā Mazdā—Vendīdād VIII. 20-21.

1. (20) What<sup>1</sup> man<sup>2</sup>, O Mazdā<sup>3</sup>, shall grant<sup>4</sup> protection<sup>5</sup> unto such-as-me<sup>6</sup> (a weak mortal) when<sup>7</sup> the infidel<sup>9</sup> makes-himself-ready<sup>10</sup> against-me<sup>8</sup> to overpower<sup>11</sup> (me) ? (Who can it be) other<sup>12</sup> than-Thy<sup>13</sup> Fire<sup>14</sup> and<sup>15</sup> (Thy) Mind<sup>16\*</sup>, through whose<sup>18</sup> activities<sup>19</sup> (Thy) Law-of-Righteousness<sup>20†</sup> is-fulfilled<sup>21</sup> O Ahura<sup>22</sup> ? This<sup>23</sup> knowledge<sup>25</sup> declare-clearly<sup>27</sup> unto me<sup>24</sup> for (helping me to spread) the Faith.<sup>26</sup>

Who<sup>1</sup> (shall be) the smiter<sup>3-of-foes</sup> by-the-help-of-Thy<sup>4</sup> Words<sup>5†</sup> which<sup>7</sup> are<sup>8</sup> a shield<sup>6</sup> ? Clearly<sup>9</sup> unto me<sup>10</sup> a wise<sup>11</sup> soul<sup>12</sup>-healing<sup>13</sup>-leader<sup>14</sup> do Thou reveal<sup>15</sup>; then<sup>16</sup>, unto him<sup>17</sup> let Sraoša<sup>19</sup> approach<sup>20</sup> with Good<sup>18</sup>-Mind<sup>21</sup>; unto him<sup>23</sup>, O Mazda<sup>22</sup>, whosoever<sup>28||</sup> (he be), whom<sup>24||</sup> Thou dost love<sup>25</sup>.

2. (21) Protect<sup>1</sup> us<sup>2</sup> all-around<sup>4</sup> from (our) foes<sup>3</sup>, (O Ye) both<sup>6¶</sup> Mazā<sup>5</sup> and<sup>8</sup> holy<sup>9</sup> Ārmaiti<sup>7</sup> as well<sup>10</sup>. Perish<sup>11</sup>, (thou), devilish<sup>12</sup> Druj<sup>13</sup>; perish<sup>14</sup> (thou) devil's<sup>15</sup>-spawn<sup>16</sup>; perish<sup>17</sup> (thou), devil<sup>18</sup>-fashioned<sup>19</sup>; perish<sup>20</sup> (thou), follower-of-devil's<sup>21</sup>-laws<sup>22</sup>: utterly<sup>23</sup> perish<sup>25</sup>, O Druj<sup>24</sup>; utterly<sup>26</sup> disappear<sup>28\*\*\*</sup>, O Druj<sup>27</sup>; utterly<sup>29</sup> (and) entirely-perish<sup>31</sup>, O Druj<sup>30</sup>: in-the-North<sup>32</sup> vanish<sup>34</sup> (thou) utterly<sup>33</sup>: mayest thou not<sup>35</sup> destroy<sup>36</sup> the corporeal<sup>38</sup> creation<sup>37</sup> of the Divine-Law<sup>38</sup>.††

3. And<sup>2</sup> salutations<sup>1</sup> (unto Ye both)—namely<sup>3,††</sup> Holy-Reverence<sup>4</sup> and<sup>6</sup> Holy-Zeal<sup>5</sup>.

\* i.e., Vohumanō. *ed*<sup>17</sup> is omitted here in translating. † Aša. ‡ Orig. sg. || Orig. dat., doubtless by case-attraction. ¶ Lit., "and". \*\* Lit., "run away"; I have tried to bring out the force of the *apa* repeated so often in the original by repeating the word *utterly* in English instead. †† Aša. ‡‡ Lit. "which".

## NOTES.

Kanga: Khordeh Avesta bā Maenī (5th ed.), pp. 5-7.

Mills: S.B.E., XXXI, p. 138 (verse 1, lines 1-5); pp. 118-19 (verse 1, lines 6-9); and p. 167 (verse 3).

Darmesteter: S.B.E., IV, p. 101.

Haug: Essays on the Religion of the Parsis; p. 164; p. 160; for the two parts of verse 1.

Moulton: Early Zoroastrianism, pp. 373-74, p. 369 and p. 382 (divided as with Mills).

Bartholomae: Die Gatha's des Avesta, p. 77, p. 63 and p. 96 (as with Mills).

Besides these I have made use of an unpublished translation of the Gāthas by Mr. Khodabakhsh Edalji Punegar, M.A.; I have to record here my grateful thanks to the learned author for allowing me the use of his typewritten ms. and for permission to quote from it.

There is also a very suggestive article on this hymn in the Gujarātī monthly *Cherāg* for July and Aug. 1915 (Vol. XVI, pp. 368ff., and pp. 428ff.). Certain allowances have however to be there made on account of the writer's peculiar view-point.

This hymn—*Kem-nā Mazdā*—so called because of its opening words occurs almost complete (all except the single line of verse 3) in the eighth chapter of the Vendidad. And, it is except perhaps the three famous hymns, *Ahuna Vairya*, *Aṣem Vohu* and *Yejhe hātām*,\* the most often repeated of the Avestan hymns. It is repeated by every Zoroastrian while untying the girdle, and it is an integral part of the *Sraoša Bāz* which forms the prelude to all ceremonies. It is given in Ven. VIII, where funeral ceremonies are described. It is enjoined there (14-19) that if a dead body has been carried over a highway, no person may pass along the same road before it is purified again. And this could be done among other things by repeating the *Ahuna Vairya* and the *Kem-nā-Mazdā*. As a matter of fact, this last alternative is always followed now. Some distance behind the bier and heading the procession of mourners are two priests repeating these sacred *mantras*.

This hymn is made up of four parts put together for the purpose of the funeral ceremony and though of various linguistic strata they are well chosen and there is little feeling of patch-work about it, especially when we remember the original purpose for which this hymn was made up.

The first portion consists of lines 1-5 of verse 1. This is from Gāθ. Spən (Yas. XLVI. 7). It there constitutes the appeal of Zaraθuštra to

\* See VII. a, b and c.

Ahura, when he found himself opposed very violently by the enemies of his faith. In the darkest hour his faith in the Law of Mazda—as represented by the Divine Fire and the Divine Mind—remains unshaken, and finds noble expression in these five lines. These formulate as it were the last refuge of the Zoroastrian in times of danger and difficulty and thus these lines are just those wanted to soothe the wounds left by death.

The second part (lines 6-9 of verse 1) is also from the same Gāthā (Yas. XLIV. 16)\*. The original context shows that here also Z. is in doubt and difficulty, through which the "Words of Ahura" would serve as our strong shield and protection. A wise Teacher is needed—Sraoṣa—who is ever ready to help all whom Mazda loves.

These two making up the first verse (verse 20 in the Ven.) are linguistically among the earliest of the Avesta texts. What follows, verse 2 (verse 21 in Ven.), is in prose and is certainly of the same age as the rest of the Ven. It was specially\* composed to fit in with the ceremony for which it was intended. The contrast, linguistically, is great, but even greater is the contrast in the ideas—for this second verse is "semi-magical" in import. It represents the later religion where the pure unalloyed Mazda-worship of Z. was overlaid with the idea of driving forth the demon which is the main theme of the whole Vendidad.† The dead-body having passed along has rendered the road impure and infested with "the brood of demons" and these are to be ordered away before animals or human beings, or Fire or consecrated Baresman can pass along the same road.‡

The fourth part (verse 3) is not found in the Ven., but in the Sraoṣa Bāz. It is just one line taken from Gāth. Spēn. (Yas. XLIX. 10). As it stands by itself it is difficult to have the construction clear because in the original context it is closely connected with the two lines preceding. This line is also repeated thrice at the Tower of Silence after the dead body has been put inside it.

1. *kām-nā* (v.l. *kāmnā*, Barth. and Kan.)—Kan. thinks it is for *kas-nā* (1/1). Others take it as it stands to be 2/1. The *nā* is enc. 1/1 of *nar* (𐬨, ἀνῆρ), and when used with the pron. *ka* gets an indef. sense. (Barth., Wb. 424). The same idea is found in the same Gāth. Spēn. (Yas. L. 1.)—*kē mā nā|| θrātā vistō anyō Aṣāt θwat-cā Mazdā Ahurā* (Who is for me a protector except Aṣa and thyself, O Ahura Mazda?). Nair. trans. this line: के मच्छ|| मच्छानिन् मदीयेयश्च पतारो दत्ताः evidently taking *kē* as plu. Dar. says: "What protector hast thou given unto me, O Mazda?" Mlt. (E. Z., p. 273) says, "Whom, O Mazda, can one appoint as protector for one like me?" Pun. says, "What protection can a man give to my-follower?"

*mavaitē*—4/1 of *mavant*. Kan. trans. "to me and to my-followers" (see Skt. of Nair. above). Haug strangely says "my property". Mills trans.

\* The first line is omitted, see Sel. XVI. † The name itself is Vīdatvādāt. ‡ Ven. VIII. 15; see Sel. XXXI, Part 2. || Geld. notes v.l. *kāmnā* which he also notes for our passage, Yas. XLVI. 7. ¶ Does he read *kāmanā* (noted by Geld.) or *kā mā nā* as in Yas. L. 1?

simply "me" and adds (ftn. 4) that *xšmāvato*, *θwāvās* and *mavaiē* may be trans. simply as "of you", "thou" and "to me". Barth. (Wb. 1141) says, "one like me" (i.e. a mere mortal).

*pāyūm*—Kan. and Pun. trans. "protection"; the rest say "protector".\*

*dadāt*—3/1 sub. pres. par. See Jack., A.G., § 543.

*hyaṭ*—when; Nair. says यत्; Barth. (Wb. 1253) says it is an adv. denoting time. The *h* has no etymological value and two mss. even read *yyaṭ*.†

*dragvā*—1/1 of °*vanṭ*. This seems to be the Gāḇ. form of *drvanṭ*. Nair. says दुर्गतिः (बलोगः) which is explained further as दार्ढ्यः बलकः.

*dīdarəṣatā*—3/1 impf. atm. inten. of √*darəṣ* (दृश्) to dare, to threaten.‡ But in the trans. Kan. seems to take it from √*darəṣ* (दृश्) to see, for he trans. "glares at me" (ढोडा ककडावे). Mills also|| suggests, "has set his eye on me for vengeance", although he trans. "that wicked one still held me for his hate". Barth. (Wb. 690) takes it as desid. of √*dar* (धृ) to hold used with *dat*, inf. and trans. "makes himself ready to overcome me". Note the reflexive sense of atm. Haug says "endeavour to hurt me"; Dar. trans., "while the hate of the wicked encompasses me".

*āēnəyḥē*—Dat. inf. (Barth., Wb. 21) used with acc. (*mā*) and sometimes with the gen. For injuring, for overpowering; यनवे.

*θwahmāt*—5/1. Barth. takes it as an adj. "belonging to Thee", "Thine"; Nair. says लतः; Kan. and Mills say "other than Thee"; others take like Barth., Mlt. adds¶ "'Thy Thought' is the same as 'Good' or 'Best Thought'".

*Āθras-cā*—Barth. regards this as the ancient abl. form found often in G.A. (see Jack., A. G., § 222). This is the Divine Fire within the man, which helps him in his moments of trouble. Kan. takes this as 6/1 and trans. the line thus "who else, but Thee (would be the protector) of (our) Fire (i.e. our hearth and home) and of (our) mind". Nair. says: अन्त्यालतोष्ट्रेष्वयस्यनाभः\*\* (अन्त्याल्लोष्ट्रेषु किलमे रत्नां कुपय). Dar. (p. 101, ftn. 2) thinks that the fire refers to the ordeal by fire.

*Manəyhas-cā* of course refers to *Vohu-manō*, the first of the Holy Immortals.

*yayā*—6/2: i.e. of the Fire and of the (Good-) mind.

*šyaοθanāiš*—3/3. Kan. trans. "through the actions of which two" and explains (Kh. A. b. M., p. 5., ftn.) that these are "acts which lead to family happiness and to peace of mind". Haug. trans., "through whose

\* BV. has पश्य mostly in this sense, Grass., Wb. 806. † Geld. notes this v.l., see also Barth., Wb. 1227. ‡ Kan., Dict., p. 160. || S.B.E., XXXI, p. 138, ftn. 5. ¶ E.Z., p. 374, ftn. 1.

\*\* अवस्यन् is *Vohuman*, see Nair.'s trans. of *Paθā Ahu Vairyo*, Sel. VIIa.

operation." "By deeds performed in which (i.e. Ātar and Vohumanō)" Mills.

*aḡm*—1/1 n.

*braoštā*—3/1 sub. aor. atm.  $\sqrt{\theta ru}$ , to ripen, to come to fruition (Barth., Wb. 801). Kan. trans. "increases". Mills says, "Thy righteous rule is saved and nurtured". Haug says, "Thou hast created rightful existence." Dar. says, "Through whose work I keep on the world of righteousness", translating literally Nair.'s Skt. rendering: *वैषां कर्मभिः पुण्यं पातयामि स्वामिन्* (किल कार्यं पुण्यं करोमि).

*mōi*—4/1. मे (मद्युष्ट).

*dāstvāṃ*—2/1f. Teaching (Barth., Wb. 745). Kan. trans. "knowledge" (ज्ञान) and explains (Kh. A. b. M., p. 5, ftn.) that this means the knowledge that God is the only protector and refuge. Mod. Pers. *دستور* (*dastur*, older *dastavar*) means bearer of knowledge, hence a teacher of religion. In P. Guj. the word *दस्तुर* is used to indicate the highest order of priest. From  $\sqrt{dah}$  to teach. Cf. Grk. *δέδαι* (from  $\delta\acute{\alpha}\omega$ , to learn). The word *dahma* is cognate (see Yas. XXVI. 9) and probably also *dām* (line 7 of this verse). Other scholars have taken the word differently. Mills trans., "that spiritual power (vouchsafing) me".\* He also adds (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 138, ftn. 6): "One might be tempted to read *taṭ mōi dās tvom* etc.; 'That granting (*dās*) me do Thou speak forth for the Faith'". Dar. trans. this line: "Reveal to me Thy Religion as Thy Rule" (i.e., he explains, "one must take religion as one's rule"). Haug has, "Tell me the power necessary for upholding that religion". Pun. says, "that direction for the religion". Nair. renders the word by *बादेष्ट*.

*daēnayāi*—4/1. For religion (Kan.). Barth. and Mlt.† take it in the sense of *daēnā* the second principle in the constitution of man†; and Mlt. trans. "for my very Self". Mills takes (rather needlessly) the last two words as an independent clause and trans. "for the (holy) Faith (its truths) declare". The writer in the *Cherāg* trans. "for (the spreading of) the Faith"||.

*frāvaočā*—2/1 imp. aor.  $\sqrt{vac}$  + *frā*, to instruct.

*kā*—1/1. Who. This is a G.A. form (Kan., A.G., § 228). Nair. takes it as 1/3, के.

*varəθram-jā*—1/1. Smiter of the foe (Kan.); who smites with victory (Mills); Pun. says, "Fiend-smiter"; Nair. has के विजयिन्नाया जन्तारः.

*pōi*—This word occurs only here and in Yas. XLIV. 15. Barth. (Wb. 898) takes it as inf. from  $\sqrt{pā}$ , to protect. Kan. (Dict., p. 334) takes it as 1/1 and trans. "protecting". Mills takes it as "in the protection of".

\* He takes the last two words of this line as a separate clause. † Mlt. practically retranslates Barth. into English with a few occasional changes. ‡ See above, Yas. XXVI. 4. || Vol. XVI, p. 377 (July 1915).

*sāghā*—Teaching;  $\sqrt{sāh}$  (शस्) to teach. Nair. says तव रक्षया शिक्षायाः । (किञ्च ते शिक्षया ते दीन्या\* पापकर्मिणो निज्जन्ति रक्षां च दहतेः के कुर्वन्ति)॥ Barth. takes it as 3/1 and trans. the line: "Who is he, who victorious would protect by thy doctrine all that are". Mills trans.: "Who smites with victory in the protection (of all) that are". Dar. says: "Who is the victorious who will protect Thy teaching", which leaves off *yōi haṇtī* which Pun. renders, "that are extant"†. Haug's rendering is quite unintelligible; he has for the two lines *kā . . . cīzdi* the following (p. 160): "Who killed the hostile demons of different shapes, to enable me to become acquainted with the rules established for the course of the two lives (physical and spiritual)?" Kan. says: "Who (shall be) the smiter of the energy by the help of Thy Words, which are protecting."

*ciθrā*—Kan. and Mills take it adv., चित्स् clearly; Nair. says प्रकटतया Barth. (Wb. 586) takes it as 3/1 and trans. "by a vision". But in this unusual sense this is the only example quoted by Barth.

*dām* (see *dāstvām* above)—2/1 adj. Wise (Kan.); having power (Mills). Cf. the name *Dā-Jāmāspa*. Barth. (Wb. 745) takes this as an inj. from  $\sqrt{dā}$  (धा) to set up, to fix. But this is the only instance quoted. ‡

*ahūm-biś-ratūm*—This is the reading favoured by Barth. (Wb. 285). Geld. reads *ahūmbiś ratūm*; but he says that only one MS. reads thus. Among the v.l. noted by Geld. one reads *ahū-biś* and all the rest read *ahūm-biś*. Kan. reads in this hymn (Kh. A. b. M., p. 5.) *ahūbiś*, but in G. b. M. (p. 126) he reads *ahūmbiś*. The word *ahūmbiś* occurs in three places only—all in the *Gāθ*: *Gāθ. Ahu.*, XXXI. 19†; *Gāθ. Ušt.*, XLIV. 2|| and XLIV 16||. In all the three places Nair. says सुवनद्वयेऽपि. Kan. also gives the same sense to the word in all three places, taking it as 3/3 of *ayhu* (*ahu*—अह) life or world.¶ But in the trans. he says, "for both the worlds (du.)".\*\* Mills says, "for the worlds (plu.)" (Yas. XXXI. 19), "for both the worlds" (Yas. XLIV. 2) and "for both lives" Yas. XLIV. 16). Haug in this passage says, "both the lives"; Dar. also trans. similarly. Barth. (loc. cit.) takes it as a comp. of *ahu* (life) +  $\sqrt{biś}$  (भिष्) to heal, and trans. "healer of life". Barth. also proposes to read *ratum* joined on to this making a sort of comp. The opposite is *ahum-marancō* (Yas. IX. 31.). The opposite idea is also found in the phrase *bānayan ahūm* (Yas. XXX. 16).††

*cīzdi*—2/1 imp. pres. par. Kan. trans. "reveal" ( $\sqrt{ciś}$ ). Dar. says: "make it clear that I am the guide of both the worlds". Barth. trans.: "By vision assure me how to set up the judge that heals the world". And Mlt. adds (E.Z., p. 369, ftn.): "This seems to be Z. himself—he is praying for a vision that may openly confirm his designation as a prophet". I am, however, inclined to think that the *Ratu* meant here is *Sraoša*.

\* *daśna*, faith. † For the rest he agrees with Dar. ‡ Sel. XXXIV, Part 2. || Sel. XVI, ¶ Dict., p. 18; also A.G., § 109 (p. 88). \*\* i.e. to gain merit here and hereafter. †† Sel. XXXIV, Part 2.



*hōi*—4/1 (Gaθ.). An enclitic form of the 3rd pers. pron. sometimes used reflexively (Jack., A.G., § 395 and § 416). It refers, when reflexive, to the subject of the same sentence in which it is found (Reich. § 598). Here however it may be taken as an ordinary pron., 3rd pers., referring to *yahmāi* in the next line. See also Kan., A.G., § 212.

*Vohū* . . . *Manayhā*—3/1 in the sense of “accompanied by”.

*Sraoṣō*—The G.A. form of *Sraoṣa*. Dar. remarks (S.B.E., IV, p. 101, ftn. 4); “This stanza with in the original *Gāṭās* refers to the human incarnation of *Sraoṣa*,\* the victorious protector of the Prophet and his religion, is applied here to *Sraoṣa* as a protector of the soul in its passage from this world to the other”.

*vaṣi*—2/1 pers. par.  $\sqrt{vaś}$  to wish, to love (Kan.) To whom thou thus desired (Barth., Wb. 1382). Whomsoever thou pleasest (Dar.).

2. This portion is omitted in Nair.’s version of the *Sraoṣa Bāz*.

*pāta* . . . *pairi*—Completely protect, lit., protect all round. Cf. परि + पा in Ved.†

*ibiṣyantaṭ*—5/1 pres. pt.

*nase*—2/1 imp. pres. par.  $\sqrt{nas}$  (नश्) to perish. The root is of the 4th class (दिवादि) and hence the form was orig. \**nasya* written as *nase* (Barth., Wb. 1055-6).

*daēvō-frakarṣte*—From  $\sqrt{kareṣ}$  (करि) + *frā*, to sow‡. More probably it is from  $\sqrt{karət}$  (कर) + *frā* (cf. *fraca karentaṭ*, Yas. IX. 8.). Seed of the Demon (Kan.); creation of the fiend (Dar.).

*daēvō-fradāiṭe* (𐬔𐬀).—Follower of the *daēva* law or ritual. World of fiend (Dar.). Barth. regards this as practically synonymous with the previous word (Wb. 672.). *dāta* means “law”, cf. *dātō-rāzō* above, Yas. IX. 10 and the name *Vidaēvadāta*, which means lit. the laws against the *daēvas*.

*apa* . . . *nase*—Perish utterly.

*dvāra*— $\sqrt{dvar}$  to run. (a *daēva*-word).

*apāxḍre*—7/1 (construed with *naēme*, direction, understood). North. Kan. gives the derivation as from *apa* and *aṣtar* (star) (Pers. اختر *akhtar*, star), i.e., as he explains, away from the stars of the Zodiac (the path of the sun)||. Barth. (Wb. 79-80) regards this as wrong and suggests that the real meaning is “backward”. The word *frata* means South as well as front. The North is regarded as the region of evil and the South is the region of the Holy Spirits—exactly the reverse of the Hindu ideas.¶ Probably the reason is what has been suggested by an anonymous writer,\*\* that

\* Yas. XXVI. 5, (Sel. III above) note on *Karōiḥ Vistūspahe*. † Grass., Wb. 798. ‡ Kan., Dict., p. 249 and p. 130. || Dict., p. 35: ¶ But *Hara-barzaiti* is in the North. \*\* Cherag, Vol. XVI, p. 439 (Aug. 1915).

during the day the Zoroastrians turn their faces to the Sun while praying and hence naturally the North would be left out and thus would acquire a sinister reputation. Very likely this is partially true but the original cause of this reversal of ideas is the same as has led to the significations of the words *Ahura* (अहुर) and *Daēva* (देव) to be reversed. It may be noted in passing that the dead body is never laid out with the head to the north.

*nasyeha*—2/1 pres. atm. used as sub. (Kan., Dict., p. 288).

*mərəncainiš* (v.l. *māmaren°*, Geld.)—Barth. (Wb. 1145) takes it as 3/1 (?) impf. par.  $\sqrt{\text{marək}}$  (*mahrk*) (the root is of the seventh class, *बघादि*), cf. *mahrkai* (Yas. IX. 8), and *ahūm-mərəncō* (Yas. IX. 31). Kan. takes it as an adj. 1/3 f., and trans. “fit to be destroyed”, construing with *būyāt* (भूयात्) understood. Jack. (A. G., § 565, note) says, “peculiar is 2/1 impf. par. *mərəncainiš* weak nasalised root with added *an* (nn)”. The *i* is as in *अप्रवीत्*, *आषीत्*, etc. The form is an augmentless impf. with a sub. force. (Jack., A. G., § 445 (2), Whit. § 563). About the so-called root *mərənc* Jack. (A. G., § 563) says that it has “practically become stereotyped as a root according to the *a*-conjugation\* by transfer, hence the thematic forms”. Barth. (loc. cit.) also states that it is a word used in the sense of destroying or killing one of the *ahura*-creation. He cites only one case (Ven. XIX. 6† where Z. is asked by Agro-Mainyuš not to destroy the evil-creation) where it is not used in the *ahura*-sense.

3. *Ārmaitiš*—See above, Yas. LX. 5.

*Īzā-cā*—Religious zeal (Barth., Wb. 378); from  $\sqrt{\text{āz}}$  (अज्). In Yas. LI. 1‡ Geld. takes it as “sweetened milk”. Kan. trans. “prosperity”; takes Nair. (in Yas. XLIX. 10) says *इदि*: This line is taken (out of its context) from Yas. XLIX, 10, and is without a verb. Hence Kan. takes *nəmas-cā* to mean “salutations be unto” (Kh. A. b. M., p. 7) here, though in the orig. context (G. b. M., p. 188) he trans. the line, “prayer from which come Reverence and Prosperity”. Nair. says: नमो या स्यादरमदा॥ मङ्गलरा (किल या संपूर्णमानसा शुद्धी मङ्गलरा तस्यै नमः) ॥ The orig. passage may be quoted here in order to fully appreciate the value of this line:

*tae-ca¶* *Mazdā θwahmī ādām nipāyghē*

*manō vohū urunas-cā ašāunām,*

*nəmas-cā yā Ārmaitiš Īzā-cā.*

This may be rendered :

“And these, O Mazda, shall I offer into Thy safe-keeping, good mind, and the souls of the holy and (their) prayers, also\*\* (their) piety and (their) zeal.

\* The *आदि*-class. † Sel. XIV. Probably this *ahura* word is used out of regard to Z who is the person addressed. Or more probably the Devil being the speaker would use the best word for his own creatures. ‡ Sel. XXXVI, Part 2. ¶ Spenta Ārmaiti. ¶ So Kan., Geld. has *taē-cā*. \*\* Lit. “(that) which (is)”, *yā*.

On the whole it is better to take this line independently as Kan. has done. *Armaiti* is invoked here because she is the chosen one of the Zoroastrian (see Yas. LX, 5, Sel. V). And when after the dead body has been put inside the Tower of Silence and the bearers have come out the whole assembly of mourners assembled chant aloud three times this line—thus leaving as it were the dead to the care of their chosen guardian angel *Armaiti*.





## VII.

## VII.

### The Three Prayers—Yaθā, Aṣəm and Yeğhē hātām.

#### (a) Yaθā ahū vairyō\*

yaθā<sup>1</sup> ahū<sup>2</sup> vairyō<sup>3</sup> aθā<sup>4</sup> ratus<sup>5</sup> aṣāt<sup>6</sup>-ciṭ<sup>7</sup> hacā<sup>8</sup>,  
 Vaṇhōuš<sup>9</sup> dazdā<sup>10</sup> Manaṇhō<sup>11</sup> šyaoθananēm<sup>12</sup> aṇhōuš<sup>13</sup> Mazdāi<sup>14</sup>  
 xšaθrem-cā<sup>15</sup> Ahurāi<sup>16</sup> ā<sup>17</sup> yīm<sup>18</sup> drigubyō<sup>19</sup> dadat<sup>20</sup> vāstārem<sup>21</sup>.

#### (b) Aṣəm vohū†

aṣəm<sup>1</sup> vohū<sup>2</sup> vahištəm<sup>3</sup> astī<sup>4</sup>, uštā<sup>5</sup> astī<sup>6</sup>,  
 uštā<sup>7</sup> ahmāi<sup>8</sup> hyat<sup>9</sup> aṣāi<sup>10</sup> vahištāi<sup>11</sup> aṣəm<sup>12</sup>.

#### (c) Yeğhē hātām‡.

yeğhē<sup>1</sup> hātām<sup>2</sup> āat<sup>3</sup> yesnō<sup>4</sup> paiti<sup>5</sup> vaṇhō<sup>6</sup>  
 Mazdā<sup>7</sup> Ahurō<sup>8</sup> vaōθā<sup>9</sup> aṣ-āṭ<sup>10</sup> hacā<sup>11</sup>,  
 yāṇhām<sup>12</sup>-cā<sup>13</sup>, tās<sup>14</sup>-cā<sup>15</sup>, tās<sup>16</sup>-ca<sup>17</sup>, yazamaide<sup>18</sup>.

\* Also found in Yas. XXXI, 13. † Also found in Yas. XXVII, 14. ‡ Also found in Yas. IV, 26. See Yas. LVII, 4 for full notes and explanation.

## VII.

### The Three Prayers—*Yaθā*, *Aṣəm* and *Yeñhē hātām*.

#### (a) *Yaθā ahu vairyō*.

Just as<sup>1</sup> a Ruler<sup>2</sup> (is) all-powerful<sup>3</sup> (among men) so<sup>4</sup> (too is) the Spiritual-Teacher<sup>5</sup> even<sup>7</sup> by-reason-of<sup>8</sup> (his) Righteousness<sup>6</sup>; the gifts<sup>10</sup> of Good<sup>9</sup> Mind<sup>11</sup> (are) for\* (those) working<sup>12</sup> for the Lord<sup>14</sup> of Life<sup>13</sup>; and-the-strength<sup>15</sup> of Ahura<sup>16</sup> (is given) unto<sup>17</sup> (him) who<sup>18</sup> unto (his) poor<sup>19</sup> (brothers) giveth<sup>20</sup> help<sup>21</sup>.

#### (b) *Aṣəm vohū*.

Aṣa<sup>1</sup> is<sup>4</sup> the highest<sup>3</sup> good<sup>2</sup>, (it alone) is<sup>6</sup> (true) happiness<sup>5</sup>; happiness<sup>7</sup> (is) for him<sup>8</sup> (alone) who<sup>9</sup> (is) righteous<sup>12</sup> for (the sake of) the highest<sup>11</sup> Aṣa<sup>10</sup>.

#### (c) *Yeñhē hātām*.

(That man) among† those-that-are<sup>2</sup>, of whom<sup>1</sup> Mazda<sup>7</sup> Ahura<sup>8</sup> through<sup>11</sup> (his) Righteousness<sup>10</sup> knoweth<sup>9</sup> (that he) verily<sup>3</sup> (is) better<sup>6</sup> as-regards<sup>5</sup> acts-of-worship<sup>4</sup>—(and those women) too<sup>13</sup> of whom<sup>12</sup> (Mazda Ahura) knoweth likewise—(all such), both<sup>15</sup>‡ men<sup>10</sup> and women<sup>14</sup>, (do) we revere<sup>13</sup>.

---

\* Lit. "of" (gen.).

† Lit. "of" (gen.).

‡ Lit. "and".

## NOTES.

These three prayers are the most famous of the ancient verses of Iran. They are regarded by all tradition to be specially holy and efficacious and they have had the unique distinction of having an Avesta commentary for each. These latter are Yas. XIX, XX and XXI which together make up what is called the *Bayān Yašt*.<sup>\*</sup> All the three pieces are of a great antiquity though linguistically the *Yaθā* (or *Ahuna Vairya*) is probably the oldest—being practically equal to the oldest *Gāθās*.<sup>†</sup> The meaning of these verses has not been properly settled, each scholar takes it in his own way. The words are quite easy but the construction is exceedingly obscure and involved.

VII. a. *Yaθā ahū vairyō*.

The *Yaθā ahū vairyō* is regarded as the most ancient and also the most sacred of the three. Kan. (Kh. A. h. M., p. 2, ftn.) regards this as pre-Zarathuštra in age. Yas. XIX is a commentary on the *Yaθā* and throughout the Av. we have praises of this prayer. Ven. XIX. 2.† mentions that Z. used this *mantra* to fight the evil demons. Yas. IX (14-15) also mentions Z. using this *mantra* for a similar purpose. The *Sraoša Yašt Hādoxt* (Yt. XI. 3) says: *Ahunō Vairyō vacām varəθrajjəstəmō* (*Ahuna Vairya* is the most victorious among the Words). *Sraoša* uses this *mantra* as his victorious weapon (Yas. LVII. 22). The *Hād*. (Yt. XXI 4) says: "The pronouncing of that formula the *Ahuna Vairya* increases strength and victory in one's soul and piety"||. The Parsis have got such a traditional faith in its efficacy that in times of difficulty and trouble they always exclaim *यथा नारी मदद्* (*Yaθā, thy help!*). There is the traditional saying that if this *mantra* is chanted in the proper metre with the proper intonation, and with a full understanding of the sense, the "merit" resulting is equal to the recitation of the whole Avesta. Even the most illiterate Zoroastrians who do not know any other prayers are expected to know the *Yaθā*.

Like the other two, the construction of this prayer is very obscure and there have been practically as many translations of this as there have been translators. I venture to give my own version for what it is worth. The prayer being the most sacred should in my opinion be translated so as to embody some fundamental truths of life. The religion of Z. is a religion of the *Karma-mārga*, which teaches us to reach the goal of life through action, and I have tried in my translation to indicate that the *Ahuna-Vairya* gives us the essentials of a life lived for the good of humanity and of service to mankind.¶ The *mantra* consists of 21 words (corresponding to the 21 *Nasks* of the original Avesta texts\*\*) which are arranged in three lines of the same measure as the *Gāθ*. Ahu.†† The first line lays down the general

\* See below Sel. VIII.

† The name *Ahunacaiti* is given to the first *Gāθ* because it is in the

metre of the *Ahuna Vairya*. ‡ Sel. XIV. || Dar., S.B.E., XXIII., p. 311. ¶ The whole idea is elaborated by me in a Gujarāṭī article in the *Cherāg*, Vol. XX (1919), pp. 616 ff. Here of course I can give the mere outlines. \*\* See Introduction. † Each line of 7 + 9 (sometimes 8) syllables.



proposition which is true for all religions that the Spiritual Teacher (*Ratu*) is all-powerful just as any earthly Prince (*Ahu*) may well be in the material world. The reason for the power of the *Ratu* is his *Aša*. This *Aša* (अन in Veda) represents the Divine Will in manifestation, the Law of God, which is the Law of Purity or Righteousness (in the sense in which Jesus spoke of it). There is no one word (except the word अन as understood in the Veda\*) which would exactly give the same idea. The Skt. अश comes very near it in connotation but even that is not exact. This *Aša* is what Tennyson speaks of as

“One God, one law, one element,

“And one far-off divine event,

“To which the whole moves” (*In Memoriam*).

After making this statement the second line tells us that the gifts of Good Mind are for those who are working for the Lord. That is, those who try to help God's work in the world by doing good deeds and helping the cause of human progress, they shall have their understanding strengthened so as to grasp better and better the higher truths of the spiritual life (the gifts of *Vohu-Manō*). Thus they would be able to progress and would have better powers wherewith to serve the Lord.

And the third line says that besides the “gifts of Good-mind” the “Strength of the Lord” too shall come to such people who give help unto their poor brothers. Poverty here is to be understood not merely as poverty of worldly goods but as poverty of moral and spiritual things as well. The duty of the Mazda worshipper is to give what he has got from the Lord unto those that possess less of those gifts. Wisdom and strength are given unto him that he may serve those of his brothers who are lower than himself in any respect and thus help them onwards in their progress. And the more a man serves the Lord by serving the least of His creatures, the greater the measure in which he receives of the “Strength of the Lord”.

Such, to my mind, is the meaning of the holiest Zoroastrian prayer. It contains the essence of the teaching of our faith—service of humanity. Hence it is that in every ceremony we are required to repeat this *mantra* several times. And this *mantra* is the last earthly sound that a Zoroastrian should hear on earth for it is always repeated in the ear of the dying person by the nearest relative.† This *mantra* to the Zoroastrian is the key to happiness both here and hereafter, for it has been said: *Ahunem-Vairim tanūm† pāiti*, “Ahuna Vairya saves the man”.||

*ahu . . . ratu*—For the distinction between these two see above Yas. LVII. 2: Kan. (Kh. A. b. M., p. 3, ftn.) explains these as “the Lord who looks after worldly affairs” and “the Lord who looks after religious affairs”. In his trans. he renders *ahu* by king and *ratu* by *Dasturān-Dastur*, i.e. the Supreme Priest.

\* See Grass., Wb. 286ff.; cf. RV., VII. 65, 3; VIII. 12, 3; etc.  
for this purpose.

† Some use the *Asm rohu* for

‡ Lit., “the body”, *tanu* used in the sense of “self” as in Ved. and in Gāg.

|| *Sraoša Bāz*.

*dazdā* (दा.)—Kan. takes this as 1/3 of the p.pt. pass. n. of  $\sqrt{dā}$  (दा) to give and trans. “gifts”.\* This explanation seems quite correct. The Ved. form would be दत्ता. Jack., A.G. §§ 600 and 606 mentions the form *dazdē* which is 3/2 pft. atm.  $\sqrt{dā}$  (दा) to create. This form would be phonetically equal to दत्ते; the regular Skt. form is of course दधाते. Barth. (Wb. 702) takes this as 1/1 of an agent noun *dazdar* and trans. “he who offers”. Har. takes similarly.

*šyaōθananām*—6/3 pres. pt. atm. The “root” here seems to be *šyu* a variant of  $\sqrt{šyu}$ , यु, to strive. Generally the word *šyaōθana* is used for “work” or “action”; cf. Yas. IX. 31. and Kəm-nā Mazdā. The corresponding word श्योतन is found used participially in RV., X. 50. 4., मुषो नृश्योतो विश्वसिन्धवे (In every combat casting down heroes upon the ground). Kan. in his trans. (Kh. A. b. M., p. 3) says “workers” ( काम करनार ).

*anḥēuš*—6/1. The word here seems to denote all creation.

*Ahurāi*—4/1 used for 6/1. Cf. *staotā-cā Ahurāi yesnyā-cā Vapḥēuš Mananḥō* (Praises of Ahura and worship of Good-Mind), Yas. XXX. 1.† See Reich. § 468.

*drigubyō*—4/3. Cf. Yas. LVII. 10.

*vāstārēm*—2/1—Kan. trans. “protector”. He translates the clause “Who makes himself protector of the poor”. The use of par. (*dadaṭ*) for the atm. (reflexive) sense would certainly be unusual for G.A. which is the language of this piece. Barth. (Wb. 1413) trans. “shepherd” (in the Biblical sense), or one who looks after the nurture and safety of the flock entrusted to his care. The word occurs only in one other place Yas. XXIX. 1.,† *nōit mōi vāstā xšmāṭ anyō*, which Barth. renders “there is no other shepherd for me than Thou”. I take *dadaṭ* from  $\sqrt{dā}$  (दा) to give|| and I propose to render in both passages the word *vāstar* by “help” or “succour”. Nair. says सहाय्यं पालनं च but in Yas. XXIX. 1. he trans. पालयिता.

The various trans. may now be enumerated :

1. Nair : यथा स्नामिनः कामः (किञ्च यथा अङ्गमेज्जदाभिलाषः ) एवं आदेशः पुण्यात् यथान्दस्त्रावित् (किञ्च यत्किञ्चित् कार्ये पुण्यं तस्य तथा आदेशः कर्तुं)॥ यथा अङ्गमेज्जस्य\*\* रोचते नान्यथा किं विप्रियात् पुण्यात्)††

उत्तमस्य दाते[दाति]मैनसः‡‡ कर्मणा अंतर्भुवने अङ्गमेज्जस्य । (किञ्च ते पुण्यप्रसादं उत्तमं मनः उत्तमं मनः इति गवद्भुजः अमशास्यंतो ददाति तेभ्यो ये [सन्ति] अंतर्लक्षिन् कर्मणि स्नामिन्ने च यत् अङ्गमेज्जस्य रोचते ) ॥

\* Dict., p. 248 and A.G. § 558. † Sel. XXXIV, Part 2. ‡ Sel. XV. || Kan. and Barth. take it from  $\sqrt{dā}$  (दा).

¶ Nair. uses this in the sense of कर्तव्यः or कर्तुम् युज्यते—Bharucha.

\*\* For दाव. †† “May perhaps mean ‘even though the meritorious deed may be howsoever unique, it is of no use unless ordained by Ahuramazda’”, Bharucha. ‡‡ दाति is पारितोषिक or दानम्.

राष्ट्रं च अहमैजदां नष्ट (किं तेन अहमैजदः स्वतनोः राजा हनो भवति) यः दुर्वर्त्तमानो-  
ददति पालनाम् (किं दुर्वर्त्तमानां सदायं पालनं च करोति) ॥

2. Haug trans. (p. 141): "Just as a heavenly Lord is to be chosen so is an earthly master for the sake of righteousness (to be) the giver of good thoughts and of the actions of life towards Mazda, and the dominion is for the Lord (Ahura) whom he (Mazda) has given as a protector of the poor".

3. Sp. trans.: "As is the will of the Lord so (is he) the ruler out of purity. From Vohumanō (will one receive) gifts for the works (which one does) in the world for Mazda. And the kingdom (we give) to Ahura when we afford succour to the poor".\*

The rendering of the last line is an echo of the Paternoster, "Thy Kingdom come".

4. The Pah. version is: "As is the will of the living spirit, so should be the pastor, owing to whatsoever are the duties and good works of righteousness. Whose is the gift of good thought which among living spirits is the gift of Ahura Mazda. The sovereignty is for Ahura Mazda, who gives necessities to the poor".\*

5. Dar. (S.B.E., XXIII, p. 23.): "The will of the Lord is the law of holiness, the riches of Vohumanō shall be given to him who works in this world for Mazda and wields according to the will of Ahura the power he gave to him to relieve the poor".\*

6. Har.: "As there is a Supreme Lord, so there is a religious chief for the propagation of religion by means of purity. He is also the executor of good thoughts and of the works of the Mazdayasnian Law. The powerful kingdom belongs to Ahura, and he has made the spiritual chief the protector of the poor".\*

7. Kan.: "Just as a ruler of this world (a king) acts according to his will, so does the chief of spiritual matters (the High Priest) by means of righteousness act according to his own will. The reward of Vohumanō is for those working for the Lord of the world. He who constitutes himself the protector of the poor accepts the sovereign rule (as it were) for Ahura".

8. Khan Bahadur N. D. Khandalavala (late Judge, Poona) read a paper in 1885 at Bombay on "*Primitive Mazdayasnyan Teachings as contained in the Honvar† and Ashem, the two celebrated Prayer-Stanzas of the Parsees*". In this paper he makes a very bold attempt at an original trans. of the *Ahura-Vairya* and he has quoted *in extenso* all the available trans. of this verse with his criticisms thereon. He tries to base his trans. on the opening verses of Yas. XIX. But his trans. is too startlingly original to be acceptable to scholars generally. Some of the words are given senses absolutely unique.‡ His trans. runs as follows:—

\* This is quoted by Khandalavala (see below), pp. 10f.

† The Pah. form of *Ahura-Vairya*.

‡ To my mind the chief value of the paper lies in the elucidation of the ancient teaching of Mazda-worship.

As<sup>1</sup> is the Will<sup>3</sup> (or Law) of the Eternal-Existence<sup>2</sup> so<sup>4</sup> (its) Energy<sup>5</sup> solely<sup>7</sup> through<sup>8</sup> the Harmony<sup>6</sup> (Aṣa) of the Perfect<sup>9</sup> Mind<sup>11</sup> (is) the producer<sup>10</sup> of the manifestations<sup>12</sup> of the universe<sup>13</sup> (and) (is) to<sup>17</sup> Ahura<sup>16</sup> Mazda<sup>14</sup> (the Living Wise One) the Power<sup>15</sup> which<sup>18</sup> gives<sup>20</sup> sustenance<sup>21</sup> to the revolving-systems<sup>19</sup>.

9. The latest translator is Barth. (Reich. and Mlt. merely repeat his version). Mlt. (E.Z., pp. 160f.) gives the rendering of Barth. in a free Eng. trans.\* “Even as he (Zaraṭuštra) is the Lord for us to choose, so is he the Judge according to the Right, he that bringeth the life-works of Good Thought unto Mazda and (so) the dominion unto Ahura even he whom they made shepherd for the poor”. Mlt. calls this a “profoundly difficult text”.

10. Mlt. also quotes Geld.’s version (E.Z., p. 161, ftn. 2):

“Even as he is the chosen Ruler so also is he (appointed) by Aṣa (himself) as Instructor of the World in the works of Good-Mind for Mazda. And the Kingdom belongs to Ahura, who for the needy has appointed a Shepherd”.

Mlt. also calls the *Ahuna Vairya* “the great creed of Parsism, composed after Zaraṭuštra’s day, but at so early a date that the key to its meaning seems to have been mostly lost”.

11. The most startling of all is the versions of Bishop Meurin:† “Supplication to thee, O prince of Angels (Ahura, St. Michael), Rightful Ruler of men, Leader on sanctity’s path. Thou that directs to God the good thoughts and actions of mankind, raising them up as a gift towards the Father on high. Yea, the dominion above and beneath is Ahura’s (St. Michael’s); the All-Wise made him victor renowned over the dragons of hell”.

Evidently the *drigu* is the dragons!!

The trans. of Mills is quoted at the beginning of Yas. XIX. (Sel. VIII, Introductory remarks).

I venture to give my own version for what it is worth. As can be seen it is made up by taking bits from various versions; but I think I have made a continuous sense out of it which hangs well together. The passage is indeed very obscure and we cannot quite say what the true version may be. Each writer (including myself) reads into it his own preconceived notions as can be easily seen.

#### VII. b. Aṣəm vohū.

This is among the most frequently used of the Avestan prayers. Geld. in *Grund.* (Vol. II, p. 27) thinks that it is prose, but in the Av. text (Vol.

\* The orig. of Barth. runs thus:—Wie der beste Oberherr, so der (beste) Richter ist er (nämlich Zaraṭuštra) gemäss dem heiligen Recht, der des guten Sines Lebenswerke dem Mazdaḥ zubringt, und (so) die Obergewalt dem Ahura, er (Zaraṭuštra), den sie den Armen als Hirten bestellt haben. (Quoted by Mlt. E.Z., p. 161, ftn. 2.) † Quoted by Khandalavala, op. cit., p. 10.

II, p. 35) he prints it as three lines of verse, the lines ending at the 4th, 8th and 12th words. Kan. prints it similarly as metrical. Though most frequently used in the ritual it is certainly not of the same sanctity as the *Yaśā ahū vairyō* (VII. a). There is a very fine article on its inner significance in *Cherāg* (Vol. XVI, 1915, p. 632). There are frequent references to this prayer in the Av. itself by the name of *Aṣem* or *Aṣa-Vahišta*. (Barth., Wb 238-39). The second section of the *Bayān Yašt* (Yas. XX) is an ancient Av. commentary on this verse.\*

*Aṣa* is the keynote of all Zarathuštra's teaching. It is the Law of Ahura, the plan of Ahura about the development and the progress of the Universe. For mankind, it means living the life in accordance with the Divine Law—for that is the only way in which the mortal may help the progress of the world. It implies a life led according to the laws of Truth and Purity—everything in fact which is implied by the word *अस्मै*. "Righteousness" is the word which is nearest in sense to *Aṣa*—"righteousness" in the sense in which Jesus has used it. The earlier writers, e.g. Haug, saw in this word only the outer ritual purity and sacrificial observances. But this sense came to attach to the word only in later ages when the spirit of *Aṣa* was lost and only the letter was left.

This verse has no word intrinsically difficult but every scholar practically has given a different rendering of it.

1. The Skt. of Nair. runs as follows:—

पुण्यं सद्बुद्धिं उत्कृष्टतरा (अत्युत्तमा) अस्मि। (सद्बुद्धिरेवैव पुण्यस्य उत्तमा। यतो या काचित् शुभा सद्बुद्धिर्वाप्स्यते [वाञ्छयते] सा सर्वापि पुण्यमध्ये अस्ति)।

शोभनमस्ति (किं तत्पुण्यमेव शोभनमस्ति)। शोभनः (किं सः शोभनः सुंदरवर्षो) स्त्री।

यः पुण्यं प्रचारयिता (किं यः पुण्यं प्रवर्तमानं करोति) अतः परः पुण्यः (किं स्वयं च अत्युत्कृष्ट-पुण्यकारी) ॥ †

2. Mills (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 266):

"A blessing is Righteousness (called) the best; there is weal, there is weal to this man when the Right (helps) the Righteousness best (when the pious man serves it in truth)".

He adds in a ftn. (loc. cit.)—"When *Aṣa* is for *Aṣa Vahišta*".

3. Dar. (S.B.E., XXIII, p. 22):

"Holiness is the best of all good. Well it is for it, well is it for that holiness which is perfection of holiness".

4. Haug (p. 14 1, ftn. 2):

"Righteousness is the best good, a blessing it is; a blessing be to that which is righteousness towards *Aṣa Vahišta* (perfect righteousness)".

\* Rel. VIII 6; Hād. I (Yt. XXI) also recites the praises of the *Aṣem*.

† Bharucha remarks:

"the Skt. trans. is correct as far as the Pahl. rendering goes. But the same cannot be said of it as regards the original Av."

He adds; “‘Righteousness’ here and elsewhere where it translates *aṣṣam* means ‘what is right or meritorious’ in a ritualistic or materialistic sense, and does not necessarily imply holiness any more than the Sanskrit *पुण्यम्* does”. This view, characteristically of the Western scholar, is not accurate at all. The earlier sense is in fact more spiritual than the later use of the word. This is true not only of the word *aṣṣa* but others also.\*

5. Kan. trans. (Kh. A. b. M., p. 1):

“Righteousness is the best good† (and it) is happiness. Happiness is to him who is righteous for the sake of (i.e. in the matter of) the best righteousness”.

It may be noted that in Guj. we use the word *अशोभ* for the Av. *Aṣṣa*. There is no mistake about the sense because we have the inherited tradition of millenniums as regards this word.

6. Barth. translates|| in a very ingenious manner and Reich. (A.R., pp. 173-4) and Mlt. (E.R.P., p. 116) merely retranslate him. Mlt. trans. thus:

“Right is the best good: it falls by desire, it falls by desire to our portion, even our right to that which is the best right”.

The word *uṣṭā* is taken as an adv. to mean “according to our desire”. Curiously enough he takes *ahmāi* as 4/3 of *azam* (Reich. § 402) which is found but very rarely in G.A. (Jack., A.G., § 389; Kan., A.G., § 210, fn. 3).¶ It is however better to take *ahmāi* as 4/1 of the dem. pron. (*अस्मै*) especially as we have a similar Gāṇ. passage, *uṣṭā ahmāi yahmāi uṣṭā kahmāi-ciṭ* (Gaṇ. Uṣṭ., Yas. XLIII. 1)\*\*. Barth. regards this as a play on the various senses of *aṣṣa*; *aṣṣa* “the best doing” and *aṣṣa* “the best reward” (Reich., loc. cit.). Mlt. explains (E.R.P., p. 116): “Primarily denoting abstract Right, the divine order, it (*Aṣṣa*) comes to mean (2) right-doing, action in accord with Right, and (3) a man’s rights as determined by that divine order . . . . He who lives rightly gets his rights in the end, and therefore

‘because right is right to follow right

‘Were wisdom in the scorn of consequence.’

This note by Mlt. is a remarkable instance of how some Western scholars read European ideas and even words into Eastern scriptures. The third sense of “right” given by Mlt. most assuredly cannot be read into *aṣṣa*. The temptation of word-play has been too strong for Dr. Moulton!

\* See, e.g., the word *savajhō* Yas. LX. 1. † Kan. uses the Pers. word *نعمت* (*n’emat*) which means a blessing or a good thing granted by God. ‡ Often spelt *अशोभ*. ¶ Wb. 233: “*Aṣṣa* ist das beste Gut; nach Wunsch wird es, nach Wunsch uns zu teil das *Aṣṣa* für das beste *Aṣṣa*.” ¶ This corresponds to *अस्मै* (4/3 of *अहम्*) in Veda, see Grass. Wb. 184. \*\* See last verse of Yas. XLIV, Sel. XVI.

7. One more trans., that of Sp., may be added though it is not literal for the last phrase. He says :

“Purity is the best good : happiness, happiness is to him, namely to the best pure in Purity.”

Khandalavala in his paper mentioned above quotes the following from Hād. I: “Whoever recites the Aḡem with believing enquiry in his mind, praises me who am Ahura Mazda; he praises the water, he praises the trees, he praises all good created by Mazda that is of rightful origin”.\*

Khandalavala adds :†

“The fourth name of Ahura Mazda in the Ahura Mazda Yt. (Yt. I. 7) is *Aḡa Vahišta*, which represents the sublime order and harmony of all this ‘Changing World of changeless Law’. *Aḡa Vahišta* or *Ardibesht* is in later Zoroastrianism looked upon as the angel presiding over celestial Fire, who ministers to order and the preservation of things. *Aḡa Vahišta* however is the second *Ameshaspend* after *Vohu-Manō*, the Perfect Mind, and literally means the Highest Harmony. The meaning of the above quoted passage (from Hād. I, 4) now becomes clear. He who recites the Aḡem with an inquiring mind praises the Divine Power and all the creation, in which he could see exquisite order prevailing everywhere, for *Aḡa* literally means order and regular motion, and the word bears a very wide significance as we carry the idea suggested by it from the physical into the moral and intellectual worlds.

“The Aḡem formula teaches that Purity (meaning Righteousness) is the highest Good; that it is a blessing only to those who practise it for its own sake, having but one aim—to try to reach up to the highest Righteousness—to the most perfect Harmony of thought, word and deed. In short, the Aḡem teaches that virtue is to be practised for its own sake irrespective of the personal benefits it may bring to a man.”

VII c. *Yeḡhe hātām*.

This has been treated very fully in Yas. LVII. 4. (Sel. II., pp. 66–67, above).

\* See S.B.E., XXIII, p. 311. The whole of this fragment, called Yt. XXI by Dar, is in praise of the Aḡem Vohū. † Op. cit., pp. 18–19.





## VIII.

## VIII.

### Baγān Yašt—Yasna XIX-XXI.

**XIX. 1. § + peresaṭ<sup>1</sup> Zaraθuštrō<sup>2</sup> Ahurēm<sup>3</sup> (Mazdām)<sup>4</sup> :**

+ “ Ahurā<sup>5</sup> (Mazda)<sup>6</sup> mainyō<sup>7</sup>  
spēništa<sup>8</sup>,

+ dātare<sup>9</sup> gaēθanām<sup>10</sup> astvaiti-  
nām<sup>11</sup>, (aṣāum)<sup>12</sup> ;

+ ciṭ<sup>13</sup> avat<sup>14</sup> vacō<sup>15</sup> ās<sup>16</sup> Ahurā<sup>17</sup>  
(Mazda)<sup>18</sup> \*

+ yaṭ<sup>19</sup> mē<sup>20</sup> frāvaocō<sup>21</sup> †

**2. § “ para<sup>1</sup> asmēm<sup>2</sup>, para<sup>3</sup> āpem<sup>4</sup>,**

para<sup>5</sup> zām<sup>6</sup>, (para<sup>7</sup> gām<sup>8</sup>), para<sup>9</sup>  
urvarām<sup>10</sup>,

+ para<sup>11</sup> Ātrem<sup>12</sup> Ahurahe<sup>13</sup>  
(Mazdā)<sup>14</sup> puθrem<sup>15</sup>,

para<sup>16</sup> narem<sup>17</sup> aṣavanem<sup>18</sup>

+ para<sup>19</sup> daēvāiš<sup>20</sup>-ca<sup>21</sup> χrafstrāiš<sup>22</sup>  
(mašyāiš<sup>23</sup>-ca<sup>24</sup>), †

+ para<sup>25</sup> vīspem<sup>26</sup> ahūm<sup>27</sup>  
astvanem<sup>28</sup>,

para<sup>29</sup> vīspa<sup>30</sup> vohū<sup>31</sup> (mazdaḍāta<sup>32</sup>)  
aṣa-ciθra<sup>33</sup> ”.

**3. āat<sup>1</sup> mraot<sup>2</sup> Ahurō<sup>3</sup> Mazdā<sup>4</sup> :**

“ baγa<sup>5</sup> aēša<sup>6</sup> ās<sup>7</sup> Ahunahe<sup>8</sup> Vairyehe<sup>9</sup>, | + Spitama<sup>10</sup> (Zaraθuštra<sup>11</sup>),  
yaṭ<sup>12</sup> tē<sup>13</sup> frāvaocem<sup>14</sup>.

**4. “ para<sup>1</sup> asmēm<sup>2</sup> . . . (mazdaḍāta<sup>32</sup>) aṣa-ciθra<sup>33</sup> ”. †**

**5. hā<sup>1</sup>-mē<sup>2</sup> baγa<sup>3</sup> Ahunahe<sup>4</sup> Vairyehe<sup>5</sup>, Spitama<sup>6</sup> Zaraθuštra<sup>7</sup>, anapyūχ-  
da<sup>8</sup> anapišūta<sup>9</sup> srāvayamna<sup>10</sup> satem<sup>11</sup> paiti<sup>12</sup> anyaeṣṣām<sup>13</sup> raθwām<sup>14</sup>  
gāθanām<sup>15</sup> anapyūχdanām<sup>16</sup> anapišūtanām<sup>17</sup> srāvayamnanām<sup>18</sup> :  
āat<sup>19</sup> aipyūχda<sup>20</sup> aipišūta<sup>21</sup> srāvayamna<sup>22</sup> dasa<sup>23</sup> paiti<sup>24</sup> anyē<sup>25</sup>  
ratavō<sup>26</sup>.**

**6. yas<sup>1</sup>-ca<sup>2</sup> mē<sup>3</sup> aētahmi<sup>4</sup> aṇhvō<sup>5</sup>, yaṭ<sup>6</sup> astvaiti<sup>7</sup>, Spitama<sup>8</sup> Zaraθuštra<sup>9</sup>,  
baγām<sup>10</sup> Ahunahe<sup>11</sup> Vairyehe<sup>12</sup> marāt<sup>13</sup>, frā<sup>14</sup>-vā<sup>15</sup> marō<sup>16</sup> drenjayāt<sup>17</sup>,  
fra<sup>18</sup>-vā<sup>19</sup> drenjayō<sup>20</sup> srāvayāt<sup>21</sup>, frā<sup>22</sup>-vā<sup>23</sup> srāvayō<sup>24</sup> yazāite<sup>25</sup> ; θrīš<sup>26</sup>-  
ciṭ<sup>27</sup> tarō<sup>28</sup> peretūm<sup>29</sup>-ciṭ<sup>30</sup> hē<sup>31</sup> urvānem<sup>32</sup> vahištēm<sup>33</sup> ahūm<sup>34</sup> fra-  
pārayeni<sup>35</sup> āzem<sup>36</sup>, yō<sup>37</sup> Ahurō<sup>38</sup> Mazdā<sup>39</sup>, ā<sup>40</sup> vāhištāt<sup>41</sup> aṇhao<sup>42</sup>, ā<sup>43</sup>  
vahištāt<sup>44</sup> Aṣāt<sup>45</sup>, ā<sup>46</sup> vahištaēibyō<sup>47</sup> raocēbyō<sup>48</sup>.**

**7. yas<sup>1</sup>-ca<sup>2</sup> mē<sup>3</sup> aētahmi<sup>4</sup> aṇhvō<sup>5</sup>, yaṭ<sup>6</sup> astvaiti<sup>7</sup>, Spitama<sup>8</sup> Zaraθuštra<sup>9</sup>,  
baγām<sup>10</sup> Ahunahe<sup>11</sup> Vairyehe<sup>12</sup> drenjayō<sup>13</sup> aparaoḍayete<sup>14</sup>, yaṭ<sup>15</sup>**

\* Ahura-Mazdā, Geld.

† Geld. marks this line as “ suspicious,” i.e. a probable interpolation.

‡ As in verse 2.

## VIII.

### Barān Yašt—Yasna XIX-XXI.

XIX. 1. Zaraθuštra<sup>2</sup> asked<sup>1</sup> Ahura<sup>3</sup> Mazda<sup>4</sup>; "O Ahura<sup>5</sup> Mazda<sup>6</sup>, (Thou) Spirit<sup>7</sup> most holy<sup>8</sup>, Creator<sup>9</sup> of the corporeal<sup>11</sup> worlds<sup>10</sup>, (and) Righteous<sup>12</sup>, what<sup>13</sup> was<sup>16</sup> that<sup>14</sup> word<sup>15</sup>, O Ahura<sup>17</sup>, which<sup>18</sup>, O Mazda<sup>19</sup>, Thou didst declare<sup>21</sup> unto me<sup>20</sup> ?

2. "(The word which was) before<sup>1</sup> the heavens<sup>2</sup>, before<sup>3</sup> the waters<sup>4</sup>,\* before<sup>5</sup> the earth<sup>6</sup>, before<sup>7</sup> the creatures<sup>8</sup>†, before<sup>9</sup> the trees<sup>10</sup>, before<sup>11</sup> the Fire<sup>12</sup>, the Son<sup>15</sup> of Ahura<sup>13</sup> Mazda<sup>14</sup>, before<sup>16</sup> the holy<sup>18</sup> man<sup>17</sup>, before<sup>19</sup> the evil-ones<sup>22</sup> both<sup>21</sup>‡ daēva<sup>20</sup> and<sup>24</sup> mortal<sup>23</sup>, before<sup>25</sup> all<sup>26</sup> the corporeal<sup>28</sup> life<sup>27</sup>, before<sup>29</sup> all<sup>30</sup> the good<sup>31</sup> creation-of-Mazda<sup>32</sup>,|| the seed of Aša<sup>33</sup>."

3. Thereupon<sup>1</sup> Ahura<sup>3</sup> Mazda<sup>4</sup> said<sup>2</sup>: that<sup>6</sup> was<sup>7</sup> the hymn<sup>5</sup>\* Ahuna<sup>8</sup>. Vairya<sup>9</sup>†, O Spitama<sup>10</sup> Zaraθuštra<sup>11</sup>, which<sup>12</sup> I did declare<sup>14</sup> unto thee<sup>13</sup>.

4. "(The word which was) before<sup>1</sup> the heavens<sup>2</sup>, . . . creation-of-Mazda<sup>32</sup>, the seed of Aša<sup>33</sup>.

5. "This<sup>1</sup> hymn<sup>3</sup> of mine<sup>2</sup>, Ahuna<sup>4</sup>-Vairya<sup>5</sup>, O Spitama<sup>6</sup> Zaraθuštra<sup>7</sup>, intoned<sup>10</sup> without-interruption<sup>9</sup> (and) without-omission<sup>9</sup> (is) equal-to<sup>12</sup> a hundred<sup>11</sup> of other<sup>13</sup> holy<sup>14</sup>\* chants<sup>15</sup>† intoned<sup>12</sup> without interruption<sup>16</sup> (and) without-omission<sup>17</sup>: even<sup>19</sup>(when) intoned<sup>23</sup> with-interruption<sup>20</sup> (and) with-omission<sup>21</sup> (it is) equal-to<sup>24</sup> ten<sup>23</sup> other<sup>25</sup> holy<sup>26</sup> (chants).

6. "And<sup>2</sup> who-(soever)<sup>1</sup> in this<sup>4</sup> life<sup>5</sup>, namely<sup>6</sup>\* the corporeal<sup>7</sup>, O Spitama<sup>8</sup> Zaraθuštra<sup>9</sup>, (this) hymn<sup>10</sup> Ahuna<sup>11</sup> Vairya<sup>12</sup> of mine<sup>3</sup> doth mentally-repeat<sup>13</sup>; and<sup>15</sup>† further<sup>14</sup>, mentally-repeating<sup>16</sup> doth mutter<sup>17</sup> (it); and<sup>19</sup>† further<sup>18</sup>, muttering<sup>20</sup> doth chant-(if-aloud)<sup>21</sup>; and<sup>23</sup>† further<sup>22</sup>, chanting-(aloud)<sup>24</sup> doth praise<sup>26</sup> (it);—his<sup>31</sup> soul<sup>32</sup> shall I<sup>36</sup>, who<sup>37</sup> (am) Ahura<sup>39</sup>-Mazda<sup>38</sup>, help-to-cross<sup>35</sup> even<sup>30</sup> across<sup>28</sup> the Bridge<sup>29</sup> to the best<sup>33</sup> world<sup>34</sup>, yea<sup>27</sup> unto the three<sup>26</sup> (regions)—unto<sup>40</sup> the highest<sup>41</sup> world<sup>42</sup>, unto<sup>43</sup> Perfect<sup>44</sup>‡ Righteousness<sup>45</sup>, unto<sup>46</sup> the Light<sup>47</sup> Eternal<sup>48</sup>†.

7. "And<sup>2</sup> who-(soever)<sup>1</sup> in this<sup>4</sup> life<sup>5</sup>, namely<sup>6</sup> the corporeal<sup>7</sup>, O Spitama<sup>8</sup> Zaraθuštra<sup>9</sup>, (while) muttering<sup>13</sup> (this) hymn<sup>10</sup> Ahuna<sup>11</sup> Vairya<sup>12</sup>

Verse 2. \* Orig. sg. † I.e. "animals"; orig. sg. ‡ Lit. "and". || Lit. "created by-Mazda". Verse 3. \* Lit. "piece". † Orig. gen. Verse 5. ‡ Lit. "possessing truth."  
|| Gāthas. Verse 6. \* Lit. "which". † Lit. "or". ‡ Lit. "highest" or "best".

vā<sup>16</sup> naēmēm<sup>17</sup>, yaṭ<sup>18</sup> vā<sup>19</sup> θrišum<sup>20</sup>, yaṭ<sup>21</sup> vā<sup>22</sup> caθrušum<sup>23</sup>, yaṭ<sup>24</sup> vā<sup>25</sup> paṇtanhum<sup>26</sup>, pairi<sup>27</sup>-dim<sup>28</sup> tanava<sup>29</sup> azem<sup>30</sup>, yō<sup>31</sup> Ahurō<sup>32</sup> Mazdā<sup>33</sup>, urvānem<sup>34</sup> haca<sup>35</sup> vahištāt<sup>36</sup> aṇhaot<sup>37</sup> avavaitya<sup>38</sup> bēzas<sup>39</sup>-ca<sup>40</sup> fra-  
θas<sup>41</sup>-ca<sup>42</sup> pairi<sup>43</sup>-tanuya<sup>44</sup> yaθa<sup>45</sup> im<sup>46</sup> zā<sup>47</sup>. asti<sup>48</sup>-ca<sup>49</sup> im<sup>50</sup> zā<sup>51</sup>  
avaiti<sup>52</sup> bēzō<sup>53</sup> yavaiti<sup>54</sup> fraθas<sup>55</sup>-ciṭ<sup>56</sup>.

8. fra<sup>1</sup>-ca<sup>2</sup> aētaṭ<sup>3</sup> vacō<sup>4</sup> vaoco<sup>5</sup>, yaṭ<sup>6</sup> ahumat<sup>7</sup> yaṭ<sup>8</sup> ratumat<sup>9</sup>, para<sup>10</sup>  
avaīṇhe<sup>11</sup> aṣnō<sup>12</sup> dēṇhōit<sup>13</sup> para<sup>14</sup> āpo<sup>15</sup>, pāra<sup>16</sup> zomō<sup>17</sup>, para<sup>18</sup>  
urvarayā<sup>19</sup>, para<sup>20</sup> gōuš<sup>21</sup> caθware<sup>22</sup>-paitištānayā<sup>23</sup> dēṇhōit<sup>24</sup>,  
para<sup>25</sup> narš<sup>26</sup> aṣaonō<sup>27</sup> bipaitištānahe<sup>28</sup> zēθāt<sup>29</sup>, para<sup>30</sup> avaīṇhe<sup>31</sup>  
hū<sup>32</sup> θwarštō<sup>33</sup>-kehrpya<sup>34</sup>\*, apō<sup>35</sup> Amesānām<sup>36</sup> Spēntanām<sup>37</sup>  
dāhīm<sup>38</sup>.

9. frā<sup>1</sup>-mē<sup>2</sup> spanyā<sup>3</sup> Manivā<sup>4</sup> vavaca<sup>5</sup>, višpām<sup>6</sup> aṣaonō<sup>7</sup> stīm<sup>8</sup>, haitim<sup>9</sup>-  
ca<sup>10</sup> bavaintim<sup>11</sup>-ca<sup>12</sup> būšyeintim<sup>13</sup>-ca<sup>14</sup>, šyaoθnō-tāitya<sup>15</sup>: š y a o -  
θ e n a n ā m <sup>16</sup> a ṇ h ē u š <sup>17</sup> M a z d ā i <sup>18</sup>.

10. aētaṭ<sup>1</sup>-ca<sup>2</sup> aēšām<sup>3</sup> uḫdanām<sup>4</sup> uḫdōtemem<sup>5</sup> yāiš<sup>6</sup> yava<sup>7</sup> fra<sup>8</sup>-ca<sup>9</sup>  
vaoca<sup>10</sup>, fra<sup>11</sup>-ca<sup>12</sup> mruyō<sup>13</sup>, fra<sup>14</sup>-ca<sup>15</sup> vaḫšyete<sup>16</sup>; asti<sup>17</sup> zi<sup>18</sup> ana<sup>19</sup>  
avavay<sup>20</sup>, uḫdata<sup>21</sup> yaθa<sup>22</sup> yaṭ<sup>23</sup> diṭ<sup>24</sup> višpō<sup>25</sup> aṇhuš<sup>26</sup> astvā<sup>27</sup> āsaḫsat<sup>29</sup>  
saḫšēš<sup>29</sup> dadarānō<sup>30</sup> nī<sup>31</sup> pairi<sup>32</sup> iriθyēstat<sup>33</sup> haraite<sup>34</sup>.

11. aētaṭ<sup>1</sup>-ca<sup>2</sup> nō<sup>3</sup> vacō<sup>4</sup> frā-vaoco<sup>5</sup> saḫšaēm<sup>6</sup>-ca<sup>7</sup> hišmāirīm<sup>8</sup>-ca<sup>9</sup>  
yaθna<sup>10</sup> kahmāi-ciṭ<sup>11</sup> hātām<sup>12</sup> aēāt<sup>13</sup> haca<sup>14</sup> yaṭ<sup>15</sup> vahištāt<sup>16</sup>.

12. yaθa<sup>1</sup> frā<sup>2</sup>-iḍa<sup>3</sup> āmraot<sup>4</sup>, yaṭ<sup>5</sup> dim<sup>6</sup> ahūm<sup>7</sup>-ca<sup>8</sup> ratūm<sup>9</sup>-ca<sup>10</sup> ādadaṭ<sup>11</sup>,  
iθa<sup>12</sup> dim<sup>13</sup> para<sup>14</sup>-cinasti<sup>15</sup> yim<sup>16</sup> Ahurem<sup>17</sup> Mazdām<sup>18</sup> Manas<sup>19</sup>-  
paoiryaēibyō<sup>20</sup> dāmabyō<sup>21</sup>. y a θ a <sup>22</sup> im<sup>23</sup> višpanām<sup>24</sup> mazištem<sup>25</sup>;  
cinasti<sup>26</sup>; a θ a <sup>27</sup> ahmāi<sup>28</sup> dāmān<sup>29</sup> cinasti<sup>30</sup>.

13. yaθa<sup>1</sup> Mazdā<sup>2</sup> hujitiš<sup>3</sup> v a ṇ h ē u š <sup>4</sup> iḍa<sup>5</sup> θritim<sup>6</sup> tkaēšēm<sup>7</sup> ādren-  
jayeiti<sup>8</sup>; d a z d a <sup>9</sup> M a n a ṇ h <sup>10</sup> para<sup>11</sup> im<sup>12</sup> iḍa<sup>13</sup> Manaṇhe<sup>14</sup>  
cinasti<sup>15</sup>; † yaθa<sup>16</sup> fradaḫtārem<sup>17</sup> Manaṇhe<sup>18</sup> Manaṇhō<sup>19</sup> aēta-

\* Thus Kan.; Geld. has the words separate.  
† Manaṇhe<sup>18</sup>: I have followed Haug's arrangement.

† Geld. and Reich, have no stop here, but after

of mine<sup>3</sup> doth omit<sup>14</sup> (therefrom) whether<sup>15</sup> <sup>16</sup> a half<sup>17</sup> or<sup>18</sup> <sup>19</sup> a third<sup>20</sup>, or<sup>21</sup> <sup>22</sup> a fourth<sup>23</sup>, or<sup>24</sup> <sup>25</sup> a fifth<sup>26</sup> (portion), his<sup>23</sup>† soul<sup>34</sup> shall I<sup>30</sup>, who<sup>31</sup> (am) Ahura<sup>32</sup> Mazda<sup>33</sup>, turn<sup>29</sup> away<sup>27</sup> from<sup>35</sup> the best<sup>36</sup> world<sup>37</sup>; to as-much<sup>38</sup> (distance) as<sup>45</sup> (is) this<sup>46</sup> earth<sup>47</sup> in-length<sup>39</sup> and<sup>40</sup> in-breadth<sup>41</sup>† shall I turn<sup>44</sup> (him) away<sup>43</sup>. And<sup>49</sup> this<sup>50</sup> earth<sup>51</sup> is<sup>48</sup> even<sup>56</sup> as-much<sup>52</sup> in-length<sup>53</sup> as<sup>54</sup> in-breadth<sup>55</sup>.

8. "And<sup>2</sup> clearly<sup>1</sup> did I proclaim<sup>5</sup> this<sup>3</sup> word<sup>4</sup>, which<sup>6</sup> leadeth-to-the-Ahu<sup>7</sup> (and) which<sup>3</sup> leadeth-to-the-Ratu<sup>9</sup> (likewise), before<sup>10</sup> the creation<sup>13</sup> of yonder<sup>11</sup> heavens<sup>12</sup>, before<sup>14</sup> (the creation) of water<sup>15</sup>, before<sup>16</sup> (that) of the earth<sup>17</sup>, before<sup>18</sup> (that) of vegetation<sup>19</sup>, before<sup>20</sup> the creation<sup>24</sup> of four<sup>22</sup>-legged<sup>23</sup> animals<sup>21</sup>, before<sup>25</sup> the birth<sup>29</sup> of man<sup>26</sup> righteous<sup>27</sup> (and) erect<sup>28</sup>\*, before<sup>30</sup> the creation<sup>33</sup> of yonder<sup>31</sup> sun<sup>32</sup> into (his) shapely<sup>35</sup>†-form<sup>34</sup>, (yea) even<sup>35</sup> (before) the creation<sup>33</sup> of the Holy<sup>37</sup> Immortals<sup>38</sup>.

9. Forth<sup>1</sup> (into existence) did call<sup>5</sup> the Holier<sup>3</sup> of my<sup>2</sup> (two) spirits\* all<sup>6</sup> the creation<sup>8</sup> of holiness<sup>7</sup>, (that which is) existing<sup>4</sup>, and<sup>10</sup> (that which has) been<sup>11</sup>, and<sup>12</sup> (that which is) going-to-be<sup>13</sup> as-well<sup>14</sup>, through-(repeating)-the *Šyaoθna*<sup>15</sup>: (that is) *Šyaoθnanānām*<sup>16</sup> *ap̄hēuš*<sup>17</sup> *Mazdāi*<sup>18</sup>.

10. And<sup>2</sup> of (all) these<sup>3</sup> prayers\* this<sup>1</sup> (is) the most-efficacious<sup>5</sup>\*, which<sup>6</sup>† was ever<sup>7</sup> uttered<sup>10</sup> aloud<sup>9</sup>, or<sup>12</sup>† is (ever) spoken<sup>13</sup> aloud<sup>11</sup>, or<sup>15</sup>† shall (ever) be uttered<sup>16</sup> aloud<sup>14</sup>; for<sup>18</sup> in it<sup>19</sup>|| is<sup>17</sup> such-great<sup>20</sup> power<sup>21</sup>¶, that<sup>22</sup> if<sup>23</sup> all<sup>26</sup> the corporeal<sup>27</sup> world<sup>28</sup> should comprehend<sup>29</sup> it<sup>24</sup>, (then) comprehending<sup>29</sup> (it and) retaining (-it-) in-mind<sup>30</sup>\*\* (they) would-protect-themselves<sup>34</sup>†† completely<sup>31</sup> against<sup>32</sup> death<sup>33</sup>.

11. And<sup>2</sup> this<sup>1</sup> our<sup>3</sup> prayer\* is-uttered-aloud<sup>5</sup> (as) worthy-to-be-learn<sup>6</sup>t<sup>5</sup>, and<sup>7</sup> (as) worthy-to-be-meditated-upon<sup>8</sup> as well<sup>9</sup>, yea<sup>10</sup>, for (any one) whom-soever<sup>11</sup> among\* living<sup>12</sup> (mortals) on-account-of<sup>14</sup> the Righteousness<sup>13</sup> which<sup>15</sup> (is) the best<sup>16</sup>, (which is taught therein).

12. When<sup>1</sup> (the worshipper) chants\* (this hymn) aloud<sup>2</sup>, here<sup>3</sup> while<sup>5</sup> he recognises<sup>11</sup> Him<sup>6</sup> (Ahura Mazda) (as) both\* the Earthly-Lord<sup>7</sup> and<sup>10</sup> Heavenly-Master<sup>9</sup>, then<sup>12</sup>† he acknowledges<sup>15</sup> Him<sup>13</sup>, who<sup>16</sup> (is) Ahura<sup>17</sup> Mazda<sup>18</sup>, (as) first<sup>14</sup> among the Beings<sup>20</sup> of-whom-(Good-)Mind<sup>19</sup>-(is)-the first<sup>20</sup>†. (The phrase) *yabā*<sup>22</sup> (etc.) acknowledges<sup>26</sup> Him<sup>23</sup> (as) the greatest<sup>25</sup> of all<sup>24</sup>; (and the phrase) *aθa*<sup>27</sup> (etc.) attributes<sup>30</sup> (all) creation<sup>29</sup>|| to Him<sup>29</sup>.

13. (The phrase) *vayhēuš*<sup>4</sup> (etc.) here<sup>5</sup> affirms<sup>8</sup> the third<sup>6</sup> teaching<sup>7</sup> namely<sup>1</sup> (that) good-life<sup>3</sup> (is) for (the sake of) Mazda<sup>2</sup>\*; *dazda*<sup>9</sup> *manāyhō*<sup>10</sup> here<sup>13</sup> acknowledges<sup>15</sup> Him<sup>12</sup> (as) beyond<sup>11</sup> the (Good-)Mind<sup>14</sup>†; as<sup>16</sup> Master<sup>17</sup> of (Good-)Mind<sup>18</sup>† (the word) *Manāyhō*<sup>19</sup>, doth refer<sup>22</sup> thus<sup>20</sup> to

*Verse 7.* \* Lit. "whether". † Orig. dat. ‡ *ca*<sup>2</sup> is omitted, *Verse 8.* \* Lit. "two-legged". † Lit. "created". *Verse 10.* \* Lit., "the most a prayer". † Orig. ins plu. ‡ Orig., "and"; *ca*<sup>9</sup> is omitted in the trans. || Orig. ins. ¶ "Word-effectiveness", Reich.  
<sup>20</sup> I.e. by acting up to its teaching. †† Orig. sg. *Verse 11.* \* Lit. "of". *Verse 12.* \* Lit., "and". † Lit., "thus". ‡ Cf. Yas. LVII, 4, etc. (Sel. II, above). || Orig. plu. *Verse 13.* \* I.e. good life is to be led in order to attain to Mazda; cf., Yas. LX. 12 (Sel. IV, above).  
† Vohu-Mano, Nair, has *वहुमन*. ‡ Lit. "to."

vaitya<sup>20</sup> īm<sup>21</sup> kārāyeiti<sup>22</sup>; šya o θ e n a n ā m<sup>23</sup> iḍa<sup>24</sup> ahūm<sup>25</sup>  
kārāyeiti<sup>26</sup>.

14. yaṭ<sup>1</sup> dim<sup>2</sup> dāmabyō<sup>3</sup> cinasti<sup>4</sup> M a z d ā ī<sup>5\*</sup> iḥa<sup>6</sup> dim<sup>7†</sup> yaṭ<sup>9</sup> ahmāi<sup>9</sup>  
dāmān<sup>10</sup>; χ ṣ a θ r e m<sup>11</sup> A h u r ā i<sup>12</sup> cinsti<sup>13</sup> taṭ<sup>14</sup>, Mazda<sup>15</sup>, tava<sup>16</sup>  
χṣaθrem<sup>17</sup>; d r i g u b . y ō<sup>18</sup> v ā s t ā r e m<sup>19</sup> cinasti<sup>20</sup> yaḥa<sup>21</sup> urva-  
θem<sup>22</sup> Spitamāi<sup>23</sup>.

panca<sup>24</sup>-ṭkaēsa<sup>26</sup>.†

vispem<sup>26</sup> vacō<sup>27</sup> fravākem<sup>23</sup>, haurum<sup>29</sup> vacō<sup>30</sup> Ahurahe<sup>31</sup> Mazdā<sup>32</sup>.

15. vahištō<sup>1</sup> Ahurō<sup>2</sup> Mazdā<sup>3</sup> Ahunem<sup>4</sup> Vairīm<sup>5</sup> frāmraot<sup>6</sup>,  
vahištō<sup>7</sup> hāmō<sup>8</sup> kārāyat<sup>9</sup>.  
§ hiθwat<sup>10</sup> Akō<sup>11</sup> ubavaṭ<sup>12</sup> + antare<sup>13</sup> (-ca<sup>14</sup>) drvantem<sup>15</sup> am-  
rūta<sup>16</sup>.  
aya<sup>17</sup> antare<sup>18</sup>-uxti<sup>19</sup>:-  
“nōit<sup>20</sup> nā<sup>21</sup> manā<sup>22</sup>, nōit<sup>23</sup> saṇha<sup>24</sup>, nōit<sup>26</sup> χratavō<sup>26</sup>,  
“naēḍa<sup>27</sup> varēna<sup>28</sup>, nōit<sup>29</sup> uxḍa<sup>30</sup>, naēḍa<sup>31</sup> šya o θ n a<sup>32</sup>,  
“nōit<sup>33</sup> daēnā<sup>34</sup>, nōit<sup>36</sup> urvānō<sup>36</sup> hacinte<sup>37</sup>”.||

16. aētaṭ<sup>1</sup>-ca<sup>2</sup> vacō<sup>3</sup> Mazdaoxtem<sup>4</sup> θri<sup>5</sup>-afsmem<sup>6</sup>, caθru<sup>7</sup>-piāstem<sup>8</sup>, paṇ-  
ca<sup>9</sup>-ratu<sup>10</sup> rāiti<sup>11</sup>-hanḥkereθem<sup>12</sup>.  
kāis<sup>13</sup> hē<sup>14</sup> afsmān<sup>15</sup> P—humatem<sup>16</sup>, hūxtem<sup>17</sup>, hvarāstem<sup>18</sup>.

17. kāis<sup>1</sup> piātrāis<sup>2</sup> P—āθrava<sup>3</sup>, raḥaēštā<sup>4</sup>, vāstryō<sup>5</sup>-fšuyāš<sup>6</sup>, hūitiš<sup>7</sup>;  
vispaya<sup>8</sup> irina<sup>9</sup> hacimna<sup>10</sup> naire<sup>11</sup> ašaone<sup>12</sup> arš<sup>13</sup>-manaṇha<sup>14</sup>, arš<sup>15</sup>-  
vacanṇha<sup>16</sup>, arš<sup>17</sup>-šya o θ n a<sup>18</sup>, ratu<sup>19</sup>-mereta<sup>20</sup> daēnō<sup>21</sup>-sāca<sup>22</sup> yeṇhe<sup>23</sup>  
šya o θ n āis<sup>24</sup> gaēθā<sup>26</sup> aṣa<sup>26</sup> frādente<sup>27</sup>.

18. kaya<sup>1</sup> ratavō<sup>2</sup> P—nmānayō<sup>3</sup>, viśyō<sup>4</sup>, zantumō<sup>6</sup>, dāxyumō<sup>6</sup>, Zaraθuš-  
trō<sup>7</sup> puḥdō<sup>8</sup> āṇhām<sup>9</sup> dāxyunām<sup>10</sup> yā<sup>11</sup> anyā<sup>12</sup> Rajōit<sup>13</sup> zaraθuštrōit<sup>14</sup>.  
caθru<sup>15</sup>-ratu<sup>16</sup> Raṇa<sup>17</sup> zaraθuštriš<sup>18</sup>.  
kaya<sup>19</sup> aiḡhā<sup>20</sup> ratavō<sup>21</sup> P—nmanyas<sup>22</sup>-ca<sup>23</sup>, viśyas<sup>24</sup>-ca<sup>26</sup>, zantū-  
mas<sup>26</sup>cu<sup>27</sup> Zaraθuštra<sup>28</sup> tūiryō<sup>29</sup>.

\* Geld. and Reich. read *Mazda*. † Geld. and Reich. read *tem*. ‡ Geld. prints these separately.

The last three lines are from Gāθ. Ust. (Yas. XLV. 2). The Gāθ. version spells the words differently; see notes.

Him<sup>21</sup>; (and) *šyaoθənanām*<sup>23</sup> here<sup>24</sup> refers<sup>26</sup> (to him as) the (active) Sovereign-Ruler<sup>26</sup>.

14. When<sup>1</sup> (the phrase *aphēuš*) Mazda<sup>5</sup> acknowledges<sup>4</sup> Him<sup>2</sup> (as Lord) of (all) creation<sup>3\*</sup>, then<sup>6</sup> unto Him<sup>7</sup> (is ascribed that) which<sup>8</sup> (is indeed) His<sup>7</sup> (own) creation<sup>10†</sup>; (the words) *χῥαθram*<sup>11</sup> *Ahurāi*<sup>12</sup> (etc.) acknowledges<sup>13</sup> that<sup>14</sup>, O Mazda<sup>15</sup>, (which constitutes) Thy<sup>16</sup> Power<sup>17</sup>; *drigubyo*<sup>18</sup> *vāstāram*<sup>19</sup> (etc.) indicates<sup>20</sup> as-it-were<sup>21</sup> (one who is) a friend<sup>22</sup> to Spitama<sup>23</sup>.

• (Thus) the five<sup>24</sup>-(fold)-teaching<sup>25</sup>.

The whole<sup>26</sup> hymn<sup>27†</sup> (is) a revelation<sup>28</sup>, the whole<sup>29</sup> (is) the Word<sup>30</sup> of Ahura<sup>31</sup> Mazda<sup>32</sup>.

15. The highest<sup>1</sup> Ahura<sup>2</sup> Mazda<sup>3</sup> (first) repeated-aloud<sup>4</sup> the Ahuna<sup>5</sup> Vairya<sup>6</sup>, (and then) the Highest<sup>7</sup> did fashion<sup>9</sup> the whole<sup>8</sup> (creation).\*

The Evil-One<sup>11</sup> was<sup>12</sup> (His) companion<sup>10</sup>, but<sup>14†</sup> He repelled<sup>16†</sup> the Wicked-One<sup>15</sup> at-a-distance<sup>13</sup> with this<sup>17</sup> repelling<sup>18</sup> speech<sup>19</sup>;

"Never<sup>20</sup> shall our<sup>21||</sup> minds<sup>22</sup> harmonise<sup>27</sup>, nor<sup>23¶</sup> (our) doctrines<sup>24</sup>, neither<sup>25¶</sup> (our spiritual) aspirations<sup>26</sup>, nor-yet<sup>27</sup> (our) beliefs<sup>28</sup>, neither<sup>29¶</sup> (our) words<sup>30</sup>, nor-yet<sup>31</sup> (our) actions<sup>32</sup>, neither<sup>33¶</sup> (our) hearts<sup>34</sup>, nor<sup>35¶</sup> (our) souls<sup>36</sup>."

16. And<sup>2</sup> this<sup>1</sup> hymn<sup>3</sup> uttered-by-Mazda<sup>4</sup> (is) in-three<sup>5</sup>-parts<sup>6</sup>, (and belongs) to-the-four<sup>7</sup>-classes<sup>8</sup>, (and) to-the-five<sup>9</sup>-Lords<sup>10</sup>, (and its) fulfilment<sup>12</sup>-(is)-charity<sup>11</sup>.

Through what<sup>13</sup> (arise) its<sup>14</sup> (three) parts<sup>16</sup>?—(Through) good-thoughts<sup>16</sup>, good-words<sup>17</sup> (and) good-deeds<sup>18</sup>.

17. With what<sup>1</sup> classes<sup>2</sup> (of men)?—The priest<sup>3</sup>, the warrior<sup>4</sup>, the prosperity-bringing<sup>6</sup>-agriculturist<sup>5</sup> (and) the artisan<sup>7</sup>: in each<sup>8\*</sup> (of these classes a special) duty<sup>9</sup> attaches-itself<sup>10†</sup> to the holy<sup>12</sup> man<sup>11</sup> (which is to be fulfilled) by holy<sup>13</sup> thoughts<sup>14</sup>, by holy<sup>15</sup>-words<sup>16</sup> (and) by holy<sup>17</sup>-deeds<sup>18</sup>; (such a holy man) reveres<sup>20</sup>-(his)-Teacher<sup>19†</sup> (and) studies<sup>22</sup>-the-Scriptures<sup>21†</sup> (and) through his<sup>23||</sup> actions<sup>24</sup> the worlds<sup>25</sup> advance<sup>27</sup> towards<sup>¶</sup> righteousness<sup>26</sup>.

18. Who<sup>1</sup> (are) the Lords<sup>2</sup>?—He-of-the-house<sup>3</sup>, he-of-the-village<sup>4</sup>, he-of-the-province<sup>5</sup>, he-of-the-land<sup>6</sup>, (and) Zaraθuštra<sup>7</sup>, the fifth<sup>8</sup> in those<sup>9\*</sup> lands<sup>10\*</sup> which<sup>11</sup> (are) other<sup>12</sup> than Raya<sup>13</sup> of-Zaraθuštra<sup>14</sup>.

The Raya<sup>17</sup> of-Zaraθuštra<sup>18</sup> (has) four<sup>15</sup>-lords<sup>16</sup>.†

Who<sup>9</sup> (are) the Lords<sup>21</sup> of this<sup>20</sup>?—He-of-the-house<sup>22</sup> and<sup>23</sup> he-of-the-village<sup>24</sup> and<sup>25</sup> he-of-the-province<sup>26</sup> together-with<sup>27†</sup> Zaraθuštra<sup>28</sup> (as) the fourth<sup>29</sup>.

Verse 14. \* Orig. 4/3. † Orig. plu. ‡ Lit., "word". Verse 15. \* I.e. the plan of

the Almighty was first uttered forth in the Yaθa and then the Creation took place in accordance with that plan. † Lit., "and". ‡ Lit., "spoke"; the idea being that the Word of Ahura kept away the Evil One. || Dual. ¶ *noiz*. Verse 17. \* Lit., "all". † Orig. pres. pt. atm.

‡ Orig. adj. || Lit., "whose". ¶ Orig. ins. Verse 18. \* Orig. gen. † Orig. adj. ‡ Lit., "and".

19. kaṭ<sup>1</sup> humatem<sup>2</sup> ?—ašavanem<sup>3</sup> manas<sup>4</sup>-paoiryō<sup>5</sup>.

kaṭ<sup>5</sup> hūxtem<sup>7</sup> ?—mēθrō<sup>8</sup> spentō<sup>9</sup>.

kaṭ<sup>10</sup> hvarštō<sup>11</sup> ?—staotāiš<sup>12</sup> aša-paoiryaiš<sup>13</sup>-ca<sup>14</sup> dāmōbīš<sup>15</sup>.

20. Mazdā<sup>1</sup> frāmraot<sup>2</sup>; cīm<sup>3</sup> frāmraot<sup>4</sup> ?—ašavanem<sup>5</sup> mainyaom<sup>6</sup>-ca<sup>7</sup> gaēθim<sup>8</sup>-ca<sup>9</sup>.

cvāš<sup>10</sup> frāmraot<sup>11</sup> fravākem<sup>12</sup> ?—vahištō<sup>13</sup> xšayamnō<sup>14</sup>.

cvantem<sup>15</sup> ?—ašavanem<sup>16</sup> vahištem<sup>17</sup>-ca<sup>18</sup> avasō<sup>19</sup>-xšaθrem<sup>20</sup>.

21. bayām<sup>1</sup> Ahunahe<sup>2</sup> Vairyehē<sup>3</sup> yazamaide<sup>4</sup>: Ahunahe<sup>5</sup> Vairyehē<sup>6</sup> yazamaidem<sup>7</sup> frasraθrem<sup>8</sup>-ca<sup>9</sup> framareθrem<sup>10</sup>-ca<sup>11</sup> fragāθrem<sup>12</sup>-ca<sup>13</sup> frāyaštīm<sup>14</sup>-ca<sup>15</sup>.

yeñhē<sup>16</sup> hātām<sup>17</sup> āaṭ<sup>18</sup> yesnē<sup>19</sup> paiti<sup>20</sup> . . .

XX. 1. frāmraot<sup>1</sup> Ahurō<sup>2</sup> Mazdā<sup>3</sup>: ašēm<sup>4</sup> vohū<sup>5</sup> vahištem<sup>6</sup> ast<sup>17</sup>.

para<sup>8</sup> ahmai<sup>9</sup> vohu<sup>10</sup> vahištem<sup>11</sup> cinasti<sup>12</sup>, yaθa<sup>13</sup> x<sup>v</sup>aētave<sup>14</sup> x<sup>v</sup>aētātem<sup>15</sup>; vohu<sup>16</sup> vahištem<sup>17</sup> asti<sup>18</sup> aθa<sup>19</sup> tkaōšem<sup>20</sup> kārayoiti<sup>21</sup>.

2. uštā<sup>1</sup> asti<sup>2</sup> uštā<sup>3</sup> ahmāi<sup>4</sup>; uštātāitya<sup>5</sup> vīspem<sup>6</sup> ašavanem<sup>7</sup>. vīspāi<sup>8</sup> ašaone<sup>9</sup> para<sup>10</sup>-cinasti<sup>11</sup>, yaθanā<sup>12</sup> stāitya<sup>13</sup> vīspem<sup>14</sup> ašavanem<sup>15</sup> vīspāi<sup>16</sup> ašaone<sup>17</sup> para<sup>18</sup>-cinasti<sup>19</sup>.

3. yaṭ<sup>1</sup>\* ašāi<sup>2</sup> vahištāi<sup>3</sup> ašēm<sup>4</sup>: para<sup>5</sup>-cinasti<sup>6</sup>† vīspem<sup>7</sup> mēθrem<sup>8</sup> vīspāi<sup>9</sup>† mēθrāi<sup>10</sup>, yaθa<sup>11</sup> asāi<sup>12</sup> xšaθrem<sup>13</sup> cinasti<sup>14</sup>, yaθa<sup>15</sup>-ca<sup>16</sup> zbayente<sup>17</sup> ašaone<sup>18</sup> ašēm<sup>19</sup> cinasti<sup>20</sup>, yaθa<sup>21</sup>-ca<sup>22</sup> xšmāvōya<sup>23</sup>, ašēm<sup>24</sup> cinasti<sup>25</sup> yaṭ<sup>26</sup> sacšyantaōibyō<sup>27</sup>.

θrāyō<sup>28</sup>-tkaōša<sup>29</sup>.

vīspem<sup>30</sup> vacō<sup>31</sup> fravākem<sup>32</sup>, haurum<sup>33</sup> vacō<sup>34</sup> Ahurahē<sup>35</sup> Mazdā<sup>36</sup>.

4. Mazdā<sup>1</sup> frāmraot<sup>2</sup>; cīm<sup>3</sup> frāmraot<sup>4</sup> ?—ašavanem<sup>5</sup> mainyaom<sup>6</sup>-ca<sup>7</sup>

\* V.l. *hyaṭ*. † Geld. has a stop here but not after *ašēm*. I have followed Kan. ‡ Geld. and Kan. both read *°pəm* and Geld. notes on v.l. here except *m₂θrem*. I have ventured to make this change to get uniformity with the construction of the previous verse.



19. What<sup>1</sup> (is) good-thought<sup>2</sup>?—The holy<sup>3</sup> first<sup>5</sup>. Mind<sup>4</sup>. \*

What<sup>6</sup> (is) good-word<sup>7</sup>?—The holy<sup>9</sup> Scripture<sup>8</sup>.

What<sup>10</sup> (is) good-deed<sup>11</sup>?—(That done) through hymns-of-praise<sup>12</sup> and<sup>17</sup> by beings<sup>16</sup> who-hold-Righteousness-as-the-first<sup>13</sup>.

20. Mazda<sup>1</sup> proclaimed-aloud<sup>2</sup>. Whom<sup>3</sup> did he (thus) proclaim<sup>4</sup>?—The righteous-one<sup>6</sup> belonging-(both)-to-the-spiritual<sup>5</sup> and<sup>7</sup> to-the-material-world<sup>8</sup>. \*

In-what-capacity<sup>10</sup> did He pronounce<sup>11</sup> (this) revelation<sup>12</sup>?—(As) the Supreme<sup>13</sup> Ruler<sup>14</sup>.

Of-what-character<sup>15</sup> (was he to whom this revelation was granted)?—A holy<sup>16</sup> and<sup>18</sup> perfect<sup>17</sup>† (ruler who) exercises-no-despotic power<sup>19</sup>, 20. ‡

21. We adore<sup>4</sup> the hymn<sup>1</sup> Ahuna<sup>2</sup> Vairya<sup>3</sup>. \* Of the Ahuna<sup>5</sup> Vairya<sup>6</sup> we do adore<sup>7</sup> the loud-chanting<sup>8</sup>, and<sup>9</sup> the low-murmuring<sup>10</sup>, and<sup>11</sup> the singing-aloud<sup>12</sup>, and<sup>13</sup> the consecration<sup>14</sup> too<sup>15</sup>.

*yējhē*<sup>16</sup> *hātām*<sup>17</sup>, etc. (See Yas. LVII. 4)†.

XX. 1. Ahura<sup>2</sup> Mazda<sup>3</sup> uttered-forth<sup>1</sup>: *aṣəm*<sup>4</sup> *vohū*<sup>5</sup> *vahištəm*<sup>6</sup> *astī*<sup>7</sup>. (The worshipper) acknowledges<sup>12</sup> (Aša to be) the highest<sup>14</sup> good<sup>10</sup> above<sup>9</sup> (all) this<sup>9</sup> (worldly happiness), as-if<sup>13</sup> (it were) the nearest-possession<sup>15</sup> of-one's-very-Self.<sup>14</sup> \* (*aṣəm*) *vohu*<sup>16</sup> *vahištəm*<sup>17</sup> *astī*<sup>18</sup> thus<sup>19</sup> lays down<sup>21</sup> the (first) teaching<sup>20</sup>.

2. *uštā*<sup>1</sup> *astī*<sup>2</sup> *uštā*<sup>3</sup> *ahmāi*<sup>4</sup>: (this phrase) by (teaching how to win) happiness<sup>5</sup> \* [with-the-words-*uštā-astī*-etc.<sup>6</sup>] \* affirms<sup>11</sup> perfect<sup>8</sup> righteousness<sup>7</sup>† (to be) the best<sup>10</sup> for every<sup>9</sup> follower-of-the-Law<sup>9</sup> ‡; (and) thus<sup>12</sup>|| because-of-the-strength<sup>13</sup>|| (it gives to the soul) (this phrase) affirms<sup>19</sup> perfect<sup>14</sup> righteousness<sup>15</sup> (to be) the best<sup>18</sup> for every<sup>16</sup> follower-of-the-Law<sup>17</sup>.

3. *ya*<sup>1</sup> *asāi*<sup>2</sup> *vahistāi*<sup>3</sup> *asəm*<sup>4</sup>: (this phrase) affirms<sup>5</sup> the whole<sup>7</sup> hymn<sup>8</sup> [Aṣəm<sup>4</sup> on-account-of-the-best<sup>3</sup> Righteousness<sup>2</sup> (thought therein)], (to be) superior<sup>6</sup> to every<sup>9</sup> (other) hymn<sup>10</sup>; it ascribes<sup>14</sup>, as-it-were<sup>11</sup>, (spiritual) strength<sup>13</sup> to Righteousness<sup>12</sup> and<sup>16</sup> Righteousness<sup>19</sup> it ascribes<sup>20</sup> likewise<sup>15</sup> to the praying<sup>17</sup> Saint<sup>18</sup>, and<sup>22</sup> Righteousness<sup>23</sup> it ascribes<sup>25</sup> indeed<sup>21</sup>\* unto you<sup>23</sup>, (ye) who<sup>25</sup> (are our) Saviours<sup>27</sup>.

(Thus) the three<sup>23</sup> (-fold)-teaching<sup>29</sup>.

The whole<sup>30</sup> hymn<sup>31</sup>† (is) a revelation<sup>32</sup>, the whole<sup>33</sup> (is) the Word<sup>34</sup> of Ahura<sup>35</sup> Mazda<sup>36</sup>.

4. \* Mazda<sup>1</sup> proclaimed-aloud<sup>2</sup>. Whom<sup>3</sup> did he (thus) proclaim<sup>4</sup>?—The

Verse 19. \* Vohu-Mano. Verse 20. \* *ca*<sup>9</sup> omitted.

† Lit., "best".

‡ The

words "ruler . . . power" are from the trans. of Mills. Verse 21. \* Orig. gen.

† Sel. II.

XX. Verse 1. \* Orig. dat.

Verse 2. \* This seems to be a play on the double meaning of the word.

† I take here the lit. meaning of the word *ānan*, "that which belongs to Aša".

‡ Anhänger des Aša, Barth., Wb. 246.

|| Lit., "as it were".

¶ Orig. 3/l. Verse 3.

\* Lit., "as it were".

† Lit., "word".

Verse 4. \* Identical with YAS. XIX, 20 above

except for the addition of the last *ca*.

gaēθim<sup>8</sup>-ca<sup>9</sup>.

cvāṣ<sup>10</sup> frāmraoṭ<sup>11</sup> fravākem<sup>12</sup> ?—vahištō<sup>13</sup> χṣayamnō<sup>14</sup>.

cvantem<sup>15</sup> ?—aṣavanem<sup>13</sup> vahištēm<sup>17</sup>-ca<sup>18</sup> avaso<sup>19</sup>-χṣaθrem<sup>20</sup>-ca<sup>21</sup>.

5. baγēm<sup>1</sup> Aṣahe<sup>2</sup> Vahištahe<sup>3</sup> yazamaide<sup>4</sup>: Aṣahe<sup>5</sup> Vahištahe<sup>6</sup> yazamaide<sup>7</sup> frasraoθrem<sup>8</sup>-ca<sup>9</sup> framareθrem<sup>10</sup>-ca<sup>11</sup> fragāθrem<sup>12</sup>-ca<sup>13</sup> fra-  
yāštīm<sup>14</sup>-ca<sup>15</sup>  
yeñhē<sup>16</sup> hatām<sup>17</sup> āaṭ<sup>18</sup> yesnē<sup>19</sup> paitī<sup>20</sup> . . .

XXI. 1. yesnim<sup>1</sup> vacō<sup>2</sup> aṣaonō<sup>3</sup> Zaraθuštrahe<sup>4</sup>: ye ṣ h ē<sup>5</sup> h ā t ṣ m<sup>6</sup>  
ā a ṭ<sup>7</sup> y e s n ē<sup>8</sup> p a i t ī<sup>9</sup>.  
ye ṣ h ē<sup>10</sup> iṣa<sup>11</sup> Mazdā<sup>12</sup> yesnem<sup>13</sup> cinasti<sup>14</sup> yaθa<sup>15</sup> dāta<sup>16</sup> Ahurahe<sup>17</sup>;  
h ā t ṣ m<sup>15</sup> yasnem<sup>19</sup> cinasti<sup>20</sup> yaθa<sup>21</sup> haḍbiš<sup>22</sup> jijisām<sup>23</sup>.\*

2. ye ṣ h ē m<sup>1</sup> iṣa<sup>2</sup> aṣaoninām<sup>3</sup> Ārmaiti<sup>4</sup>-paoiryanām<sup>5</sup> yasnem<sup>6</sup> para-  
cinasti<sup>8</sup> yaθa<sup>9</sup> vahmem<sup>10</sup> Ameṣaēibyo<sup>11</sup>.  
θrāyō<sup>12</sup>-ṭkaēṣa<sup>13</sup>.  
vispem<sup>14</sup> vacō<sup>15</sup> yesnim<sup>16</sup>.  
cīm<sup>17</sup> aci<sup>18</sup> yasnō<sup>19</sup> ?—Ameṣō<sup>20</sup> Spentō<sup>21</sup> paiti<sup>22</sup> yasnahe<sup>23</sup>.

3. āaṭ<sup>1</sup> mraoṭ<sup>2</sup> Mazdā<sup>3</sup>.†  
“ ušta<sup>4</sup>† ahmāi<sup>5</sup> yahmāi<sup>6</sup> ušta<sup>7</sup>† kahmāi<sup>8</sup>-ciṭ<sup>9</sup>  
vasa<sup>10</sup>||-χṣayēs<sup>11</sup> Mazdā<sup>12</sup> dāyāt<sup>13</sup> Ahurō<sup>14</sup> ”.

4. cīm<sup>1</sup> aēṭaya<sup>2</sup> paiti<sup>3</sup>-vaca<sup>4</sup> paityāmraoṭ<sup>5</sup> ?—uštātātēm<sup>6</sup> paityā-  
mraoṭ<sup>7</sup>¶, uštātāitya<sup>8</sup>-ca<sup>9</sup> vispem<sup>10</sup> aṣāvanem<sup>11</sup> hentēm<sup>12</sup>-ca<sup>13</sup> bavan-  
tēm<sup>14</sup>-ca<sup>15</sup> būšyantēm<sup>16</sup>-ca<sup>17</sup>¶ vahištēm<sup>18</sup> vahištō<sup>19</sup> paityāmraoṭ<sup>20</sup>,  
vahištō<sup>21</sup> Mazdā<sup>22</sup> paityāmraoṭ<sup>23</sup> vahištēm<sup>24</sup> aṣavanem<sup>25</sup> vahištāi<sup>26</sup>  
aṣaone<sup>27</sup>.

5. baγēm<sup>1</sup> Yeñhē<sup>2</sup>-Hātām<sup>3</sup> hufrāyāštām<sup>4</sup> aṣaonīm<sup>5</sup> yazamaide<sup>6</sup>.  
yeñhē<sup>7</sup> hātām<sup>8</sup> āaṭ<sup>9</sup> yesnē<sup>10</sup> paitī<sup>11</sup> . . .

\* Geld. has the last three words with the next verse.

† The passage following is orig. Gāθ.

(Yas. XLIII. 1). ‡ Gāθ reads uštā. ¶ vacō-°, Gāθ. ¶ Geld. has no stop after the 7th word, but has one after the 17th.

righteous-one<sup>5</sup> belonging-(both)-to-the-spiritual<sup>6</sup> and<sup>7</sup> to-the-material-world<sup>8</sup>.

In-what-capacity<sup>10</sup> did He pronounce<sup>11</sup> (this) revelation<sup>12</sup> ?—(As) the Supreme<sup>13</sup> Ruler<sup>14</sup>.

Of-what-character<sup>15</sup> (was he to whom this revelation was granted) ?—A holy<sup>17</sup> and<sup>13</sup> perfect<sup>17</sup> (ruler, who) also<sup>21</sup> exercises-no-despotic-power<sup>19,20</sup>.

5. We adore<sup>4</sup> the hymn<sup>1</sup> Aša<sup>2</sup> Vahišta<sup>3\*</sup>. Of the Aša<sup>5</sup> Vahišta<sup>6</sup> we do adore<sup>7</sup> the loud-chaunting<sup>3</sup>, and<sup>9</sup> the low-murmuring<sup>10</sup>, and<sup>11</sup> the singing-aloud<sup>12</sup> and<sup>13</sup> the consecration<sup>14</sup> too<sup>15</sup>.

*yeğhē*<sup>16</sup> *hātām*<sup>17</sup> etc. (see Yas. LVII. 4)†.

XXI. 1. The hymn<sup>2\*</sup> worthy-of-adoration<sup>1</sup> of the Holy<sup>3</sup> Zərəuštra<sup>4</sup> (is) *yeğhē*<sup>5</sup> *hātām*<sup>6</sup> etc.

*yeğhē*<sup>10</sup> (etc.), here<sup>11</sup> (this phrase) indicates<sup>14</sup> the worship<sup>13</sup> of Mazda<sup>12</sup> as<sup>15</sup> by a creature<sup>16</sup> of Ahura<sup>17</sup>.

*hātām*<sup>18</sup> indicates<sup>20</sup> the worship<sup>19</sup> [of (those) Beings<sup>18</sup>]† who<sup>21</sup>‡ desire-to-live<sup>23</sup> with the Truth<sup>22</sup>.||

2. *yāñhām*<sup>1</sup> (etc.), here<sup>2</sup> (this phrase) indicates<sup>3</sup> the worship<sup>4</sup> of the Holy Beings<sup>5\*</sup> of-whom Ārmaiti<sup>4</sup>-(is)-the-first<sup>5</sup> (to be) the best<sup>7</sup>, (being) as-it-were<sup>9</sup> the praise<sup>10</sup> of the (Holy) Immortals<sup>11</sup>.†

(Thus the) three<sup>12</sup> (-fold)-teaching<sup>13</sup>.

The whole<sup>14</sup> hymn<sup>15</sup>‡ (is) worthy-of-adoration<sup>16</sup>.

About<sup>18</sup> whom<sup>17</sup> (is) this hymn<sup>19</sup> ?—About<sup>22</sup> the Holy<sup>20</sup> Immortals<sup>21</sup> in the Yasna<sup>23</sup>.||

3. Then<sup>1</sup> spoke<sup>2</sup> Mazda<sup>3</sup>:

“Happiness<sup>4</sup> unto him<sup>5</sup>, from whom<sup>6\*</sup> happiness<sup>7</sup> (reaches), anyone<sup>8</sup>,<sup>9</sup>; may Mazda<sup>12</sup> Ahura<sup>14</sup>, the Supreme-Ruler<sup>10</sup>,<sup>11</sup>† grant<sup>13</sup> (this) ”.

4. What<sup>1</sup> hath He proclaimed<sup>5</sup> in this<sup>2</sup> verse<sup>3</sup> 4\* ?—He hath proclaimed<sup>7</sup> (how to win supreme) happiness<sup>8</sup>; thus<sup>9</sup>† with (-the-words-) *ustā* (-etc.)<sup>3\*</sup> the Supreme<sup>19</sup> (Lord) hath proclaimed<sup>20</sup> the highest<sup>13</sup> (happiness) unto every<sup>10</sup> holy-person<sup>11</sup>, who-is<sup>12</sup>, or<sup>13</sup> ‡ who-was<sup>14</sup> or<sup>15</sup>‡ who-shall be<sup>16</sup>.|| The Supreme<sup>21</sup> Mazda<sup>22</sup> hath proclaimed<sup>23</sup> the best (and) holiest<sup>24</sup> (verse) unto the best<sup>26</sup> of holy-persons<sup>27</sup>||.

5. We adore<sup>4</sup> the hymn<sup>1</sup> Yeğhē<sup>2</sup>-Hātām<sup>3</sup> well-consecrated<sup>4</sup> (and) holy<sup>5</sup>. Yeğhē<sup>7</sup> hātām<sup>8</sup>, etc. (See Yas. LVII. 4)\*.

*Verse 5.* \* Orig. gen. † Sel. II. XXI. *Verse 1.* \* Lit., “word”. † *hātām*. The word according to the tradition refers to the Holy Immortals, see Dar. quoted above at p. 67. For the construction see above Yas. XX. 3. ‡ *yañā* || Orig. 3/3. *Verse 2.* \* Fem. † Orig. dat. ‡ Lit. “word”. || Orig. gen. *Verse 3.* \* Orig. dat. † Lit. “Ruler” at will<sup>10</sup>. *Verse 4.* \* I.e. in “Happiness unto him, etc.,” quoted in verse 3. † Lit., “and”. ‡ -ca. || -ca<sup>1</sup> omitted. ¶ Orig. 4/1. *Verse 5.* \* Sel. II.

## NOTES.

The *Bayān* (or *Bayām*) *Yašt* is the name given to the three Chapters (XIX–XXI) of the *Yasna*, which form a sort of commentary on the three Sacred Prayers (Sel. VII). The word *bayā* f. (see below verse 3) meant originally a part (भाग) and is applied specially to a part of the Scriptures; hence it comes to mean a hymn or a sacred verse.\* And these three chapters extolling the “merits” of the three prayers are appropriately named *Bayān Yašt*. It may be noted in passing that the 14th Book of the original Avestic collection of 21 *Nasks* was also named *Bayān Yašt*. It was said to have had 17 sections “of great beauty” and it dealt with the chief deities (*bayā* m., भग) of Avesta, viz., Ahura Mazda and the Holy Immortals.† *Yasna XIX* is a commentary on the *Yaθā*. *Yasna XX* refers to the *Aḡem*. It is also called the *Hā Frāmraoṭ* from its first word. And *Yasna XXI* deals with *Yeḡhē hātām*.

*Yasna XIX.*

1. Haug—Essays on the Religion of the Parsis, pp. 185–189.
2. Mills—S.B.E., XXXI, pp. 259–266.
3. Reichelt—Avesta Reader, pp. 73–75 (text) and pp. 174–176 (notes).
4. Kanga—Yaçna and Vispered (Gujarāti trans., 1886), pp. 88–94.

Mills says by way of introduction (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 259, ftn.): “The obvious errors contained in this ancient comment cannot destroy its great interest as a specimen of early exegesis . . . . The *Ahuna Vairya* is in the *Gāthic* dialect and the *Ahunavaiti* metre. This *Zand* (commentary)‡ is in the *Zend* (sic)”.

In order to point out “the obvious errors”, Mills gives his own version of *Yaθā* in the beginning:

“As the *Ahū* is excellent so (is) the *Ratu* (one who rules) from the righteous order, a creator of mental goodness and of life’s actions done for Mazda: and the Kingdom (is) for Ahura which to the poor shall offer a nurturer.”

1. *mainyō*—8/1. Spirit. The word is applied to divine beings who have no visible physical forms. Nair. says अदृश्यमूर्ते. In Guj. we use the word मौनी in the same sense.

*spēnīšta*—8/1 sup. of *spēnta*. The holiest. The word is used most often with the word *mainyu* (Barth., Wb. 1618). The Skt. trans. says मन्त्र or गुप्तर wherever the word occurs.

*dātara*—8/1 of *dātar* (दातृ).

— *aṣāum*—8/1. The Holy One. Kan. explains this as an irregular form for *aṣavan* which is the usual 8/1 (Dict., p. 64). He also quotes in A.G.,

\* Kan., Dict., p. 361.

† Haug, p. 132.

‡ Cf. Yas. LVII. 8 (p. 68 above).

§ 142 (p. 102) the forms *āθraom*\* (from *āθravan*, a religious teacher), *θrizafəm*† (from *θrizafan*, three-jawed), and *yum*‡ (from *yvan*, youth).

*ci*—Cf. Yas. IX. 3, etc. above.

*ava*—1.1 n. That.

*ās*—See *as* above, Yas. XII. 7.

2. *asməm*—2.1 m. The sky. The word is used in contrast to *zām* the earth. The declension here is thematic (i.e. of the *a*-stems), the orig. form being *asman*. O. Pers. is *asmānam*|| used in the Insc. of Darius and Xerxes at Persepolis. The word is also found as *asan*.¶ It is cognate with Skt. अश्मन् (*stone*); in Av. the word also means *stone*. The Pers. آسمان (*āsmān*), sky and سنگ (*sang*), *stone* are derivatives. The word पर्वन is found in RV. in the sense of *cloud*.\*\* A similar connection of meaning is found between the pairs *cloud* and *clod*, *rack* and *rock*. Barth. (loc. cit.) suggests that the sky was supposed to be made of stone.

*zām* . . . *gām*. The metre seems to show that one of these (probably *gām*) is a later interpolation. Nair. says प्राक् जगत्याः । प्राक् गोः । Kan. understands by *gām* the whole animal creation. Cf. Yas. IX. 29.

*Ātrəm*—Cf. Yas. IX. 1. He is almost always called *Ahurahe Mazdā* puθra (Ny. V).

*para narəm ašavanəm*—The Pah. version says that *Gayomard* (Av. *Gaya Marətan*) is referred to. In the Pah. invocation to the *Fravašis* he is called *Gayomart nar aōō*.

*para daēvāiš*—Geld. marks this line as spurious. The sudden use of 3/3 in place of 2/1 supports this view. But see Jack., A.G., § 229; see also below *yāiš* in verse 9.

*xrafstrāiš*—3/3. Haug takes it as an adj. to *mašyāiš* and trans. “savage (cannibal) men”. Kan. says “wicked men”. Nair. has बुद्धिजडेषु मनुष्यैः. Mills trans. similarly but adds (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 260, ftn. 4) “while the term may be applied to wild beasts one is strongly inclined to hold that foul insects are chiefly referred to”. Barth. (Wb. 538) says that the word *xrafstra* (n.) in the *Gāθ*. means “a wild beast” or “an evil beast”. In Y.A. the word is applied to vermin and foul insects who were regarded as the creation of *Ayrō-Mainyuš*. It also seems to be used for all the minor evil creation, spirits, goblins, etc., of weird shapes. The phrase *daēvāiš-ca xrafstraiš mašyāiš-ca* is also found in *Gāθ*. Ahu., XXXIV. 5, where, according to Barth. (loc. cit., note 1), the words *daēvāiš* and *mašyāiš* may be taken attributively. The etymology is uncertain. The first part (*xraf-*) is probably cognate with *kahrp* (body). Pers. خرفستر (*kharfstar*) means the same thing and is used in purely Z. literature. P.

\* Vis. III. 7. † *Aēθ* θri? *Dahūka*; Yt. XIX. 50. ‡ Yt. XXII. 11, 12; Yt. XXIV. 58. || Also used contrasted with *dāmi* (भूमि). ¶ Barth., Wb. 207. \*\* य इक्षयन्ति पर्वतान् निरः

समुद्रमर्षवम् (RV., I. 19. 7); प्र वक्ष्या अभिनत् पर्वतानाम् (RV., I. 32. 1.), etc.

Guj. has the word *खर्वस्तर* used in the sense of one who possesses a robust body which can stand a lot of wear and tear.

*vīspa*—Note short final, a sign of later age.

*mazdadāta*—√*dā* (धत्) to create. Created by Mazda.

*aša-citra*—contrast *daēvō-citra* above. Ven. VIII. 21 (Sel. VI, verse 2)

3. *mraoṭ*—3/1 impf. par. √*mru* (मृ), to speak.

*baya*—1/1 f. Kan. says “parts” and thinks (Ij. Vis., p. 88, ftn.) that the three lines composing the *Yabā* are referred to. Mills trans. “piece (of composition)”. Dar. says “hymn” or “sacred prayer”.\* Barth. (Wb. 927) says “a piece out of the Scriptures, i.e. a hymn”. Pah. trans. says *frakart*† (section, part). Nair says विभंजना. In this sense the word is the same as Skt. भगः but is f. But the word is used in the other two genders as well. When n. it means “luck”, Skt. भाग्यम्‡. When m. it corresponds to Skt. भगः and means God. It is found in O. Per. also; *Baga vazarka Aura Mazda* (Ahuramazda, the Great God), Insc. Xerxes. In Y.A. it means “a divinity”, e.g. *Māghem . . . bayem raēvantem*, Yt. VII. 5. The word is cognate with Russ. *Bogu*, God; Eng. *bogey*; P. Guj. बाड (coll. बड or बड)§. The title of the Nask *Bayān Yašt* is evidently from this last *Bayā*, m.

*Spītama*—Kan. trans. throughout this word by “holiest.”

*aēša* refers to the *yaṭ* above in verse 1. See Barth., Wb. 33.

*tē* (v.l. *taṭ*¶)—4/1. ते, तुभ्यम्.

5. *mē*—Kan. takes this with *Ahuna Vairya*. Haug takes it with *baya*. Mills says “which (i.e. the *Ahuna Vairya*) especially belongs to me”.

*anapayāḥḍa*—Barth. takes it as 7/1 of an abstract noun f. (Wb. 116); Kan. (Dict., p. 28) takes it as 1/1 p. pt. (f.) of √*vac* with *api* and the neg. *an* qualifying *baya* and trans. “without interruption”. The idea is that while the verse is being repeated nothing else must be spoken in the middle. Nair. seems to mean the same thing when he says अनधिकोक्त्या (किल अविस्तारं अन्त्या मध्ये न वक्ति)। Reich. says “without insertion (of other words)” ; Haug trans. “without mistakes” ; Mills says “without needless repetition”.

*anapiṣṭa*—Barth. (Wb. 115) says “not disarranged” ; Kan. (also Mills) trans. “without omission” (*an* + *api* + √*ṣu*, षु, to fall) ; Haug trans. “without mispronunciation”.\*\* Nair. says अनधिकशैथिल्येन (किल न शेते).††

\* “*Pride divine*”.

† Cf. *Yasnō keretayo* above, Yas. LVII. 22.

‡ Cf. Eng. “*portion*”.

¶ The word means a spirit or ghost; the phrase दादडामानो बाड means Jack-in-the-box.

§ Attraction of *yaṭ*. \*\* Mills adds a ftn. (op., cit. p. 281) : “I do not think mispronunciation is here intended . . . I am strongly inclined to read *anapāṣṭa*”. †† A very extraordinary rendering, but see the Pah. version below.

*srāvayamna*—1 1 prés. pt. caus. pass. f.  $\sqrt{\text{śru}}$ . Being chanted. Cf. Yas. IX. 1.

*satəm*—सतम्. The syntactical use of this numeral is exactly as in Skt. (Whit. § 486 b, c.)

*paiti* with acc. means “equal to” (Reich. § 522).<sup>\*</sup> The word is also used in the sense of “reward” or “return for service rendered” (esp. with reference to divinities) with the same construction.

*raθwām gāθanām*—Reich. says “Gāθās of *Ratu* force”. Bārth. (Wb. 1499) explains this, that the literal idea of the word, namely “the authority of the *Ratu*” receded into the background in course of time and the word got the generalised sense of “authority”. Generally however it was confined to mean authority of the holy books. Kan. trans. “precious” (कीमती) i.e. “full of merit”<sup>†</sup>; Haug says “principal”; Mills trans. “prominent in the ritual”; Nair. says गुणरत्नाम्. The word *gāθā* need not be taken in the special limited sense but in the orig. meaning of “chants”. The old Av. texts, like the Vedic, had to be chanted.

*āat*—Even. Mills says “further”; Kan. says “but”; Nair. has चेत्.

*anyē*—1/3 for 2/3 required with *paiti*.

*ratavō*—refers to the *gāθanām* mentioned above.

6. *mē*—Mills and Haug take it with *aphvō*. Better take it the same way as in the last verse.

*aētahmi*—7/1. In this, एतस्मिन्.

*marāt*—3/1 opt. pres. Shall recall (mentally), Haug. The  $\sqrt{\text{mar}}$  is the Skt. स्मृ. Nair. says अध्येति [अधीते]. The idea is that the verse is mentally repeated.

*marō*—1 1 pres. pt. par  $\sqrt{\text{mar}}$ . Remembering. The participial stems in *-ant* often have the 1.1 in *-ō* (Jack., A.G., § 295).<sup>\*</sup> Haug trans. “in the course of recalling”. Mills says “having recalled”.

*drañjayāt*—“Shall mutter” (Reich.); Bārth. (Wb. 772-3) says that the word means “to learn by heart”, to repeat constantly in a low voice as is done while learning something by heart; “shall undertone it” (Mills); Nair. says प्रहृष्टं तदधीतं गुणयति † (किल कीमलीकुरते). It is a technical term used in ritual for muttering, corresponding to the जप.

*srāvayāt*—Shall chant aloud (in contrast to the above). “There are three expressions used for the recital of the sacred texts, viz. *mar*, ‘to recite’, *drañj* (or *frāmru*), ‘to recite in a low tone’, and *srāvaya* (or *frasrāvaya*), ‘to recite with a loud voice observing musical accents’. The first expres-

<sup>\*</sup> See also Bārth. Wb. 824.

<sup>†</sup> Kan. adds (Ij. Vis., p. 89, ftn.) that the word may be connected with *मृत* and hence would mean, in this context, “leading unto truth” i.e. serving as spiritual guides. Hence I have translated “holy”.  
<sup>‡</sup> Of. Guj. गणगच्छु to buzz, to mutter.

sion conveys the most general meaning, viz. 'to repeat from memory' (*mar*, मर, to recollect), which was very likely done in the same way as the Brahmanas repeat the verses of the *Rigveda*, observing the accents in general. *drañj* means evidently a peculiar kind of recital; it is chiefly applied to spells, and may be compared to the recital of the verses of the *Yajurveda*, which is done with a low voice, and monotonously. *frasrāvaya* is the solemn recital in the form of a very simple tune, comparable to the *Sāmaveda* by the Brahmanas. This expression is pre-eminently applied to the *Gāthās*" (Haug, p. 142, ftn.). I am rather inclined to take these three terms as corresponding to the Skt. तूष्णींश्च, जप् and जै respectively.

*yazāite*—"Should praise it" (Kan.); "prays to it" (Reich.). "After chanting or reciting sacred verses one prays to them (the verse, or hymn, being considered a deity) with the formula: *Ahunəm Vairim yazamaidē*". (Haug, p. 186, ftn.). The formula *staomi Aṣəm* is also used for the Aṣəm.

*θriś-ciṭ*—All commentators (including Nair.) have taken this word to refer to the crossing of the bridge three times. Mills seems naturally puzzled at the idea of the triple crossing and attempts to introduce a new idea in his trans., "with even threefold (safety and speed)" and adds (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 261, ftn.): "three times seems to me to lack meaning, but it may have given rise to the foolish belief that the soul went three times before death to heaven". I propose to take it as referring to the three regions referred to immediately after.

*tarō*—Across, तिरस्.

*parētum-ciṭ*—From  $\sqrt{\text{par}}$  to cross over (Bartl. Wb. 851). Bridge. Here the reference is to the bridge—the *Cinvatō parētus*; the bridge which the soul crosses on the morning of the fourth day after leaving the body, and where it is judged by *Sraoṣa* and *Raṣnu*. Nair. says चांदोर पुञ्जलेन सेतुना. Cf. Kur. *purd*, Pers. چل (pūl), bridge.

*frapārayeni*—1/1 sub. pres. caus. par.  $\sqrt{\text{par}}$ . I shall cause to cross over, i.e. help to cross over. Cf. Grk. *πείρω*, to pierce through; Goth. *faran*. Nair. says प्रापयामि. The same idea and the same words occur in Yas. LXXI. 16,\* Ven. XIX. 30,† and Vis. VII. 1.

*ā*—Unto, with abl. Cf. *ā-darəyāt*, Yas. LX. 6, above.

*raocēbyō*—Note plu.; cf. Yas. XII. 1, above.

7. *aparaodayete*—Makes less (Kan.); omits (Reich.); Mills trans. "takes ought therefrom"; Nair. says परिहरति.

*yat* . . . *vā*—Whether.

*naēmam*—Half. Pers. نیم (nīm) half. Cf. *antara-naēmāt*, etc., Yas. LVII. 21.

\* *frap:rayāzhe uroānəm tarō Cinvatō parētum*, † Sel. XIV.



*θrišum, caθrušum, pagtaghum*—A third, a fourth, a fifth (part). These are special formations only found in Av. and not paralleled elsewhere.

*pairi* . . . *tanava*—1/1 pres. sub. par. *√tan* with *pairi* to keep away from, to twist away from (Barth., Wb. 633).<sup>\*</sup> Cf. *pairi-tē tanava urvānem haca acištāt aghaot*, Yas. LXXI. 15. Nair. says विक्षेपयामि.

*dim*—Cf. Yas. IX. 1.

*avavaitya*—Orig. 3/1 f. of *avavan̥t*.† As much; Barth. (Wb. 175) takes it as 7/1 used adv. Nair. says तावन्मात्रेण.

*bāzas-ca*—Kan. takes this as 2/1 of the n. stem and trans. “length” (Dict., p. 381) and *bāzō* below as adj. 1/1 meaning “long”. Barth. (Wb. 962) seems to take it as “in height” (7.1?)‡. Nair. says पिण्डेन. Mills takes it in both places as “large”.

*fraθas-ca*—Nair. says शृङ्खलेन. Kan. takes this in both places as he does *bāzas-ca*. Mills in both places takes it adj. and trans. “wide”.

*pairi-tanuya*—1/1 opt. pres. atm.

*īm*—1/1 f. *iyam*.

*zā*—1/1 f. The stem is *za/əm* (झा). Jack. (A.G., § 318) explains this form as from \**zrē* (?) + *s*. The declension of this word is apt to be confounded with that of *zyām* (रिम), winter (Reich. § 384). Cognate are Grk. *χαμαί*, Lat. *humī*, Russ. *zemlyā*; Pers. زمی (zami) is a derivative.

*asti* . . . *fraθas-ci*—Nair. trans. अस्ति च इयं जगती तावन्मात्रेण पिण्डेन यावती शृङ्खलेन. Haug and Mills regard this sentence as *Pāzand*, i.e. an explanatory parenthesis. *bāzo* is length, the meaning usually given is “height”. *fraθas-ci* refers to the breadth. Kan. takes these words as adj. f. 1/1 (Dict., p. 381).

8. *vaocē*—1/1 ātm. plpft. *√vac* (Reich.); Kan. takes it as pft.

*yaŋ ahumaŋ yaŋ ratumaŋ*—Barth. (Wb. 284) trans. “which contains the words *ahu* and *ratu*”. Mills also seems to agree with this idea. Haug trans. “about the heavenly lord and the earthly master”; and Kan. follows him when he says, “referring to the *ahu* and to the *ratu*”. The same two words occur also in Vis. I. 5. and Vis. II. 7. and the Pah. commentary on the former passage (quoted by Barth.¶) says: “that divine being (*mēnuk*) upon the path to whom one finds the Lord and the Teacher”. Nair. says, यत् स्वामिन् यत् गुरुमन् (इदं एतस्मात् प्रकटं यत् स्वामिनो गुरोर्यज्जगत्). The meaning seems to be that the *Ahuna Vairya* leads a man to *Ahu* and to *Ratu*.

*avaiŋhe*—6/1 m. That yonder. “That heaven as contrasted with this earth”.\*\*

\* परितन् in RV. has a similar sense, used with acc.; परि द्यां जिक्रया तनत् RV. VII. 72. 8. † Kan., Dict., p. 52. ‡ See Reich. § 355. || S. 13 E., XXXI, p. 262, fn. 3, where he says that this refers “to the wording of the *Ahuna*”. ¶ Loc. cit. The Pah. passage runs: *ān mēnuk kē X<sup>o</sup>atōd u dastawar dārēnd pa rās i ōi*. \*\* Reich. A. R., p. 174.

*aṣṇō*—6/1 of *asan*. See *asmam* verse 1 above.

*dāghōit*—5/1 m. Creation. The usual form of the word is *dāhi* (see below, the last word of this verse).\* The variant *dāghi* is found only here. Cf. Skt. *धाति* (dwelling place) which occurs in RV., IV. 55. 7, and in other places.

*-paitištānayā*—Cf. *maidyō-paitištānās-ca* (Yas. LVII. 6; Sel. II).

*narē aṣaonō*—Nair. as usual following the Pah. tradition takes this as a proper name and says *नरात् सुक्ताकनात्. (गद्व्योमदीत्)*; cf. above verse 2. It may be noted that in Yas. XII. 7 (Sel. V.). Nair. says only *नरं पुष्पाकनम्*.

*zāθāt*—5/1 of a noun from  $\sqrt{zan}$  (*जन्*), to be born. Birth. Cf. Yas. XLIV. 3 (Sel. XVI).

*hū*—6/1 of *hvar* m. Sun. cf. Yas. LVII. 10 (Sel. II). Har. takes this as equivalent to *hu* (हु), good and compounds it with *θwarštō*.†

*θwarštō* (अπ.)—Barth. (Wb. 796) takes this as 7/1 of *θwaršti* f.‡—from  $\sqrt{\theta waras}$  to cut out, to create. Kan. takes *θwarštō-kahrpya* as a comp. 7/1, taking *θwarštō* as p.pt.pass. of  $\sqrt{\theta waras}$ . (Dict., p. 237), and trans. “created-shape”. The loc. may be due to the idea of creation *into* a shape. Haug takes *hū θwarštō kahrpya* as “sun-composed matter”; Nair. says *सूर्यस्य विनिर्मितकायात्*. The loc. ending *-ya* is due to “an enclitic postpositive *a*” which is added to the regular ending *-i*.|| Cf. also the endings *-āda* (5/1; Yas. IX. 4)¶ and *-šva* (7/3; Yas. IX. 5)¶).

*ape* (अπ.)—After (in the sense of time); Barth., Wb. 82. Thus also Kan. in Ij. Vis., p. 90. But in ftn. 5 on the same page he suggests that it may be 7.1 of *apa* wish ( $\sqrt{ap}$ , to wish) and he gives this latter rendering in his Dict. (p. 33), where he quotes another passage: *yā me daēnām mādza-yasnīm zras-ca dāt apae-ca aotāt* (Yt. IX. 26\*\*), which he trans. (Kh. A. b. M., p. 261)—“Who (Drvāspā) may fix her faith†† in my law of Mazda-worship and may proclaim her wish”. But in Dict. (p. 463) he quotes the same passage with the v.l. *api-ca aotāt* and trans. *api-vaṭ* as “to learn”, “to come to know”.‡‡ Haug trans. the word *ape* “before”, and renders the whole sentence *para hū . . . dāhim* by “before the Sun-composed matter for the creation of the archangels”. Kan. quotes this|| with the remark that the Ameshaspendis, according to this idea, would seem to have been born from the solar radiance. Mills remarks on Haug’s trans.¶¶ that this “would give us a materialism”. He himself renders the passage thus: “before this sun with its body made for the acquisition of the creation of the

\* *dāhi* occurs only in one other place besides this verse, viz., Yt. XIII. 77; Barth. Wb. 744.

† Quoted by Kan., Ij. Vis., p. 90, ftn. 5.

‡ Reich (§ 363, ftn. 3) explains the f. 7/1 ending in *-ō* as due to the influence of the *u*-stems. The syntax of the loc. as here is explained in § 519.

¶ Jack., A.G. § 222.

¶ Sel. I.

\*\* Sel. XXII, Part 2. The words quoted are the words of Z.

†† The word *zras* is cognate with Skt. *वृद्ध* in *वृद्धा*.

‡‡ Cf., Yas. IX 25, Sel. I. See Barth.

Wb. 41, where he compares *api-aot* to Lith. *paįanta*, impression.

|| Ij. Vis., p. 70, ftn. 5.

¶¶ S.B.E., XXXI, p. 262, ftn. 4.

Bountiful Immortals”—explaining further: “Enabling us to receive the blessings which they bestow through the influence of the sun”.\* Nair. says अनालोके च अमराणां गुरुणां दत्तम् which is rather inexplicable.† If we take Barth.’s trans.—“before the creation of the sun . . . but after that of the Holy Immortals”—the idea implied is that the Immortals being parts of the Almighty Himself have in a sense co-existed with him, before they were “created” as individual entities. On the whole it were best to take *ape* as a variant of *aipi* (अपि)‡ and to trans. it by “even”, construing *para* and *dāhim* both with *hū* and with *Aməšanəm*.

9. *frā* . . . *vavaca*—Barth. (Wb. 1332) says that here (and only here) the word is used in a “pregnant” sense of “calling forth (into existence) through Speech”. The idea seems to be that of creation through the power of sound or of the *mantra* corresponding to the Grk. idea of the music of Apollo, or of the *λόγος* in *St. John*, I. 1. Haug also translates the same way. Kan. and Mills merely say “declared”.

*mē*—Reich, omits this word in his trans. Mills takes it as governed by *vavaca* and trans. “declared to me (*Zarəuštra*)” and adds (p. 262, fn. 7): “Of course fictitious, as Z. had long been among the dead”. Kan. follows Mills, but does not try to explain who the “me” may be. Haug. trans. “my two spirits” and explains: “The two spirits united in Ahura Mazda, as the one God, are *Spəntō-Mainyuš*, ‘the beneficent spirit’ and *Ayro-Mainyuš*, ‘the hurtful spirit’”.§

*spanyā*—1/1 com. of *spənta*. Holier (Barth., Wb. 1612). Cf. *Mainyū* . . . *yayā spanyā ūti mraot yēm angrəm*, the two spirits . . . of whom the holier spoke thus to the hurtful one (Yas. XLV. 2.). This is of course the *Spəntō Mainyuš* and *not*, as Mills understands it, Ahura.

*Manivā*—6/2.

*stīm*—2/1. Creation. See note on *ā-stiś*, Yas. LX. 1 (Sel. IV). The whole phrase *stīm* . . . *buḍyeintim-ca* is also found in Yas. LII. 1. and LXVII. 22.¶

*bavayintim-ca*—Lit. this is the philological equivalent of Skt. भवन्तीम्. And Barth. (Wb. 927) translates it lit. as pres. pt. of *√bū* (भू) “becoming”, i.e. about to come into existence. The three words *haiti*, *bavayinti* and *buḍyeinti* occur together elsewhere also—Yas. XXI. 4, Vis. XVIII. 2.\*\* and the two passages (Yas. LII. 1 and LXVIII. 22) noted above. In all these cases the Pah. trans. takes it in the sense of the p.pt. *būtā*. The Pah. trans. in these passages runs: *kēca hēnd*, *kēca būt hēnd*, *kēca bavēnd* (Barth., Wb. 933, note 5). Nair in the Yas. passages always translates वतमान, अतीत and भविष्य. Kan. and Haug support this traditional trans. which is in fact

\* S.B.E., XXXI, p. 262, fn. 4.

† Skt. Par., II, Note 111.

‡ Geld. notes a v.l. *api*.

|| P. 187, fn. 1; cf. also note on *Ayro-Mainyuš*, Yas. IX. 8. (Sel. I).

¶ Barth., Wb. 1602.

\*\* These two passages read the first word *həntəm* (m.); and the other two words correspondingly in the same gender.

the most obvious one. Mills trans. like Barth. but asks whether it cannot mean the past.\*

*šyaoθnō-tāitya*—Through the words beginning *šyaoθananām*; Barth. (Wb. 1713) takes this as 7/1 of *°tāitāt* (f.).† The word occurs only in one other place besides this—*šyaoθnō-tāitya havanaēibyō paitijagphōit*, “at the word *šyaoθananām* he shall spring to seize the mortar” (Nir. 81)‡. Similar in formation is the word *uštātāt* which designates (1) the portion of Ašəm beginning with *uštā asti* . . . (see Yas. XXI. 2. below) and (2) the opening verse of Gāθ. Ušt., Yas. XLIII. 1|| (used in Yas. XX. 4.¶ and Vis. XVIII. 1 and 2 in this sense).\*\* The -*tāt* is a secondary suffix corresponding to नानि (or -नात्) of Skt. In Avesta as also in Skt. the suffix has a general abstract signification “but opinions are at variance as to its nature”††. We often find the -*tāt* used almost as an independent word, e.g. *yavaē-ca††. tātaē*, “for eternity” (Yas. LXII. 6) as contrasted with *yavatātaē* (Yt. X III 50). The words *Haurva-tāt* and *Amarata-tāt* show the same suffix. Barth. trans. *šayōθnō-tāt* into Ger. as “*šyaoθna-tum*”, i.e. the (words beginning) *šyaoθananām* (Wb. 1713) and similarly *uštātāt* he renders by “*ušta-tum*” (Wb. 418). Mills||| and Kan. (Ij. Vis. and also Dict., p. 560) trans.: “With reference to the performance and realisation ‘of the actions of a life devoted to Mazda’.”¶¶ Haug trans. “Through the operation of the actions of life towards Mazda”. Reich. (A.R., p. 175) says “by (speaking) the passage *šyaoθananām*, viz. *šy. a. M.*”

10. *uxdanām*—Prayers. Barth. translates the word (here as well as elsewhere) by revelation or “words revealed by a divine being”\*\*\*

*uxdotama* (āp.)—Lit. that which is most a prayer; i.e., the greatest or the most efficacious prayer. Mills says “most emphatic”. Nair. says वाक्योभ्यो वाक्यतमम् (किल मूलतमम्).

*yāis* (v.l. *yāi*)—Reich.††† says that 3/3 is used for 1/3 and cites Yas. LVII. 17 (*vispāis ayān-ca xšafnas-ca*)†††. Jack. notes that *yāis* is used as a general plural case. This he notes is often the case with 3/3 terminations.|| ||

*vaocē*—Barth.¶¶¶ takes this as 3/1 pass. √*vac*. He takes the following two verbs also the same way. Haug and Kan. take this to be 1/1, and the latter apparently takes *yāis* as an irregular form of 2/3 of *ya* (m.).\*\*\*\* Nair. says यः कदाचित् प्रकष्टं श्रवोचत्.

*mrūye*—Mills asks (p. 262, ftn. 10): “Can *mrūyē* (-*vē*) be a third singular like *ghnē*, *isē*?” The ending -*e* is sometimes found for 3/1 atm.†††† *brue* as 3/1 atm. (pass. in sense) is found in RV., V. 61. 8 (उत वा नेनो ब्रुवतः पुनो इति ब्रुवे पणिः).

—S.B.E., XXI, p. 262, ftn. 8.

† Can it not be 3/1 of *°tāiti* (f.)?

‡ Dar., S.B.E.,

IV, p. 355. || Sel. XVI, last verse. ¶ See below p. 194.

\*\* Barth., Wb. 418.

†† Whit. § 1238.

‡‡ From *yava*, time, duration; cf. *yave* (Yas. LX. 7, Sel. IV).

||| S.B.E., XXXI, p. 262.

¶¶ “Through the state of action”, Mills adds in a ftn. \*\*\* Wb. 331.

††† A.R., p. 175; and

Reich., § 427.

††† Sel. II. above.

|||| A.G., § 229 and 402; see also Kan., A.G., p. 148, ftn. 8.

¶¶ Wb. 1331. \*\*\*\* A.G., p. 148. ††† Jack., A.G., § 450 and § 518. 1. ii (ftn. 5) and Whit. § 613.

*vaṣṣyete* (v.l. *yeite*)—Kan. takes the verbs *vaoce* and *mrūyē* as 1/1 but he takes this as 3/1 (pass.); Haug also takes similarly.

*ana*—Barth., Wb. 112 ff. takes it as a pron. used substantively, referring to the prayer.\*

*avavat . . . yaθa yat*—So much . . . that (Barth.)†. Cf. *avavata aojaṇha yaθa paṇca narō*, “with as much strength as if (there were) five men”, Ven. XV. 10.

*uxḍata* (āπ.)—Word-effectiveness (Reich., A.R., p. 175). Barth. takes similarly‡. The word is fem. with *-tā*-suff. Kan. (Dict., p. 95) trans. the word by “praiseworthiness”, but in Ij. Vis. he says “worth” (लीखाकन). Nair. says तत् एतावत् वाक्यम् (किल एवं कार्येऽस्ति)।

*yat*—If.

*diṭ*—Barth., Wb. 685 reads thus, but later, Wb. 1553, he reads *dim*. Reich. also (A.R., p. 175) gives both the variations within half-a-dozen lines. There is an enc. pro. *di* (*day*) which shows a few sporadic forms. These forms may be used as referring back to a previous substantive or sometimes as anticipatory||. The forms are *dīm* (2/1 m. f. n.); *diṭ* (2/1 n.), *dīś* (2/3 m. f.) and *dī* (2/3 n.)¶. Kan. also mentions a form *dam* (2/1 m.)\*\* Kan. puts a stop after *astvā* and trans., “its worth is equal to the whole corporeal world”, evidently omitting the *yat*.††

*āsaṣṣat*—3/1 s-aor. subj. par. *√sak*‡‡ with *ā*, to hold in memory.

*saṣṣās* (v.l. *saśās*, *saśās*, *saṣṣyās*)—1/1 pres. pt. par. *√sak*. Kan. trans. “learner”, or “pupil”.

*dadarānō*—1/1 pft. pt. atm. *√dar* (४)||||. Holding in mind, retaining in mind. Kan. trans. *āsaṣṣat . . . dadarānō*: “the learner if he studies diligently”, taking the last word as “diligently”.

*ni pairi . . . haraite*—The atm. is here used reflexively. It means “protects itself from (*pairi* with abl.)”¶¶. Cf. *niṣhaurvaiti*, Yas. LVII. 16 and *hiṣārō*, Ib. 17. (Sel. II).

*iriṭyāstāt* (āπ.)—5/1 f. pres. pt. par. *√raeθ*. Death. Cf. *iristanām* Yas. XXVI. 7.

11. Kan. takes this verse as spoken by Z.

*frāvaoce*—Pass. as in previous verse, Mills and Haug trans., “I (Ahura) have proclaimed”. Kan., however, takes it as pass. and trans., “has been declared unto me (Z)”.

*saṣṣaēm* (v.l. *siṣṣaēm*, Barth.; *siṣṣim*\*\*\*) (āπ.)—Adj., “worthy to be

\* Reich., A.R., 175. † Wb. 176. ‡ Ib. 392; “Spruchtum sva. Spruchgewalt,—wirksamkeit”. || Ib. 684 ff.; and also Reich. § 580. ¶ Reich., § 398; Jack., A.G., § 396. \*\* A.G., p. 141. †† Or does he take *yat diṭ* together? ‡‡ *√sak* means “to learn”, “to understand”, Skt. शक् and सिच् are connected. |||| Barth. Wb. 890. ¶¶ Ib. 1787. \*\*\* Ib. 1580.

learnt". Used with dat. of the person. Nair. says शिक्षणीयम्. Barth. takes it as a sort of desid. pt. (*Grundriss d. iran. Phil.*, I, § 320). Mills\* suggests another way of taking this sentence: "it has been declared to us, the learner and the one in charge of the ritual". Haug trans., "(I) repeated"; Kan. says "in order to be taught".

*hiṣmāirim-ca* (अपि.)—Pft. pt. Best to take it like the previous word *saxšaēm* and trans. "worthy to be thought over". The word lit. means "worthy to be remembered" (अस्मर, स्मर, स्मृ-स्मर) and Kan. takes it thus. Nair. says उदीरणीयम्.

*yaθna* (v.l. *yaθana*, Reich.)—Barth. takes it as an indec. and trans., "and indeed"†. Kan. takes it in the sense of "so that"‡, but in his Ij. Vis. he apparently omits to trans. this word.

12. *yaθa*—Geld., Barth., and Reich. print this *ya θ a* as if it were a quotation from the text. Haug takes it in the ordinary sense, "as" or "when".

*frā . . . āmraot*—Kan. trans. "has recited with understanding". Reich.|| calls it "an universal injunctive".

*iða*—Refers to the beginning of the hymn.

*dim*—Reich. thinks it refers to Z. Kan.¶ takes it as referring to Ahura Mazda. Haug merely says "it" without further explanation.\*\*

*ahūm-ca ratūm-ca*—Kan. strangely enough follows Haug here in taking *ahu* to be the spiritual leader and *ratu* as the earthly sovereign, दीन तथा दुनियाना वडा. Usually he takes it the other way††. Mills trans. "Lord and regulator". Nair has स्वामिने गुरवे च.

*ādadaṭ* (v.l. *°dadṭ*)—Geld., Barth. and Reich. print *ā d a d a ṭ*. Kan. trans. "appoints" (मुकरर करेवे). Nair says दधानि and adds by way of explanation किल वपुः आचार्याय दत्ते.

*iθa*—Thus, in this manner. Cf. इत्या††, इत्यम्. Reich. prints *i θ a* for he thinks the word is meant for *aθā* in the first line of the hymn, hence a quotation. Geld. thinks that *iθa* is a variant of *iða*||. Mills adds by way of explanation, "by thus reciting these authoritative words". Nair. says एवम्. Kan. says "likewise" (तथा).

*dim*—Kan. takes it, consistently with the previous *dim*°, as referring to Ahura Mazda and so do the others. Nair. seems to refer it to the *dāmabyō*, ताः याः . . . दृष्टयः.

*para-cinasti*—/kaes with *para*; Barth. says that in exegetical texts like this it means "to refer to" and is used with the acc.¶¶ Kan. (Dict., p.

\* S.B.E., XXXI, p. 263, fn. 1.

† Wb. 1250.

‡ Dict., p. 421.

|| § 660.

¶ Ij. Vis., p. 91, fn. 4.

\*\* Probably referring to the hymn itself, see his trans. of the next

verse. †† See his Dict., p. 430.

‡‡ Grass, Wb. 204.

¶¶ Quoted by Barth., Wb. 366, note 2.

¶¶ Wb. 430.

181) takes the word as from √*cit* (7th or रुच्-class) with *para* meaning “to acknowledge,” “to regard”. Haug says “recognises as prior”. Nair. has आसादयति .

*manas-paoiryāēibyō dāmabyō*—Creation prominent in possessing mind. Kan. explains this to refer to humanity. Haug trans. “the creature, the first being the Mind”.\* Mills trans. “creatures who have ‘the mind’ as their first” and adds (S.B.E., XXXI, p. 263, fn. 3), “see *dazdā manayhō* coming ‘before’ *šyaobnanūm aṇhāuš*, *xšaθram* and *vāstārem*.” Reich. says “for the creatures with the first thinking (?)”, and he says “according to the Pahlavi translation these creatures are *Gayomart* . . . and the first creature of the good creation”;† and he adds the word “obscure”. Barth. (Wb. 1126) says “first in thinking” (der erste im Denken). Nair. apparently following the Pahl. version says एवं ताम्यः आसादयति याः होमिउदस्य मनसि प्राक्तनाः सृष्टयः (किल सृष्टीः प्रवर्तमानाः कुर्वन्नास्ते । होमिउदमनः प्रमोदकरः) ॥\* Haug seems to have hit the true sense; Ahura is the first of the Holy Immortals.‡

*y a θ a . . . a θ a*—These are quotations. Haug trans. these words in the usual manner. Kan. trans. the whole sentence rather lamely: “(such a person) acknowledges him as the greatest of all creatures”; he, however, admits this weakness of his renderings and thinks it might have been better.¶

This verse and the next two are very obscure in construction. The words are not difficult. Nair. is more than usually involved in these verses. Kan. does not even attempt the verses 13 and 14 for the reason that he cannot offer a connected rendering of the whole.

13. *hujitiš*—1/1. Good beings (Haug); amenities of life (Mills); good conduct of life (Reich.); happy life or the happiness of life (Kan., Dict.); good life (led according to the teaching of the Scriptures) (Barth., Wb. 1821). Nair. says सुजीवनि. Mills thinks that *Mazdā hujitiš vaṇhēuš* is a quotation from an earlier and lost version of the Ahunavar.¶

*brītim ūkaēšəm*—Third sentence (Mills); third proposition (Reich.). Barth. understands the word *ūkaēša* here to mean a single sentence of the scriptures or a single doctrine or dogma\*\*. The first two teachings have been given in the previous verse when explaining the two phrases beginning with *yabū* and *aθā*, and the word *vaṇhēuš* now introduces the third teaching contained in the Ahuna Vairya.

*ādrənjayeiti*—√*drang* + *ā*, to affirm, to fix††. I have followed the trans. of Barth.‡‡

\* The Immortals with Good-Mind at their head. † In the Pahl. as given in the version of West (S.B.E., XXXVII, p. 357), there seems to be no mention of *Gayomart*. Perhaps Reich. thinks of some other Pahl. text. The trans. as given by West of the Pahl. version is given at the end of these notes. ‡ See above, p. 64 (top). ¶ 1j. Vis., p. 91, fn. 5. ¶ S.B.E., XXXI, p. 263, fn. 1. \*\* Wb. 813. †† Barth., Wb. 772. ‡‡ 1b., loc. cit., and 1721.

*im*—This is an enc. pron. *i*, of which the following forms are found. 2/1 m. *im*; 2/1 n. *it* (G.A.), *it* (G.A.)\*; 1/2, 2/2, and 8/2 *i*; 1/3 n. *i*; 2/3 m. *is*, n. *it*; Mills refers it to Ahura and Haug to Ahunavar.

*Managhe*—4/1. I take this word to refer to Vohu-Manō. Nair mentions मन्त्र here.

*fradaṣṭārem*—Teacher or Master. The word is used in Gā<sup>9</sup>. Ahu. (XXXI. 17) for Ahura Mazda: *zdī nē Mazda Ahurā vaṇhēuš fradaṣṭā managhō†* (Barth., Wb. 982). Mills trans. "one who indicates (the truth) to mind".

*aētavaitya*—Barth. (Wb. 18-19) takes it as the 7/1 of *aētavan†* used adv. and trans. "therewith".

*kārayeiti*—Caus. √har. Makes out to be, i.e. points out.||

14. *ya† dim . . . dāmān*—Reich. call this passage "obscure. Haug trans. thus:—

"And he acknowledges it for the creatures through Mazda, so (he does) this, that the creatures are his". Mills says: "And when he acknowledges Him for the creatures thus, 'O Mazda!'¶ he acknowledges Him (as their ruler) when he assigns the creatures to Him thus". The order of words here is very obscure—this being the beginning of prose style is necessarily involved like that of the *Brāhmaṇas* in Skt.

*M a z d ā i*—Geld. reads *M a z d a*, but says in his footnote (2): "So all Mss. Bb. 1\*\* above, *Mazda yiθa††—Mazdāi iθa?*" I have adopted his suggestion here and take the word as a quotation.

*dim* (v.l. *dēm*, *d . . .*)—Geld. and others read *tēm*, but Geld. notes the other v.l. mentioned here as well as the *dim*. I have adopted this reading to keep up the uniformity with the preceding verses; as referring to Ahura Mazda.

*ahmāi*—4/1 used for 6/1. Cf. *ahurāi* in the Yaθā (Sel. VII. a).

*ta† . . . ṣṣaθrem*—The words also occur in Yas. LIII, 9 (Gāθ Vah.), *ta† Mazda tava ṣṣaθrem yā arəzajyōi dāhī drigaovē vahyō*.

*d r i g u b y ō* etc. (v.l. *d r ə°* Reich. and Haug)—Note that in the quotations the full text is not given, and often only the crude words (uninflected are quoted). The last sentence (*d r i g u b y ō . . . Spitāmāi*) is characterised by Reich. as obscure. Haug connects it on with the following words up to the end of the verse. His trans. follows closely the Pah.

\* Used as a particle only, Skt. इत्. † Jack., A.G. § 397. The *im* is not to be confounded

with *im* (इयम्) which is the 1/1 f. of the stem *acm*. It may be noted that for the *im* in verse 12 Geld. notes the v.l. *aēm*, *yim* and *ym* (?). ‡ Sel. XXXIV, Part II. || Barth.

Wb. 488; he compares Skt. चक्षतात्. ¶ He adds a footnote: "Reading Mazda (?)"—S.B.E., XXXI, p. 283, fn. 4. \*\* See his *Prolegomena*, p. II. †† The letter *y* here has got the

medial form and hence it may be read the other way also. This MS. Geld. notes is a carefully written one on the whole.



version. He says “(The phrase) *dragubyo vāstāram* (‘protector for the poor’) acknowledges, as a friend to Spitama, the five phrases, etc. “Some-what similarly also Nair.: यः दुर्वलेभ्यो आचारं आखादयन्नाले । (किल शुभं तेभ्यो कुर्वन्नाले) । यथा मित्रं स्थितमाय पंचन्यायौ भूतः ॥ etc.

*yatha*—As it were.

*urvaθem*—Friend, Barth. derives it (with a query) from  $\sqrt{var}$  to choose.\* Cf. *kō urvaθō Spitamāi Zarathuštrāi nā Mazdā?* Yas. LI. 11.†

*Spitamāi*—4/1 for 6/1? Or is the Av. idiom the same as the Eng. “friendly to a person”.‡

*panca-ikaeša*—Geld. prints these separately. I have made them into a comp. “five (-fold)-teaching”. The punctuation of Geld. is notable. He puts a stop *both* before and after these words. And he adds this valuable footnote: “All manuscripts connect *panca ik*<sup>o</sup> continuously with the foregoing. J3¶ alone has a large stop before *panca*, the translation however does not begin till *ikaeša*; cf. Yas. XX. 3, XXI. 2”.\*\* Hence I trans. the words separately as an ending—“(Thus) the five (-fold)-teaching”. The commentary proper ends here; what follows is a catechism (see below). The “five-fold teaching” is rather hard to explain, very probably the phrases beginning 1. *yaθā*, 2. *aθā*, 3. *vañhāus*, 4. *ṣṣaθram* and 5. *drigubyo* are meant.

*vispəm* is used in the sense of “whole”.

*fravākəm*—Haug trans. “recital”; Barth. says “revelation”.††

*haurum* (v.l. *ōrem*)—सर्वम्, the whole. Note that the word *vacah* in Av. is neu.

15. *vahištō hāmō kārayat*.—This *pāda* has been taken variously. “The same impressed it on (‘his’ or ‘our’?) memory” (Barth. and Reich.), taking *kārayat* to mean “impressed on the memory”††. Haug says “the Most-Excellent, the Eternal, caused it to be repeated (after him)”. Mills trans., “and as he pronounced it the best, so He caused it to have its effect, (He, ever) the same, (as He is)”, an unnecessarily involved and verbose rendering. Kan. (Dict., p. 585) takes, *hāmō* to be 8/1 used for 2/1||, and he trans. the word as “complete” or “whole” (संपूर्ण)-सम in the sense of “whole” or “complete” is found in the phrase सच्चिदनः समस्य (RV., VI. 27. 3 and X. 54. 3). Kan. trans. the whole phrase thus (Ij. Vis., p. 92): “and (accordingly He) the Highest made (it) complete”, and he does not explain what the “it” may be. But in a footnote (loc. cit., fn. 1) he suggests an illuminating alternative trans., “and (in accordance with the Ahura Vairya) the Highest fashioned the whole (creation)”; and he explains further that the

\* Wb. 1537. † Sel. XXXVI, Part 2. ‡ Cf. Whit. § 286. || Hence Nair’s and Haug’s trans. ¶ This is a MS. with the Skt. trans. of Nair., see Geld, *Prolegomena*, p. IV. Also note the words “large stop”. \*\* Kan. in XX, 3 (Kh. A.b.M. p. 137) supports my way of translating this passage. †† Wb. 995. ‡‡ Ib. 448. ||| May be due to “attraction” of *vahištō* or the influence of the  $\sqrt{kar}$ ; see Whit. § 268 a (कृष्यो रूपं कृता).

Ahunavar expressed as it were the thought or plan in God's mind regarding the creation and later the thought was bodied forth into the visible universe. Nair. says *इदिकारितया समयं संचिप्रो भूतः* (किल संपूर्णो भूत्)।

*hiθwaŋ* (āp.).—Barth. (Wb. 1813) takes it as an adv. used with *abavaŋ* in the sense of "seized with anxiety". He takes it from *hi* (सि) to bind. Kan. derives it from the same root but following the Pah. trans. (*tēz*) he trans. the word as "quickly"\* (Dict., p. 589) and he trans. the *pāda*, "the Evil One disappeared quickly". Mills renders it, "the evil one at once arose (to oppose Him)". Haug has got the very curious rendering, "owing to a pause Evil originated". There are two words found in the Gāθ. (each only once), *hiθa* and *hiθu* which are probably from the same *hi* and are therefore to be taken as guiding us to the true sense of the word *hiθwaŋ*. *hiθa* occurs in Gāθ. Ahu. (Yas. XXXIV. 10), *Spəntəm Armaitim . . . hiθəm Ašahyā* (Spenta Armaiti . . . the companion of Aša). *hiθu* is m. and means "union" or "companionship"; it occurs in Gāθ. Spən. (Yas. XLVIII. 7), *Ašā . . . yehyā hiθāušnā Spəntō* (Aša . . . in whose companionship the holy person)†. Kan. compares these words with *सेतु* in his Dict. (p. 589) and G.b.M., p. 175, ftn. Hence I trans. the word *hiθwaŋ* as "companion". As remarked above‡ the two Spirits are companions and are eternal. Such is the teaching of the Gāθas. In later Av. literature the Good Spirit is often identified (as here) with Ahura Mazda. This is clearly seen from the words *nōit*, etc., of this verse, which are quoted from Gāθ. Ušt. (Yas. XLV. 2).

*antara . . . āmrūta*—*antara* is a sort of verbal prefix here. Lit. "speak (or conjure) an evil to a distance", hence to repel at a distance.¶ Note that this form is atm. Haug says "kept him within bounds, restrained".

-*ca*—I take this in the sense of "but" here. Though the evil one was a companion to the Good Spirit still the latter kept the Wicked One far from himself.

*antara-uxti* (āp.).—3/1. Interdict¶. Lit. "speech to keep at a distance"; Mills says "repelling renouncement".

The three lines *nōit*, etc., are a quotation from Gāθ. Ušt. (Yas. XLV. 2), but the language has lost its Gāθ. peculiarities, e.g. long final. The orig. text very clearly brings out the association of the two Spirits in the work of creation and these words (ascribed here to Ahura Mazda) are in the orig. spoken by Spenta Mainyuš. The verse in the Gāθ runs thus:—

*aŋ fravaξšyā aŋhēuš mainyū pouruyē,*  
*yayā Spanyā ūiti mravaŋ yēm Angrēm :*  
*"nōit nā manā nōit sēnghā nōit xratavō*  
*"naēdā varanā nōit uxδā naēdā šyaoθanā*  
*"nōit daēnā nōit urvānō hacaintē".*

\* Nair. says *अडिति*.

† Barth., Wb. 1813, Kan. takes it slightly differently, G.b.M.,

pp. 174 f. ‡ Note on *Ayro-Mainyu* (Yas. IX. 8) pp. 25 f.; see also Yas. LXII. 2 and 17 (p. 64 and p. 74). See also Introduction. ¶ Barth., Wb. 1193 f. ¶ Ib. 133.

(Z. speaks): "I will speak of the Spirits twain at the first beginning of the world, of whom the holier thus spake unto the wicked :\* etc., etc.

*nā*—6/2. Our, नौ (आवयोः)†

*saṅha*—Precepts, doctrines. See *Kām nā Mazdā*, 2. (Sel. VI); Barth., Wb. 1575.

*ṅratavō*—Spiritual aspiration, Barth., Wb. 535.

*naēdā*—Nor yet; a sort of emphasised negative.

*daēnā*—Consciences (Mills); personalities (Reich.); creative ideas (Haug); religions (दीन) (Kan.). The last, however, in G.b.M. (p. 133) says अतःकरण and followed by *urvānō* this is the best rendering.

*hacinte*—✓*hak c* to harmonise mutually‡. Note atm.

16. From here begins what is called by Mills "catechetical Zand". Because from here begins a sort of catechism upon the Ahunavar. We have lost the clue to the signification of some of these questions and answers. But apparently these represent a hoary tradition.

*ōri-afsmēm*—Cf. Yas. LVII. 8. Consisting of three parts or *padas* (Kan.); three stages or metres (Mills); त्रिपदाणम् (Nair.).

*caṅru-pištṛam*—चतुर्विध्यम् (Nair). The word *pištṛa* in the sense of "caste" is used only here, and only in this passage of the Av. are the four classes or castes mentioned. They are mentioned by name in the next verse. In the various other places, where the classes are mentioned, only three are named, the last two being put together. A notable passage where three castes are mentioned is Yt. XIII. 89; *yō|| paoiryō āθravō*, *yō paoiryō raθaēštā*, *yō paoiryō vāstryō fšuyās*, (who is the first priest, the first warrior, the first agriculturist). The Gāθ. have different names for the three castes: (1) *airyaman* or *haṅxaman*, the Priest; (2) *χ<sup>n</sup>aētu* or *nar*, the Warrior; and (3) *vāstrya*, *vāstrya-fšuyant* or *vərəzəna*, the Husbandman.¶ The word *pištṛa* is derived by Barth. (Wb. 908) from ✓*paēš* (पिष्) to colour. He suggests that the word originally meant colour (cf. Skt. वर्ण which has had a parallel history). Mod. Pers. پیشه (*pīshā*) trade or profession is also a cognate.

*paṅca-ratu*—Belonging to the five chiefs (Mills); he adds by way of explanation "in the political world, without whom its efficiency is marred". These are the Lords of the house, etc.\*\* see below. Nair. says पंचगुरु.

*rāiti-haṅkərəθəm*—Cf. Yas. LX. 5. (Sel. IV). Barth. (Wb. 1520) thinks *rāiti* here may mean "helpfulness", "readiness to serve" (*Dienstwilligkeit*) or "charity" (*Freiebigkeit*). Both are appropriate. "Charity" is the

\* Mt., E. Z., p. 370.

† Reich. § 402.

‡ Barth., Wb. 1741.

§ Sc. Zaratūstra.

¶ Barth., Wb. 908; Reichs. A.R., p. 106.

\*\* Cf. Yas. IX. 27, p. 46 above.

best Eng. rendering here\*. *han̥kərəθem* (= संस्तुति) means fulfilment, or end to be reached. Mills says "it has a conclusion ending with a gift", referring doubtless to the last three words of the Yaθā. The Pah. version says "its summing up is with liberality".†

*kāiš*—Reich. thinks that 3/3 is here used for 1/3 (§ 427) and trans. "Which are its verses?"; Haug, probably more correctly, trans. "How (i.e. through what) (arose) its verses?"; Nair. trans. this sentence: किं नस्य प्रमाणम् ।

*humatəm*, etc. are explained further in verse 19.

17. *kāiš pištrāiš*—Mills trans. the ins., "With what classes of men?"

*vāstrya-fšuyāš*—Prosperity bringing agriculturist (Kan.);‡ the systematic tiller of the ground (Mills). The word *fšuyant* means lit. "possessing cattle" (*fšū*). Cf. *Fšūšas-ca Māθrō*, Yas. LVII. 22 (p. 77).

*hūitiš* (हृतिः)—Artisan. This name of the fourth class is found only here. Barth. derives it from *√hu*, to work (Wb. 1823)||. The Pah. form is *hutoχša*.

Nair. gives these classes as आचार्यः क्षत्रियः कुटुम्बी¶ and प्रधानिकर्मा (ordinary labourer ?)

For the rest of this verse Reich. says that "the grammar is corrupt, the cases do not agree".

*vispaya*—7/1. In all (i.e. in each of these classes). Barth. (Wb. 1463) calls this word uncertain.

*irina* (इरिना)—Evidently the text is corrupt here. There are many v.l. noted by Geld.—*irēna*, *arēna*, *arina*, *airina* and *vispa ayairini* (see below). Barth. does not even give this word in his Wb. Reich. (A.R., p. 266) says that the word is obscure. Kan. (Dict., p. 46) takes the word to be *arēna* and trans. "glory". He also gives other renderings, "duty" (Mills); "manner" (Har.). He himself takes it as 1/1 but he mentions that Mills and Har. take it as 3/1. And Kan. also notes that Geld. reads *irina* and that Mills compares it to क्षत्र. The whole phrase *vispaya irina hacimna naire ašaone* has been very variously rendered. Haug trans., "through the whole duty pertaining to the righteous man". Mills says "these classes therefore accompany the religious man throughout his entire duty (or experience\*\*)". Kan. says, "Glory (as it were) follows the holy man". Kan. also quotes the rendering of Har.:†† "In every way the righteous man should follow these professions with good thoughts, etc." Nair says सम्यं इदं‡‡ संस्त्रिय नरे मुक्तात्मनि सत्यमनसि etc. This follows closely the Pah. ver-

\* Of. "But the greatest of these is charity" 1. Cor. XIII. 13. † West, S.B.E., XXXVII, p. 460. ‡ आवादी करनार खेडुत. || Of. Skt. सुत, charioteer. ¶ A sanskritised form of Guj. कुणबी, an agriculturist. \*\* This he adds in fn. 3 at p. 265, S.B.E., XXXI. †† Ij. Vis.,

p. 83, fn. 1. ‡‡ Some MSS. omit इदं and some read समयम्.

sion,\* “who are the whole day (and) night with a righteous man”. The explanation of the समयं इदम् is very ingeniously given by Bharucha.† “The Avesta phrase *vispaya irina* is rendered into Pahlavi by *hamā yam lēlya* (all day and night) which Neriysesengh renders by समयं इदम्. How he comes to this meaning is unintelligible. If we adopt the reading of the MSS. which have समयं instead of समयं, it may approximate to the Pah. rendering. And then we may take the Avesta phrase as *vispa ayarēna* (all day), as is suggested by Spiegel. Compare also the Gāthic phrase *vispā yārē*.‡ Most probably Neriysesengh’s original rendering was समयं समयम् (all time) which has lost one or other of the two words through the ignorance of careless copyists”.

*ratuś-mərəta* (ṛπ.)—“Which give attention to the rulers” (Mills); “to appoint a spiritual || guide (Haug). Kan. says “honouring the leader” and explains¶ that lit. it means “remembering the leader”. Barth. trans. similarly, “he who follows the teaching of his *ratu*”. He thinks that the orig. form was *ratu-śma* (रतु)\*\* the ś usually dropped†† having reappeared.‡‡ Nair. says गुरुपाठिते (किल गुरु संयुक्ते) | The case seems to be 3/1 used instead of 4/1 (qualifying *naire*) probably due to case attraction of *manayha*, etc.

*daēnō-sāca*—Studying the religion (Kan.); fulfil the (laws) of religion (Mills); to fulfil religious duties (Haug). Barth. takes this to be 3/1 and trans. “he who has studied religion”. The word is also found in Yt. XIII. 115. Nair. says दैनिशिक्षिते.

*frādente*—Advance (Haug); prosper (Kan.); are furthered in righteousness (Mills). √*pād*/δ (orig. *frā* + √*dā*).

18. *Rajōit*—5/1. Kan. trans. “kingdom (राज)”; Mills says “regency or domain”. Haug takes it as a proper noun and says it is “a softer form of *Rayi* which variant of *Raya* seems to have been used, as we find traces of more than one form of the name in Greek writings”||. Barth. takes it the same way and gives three variant forms; *Ragi*, *Rayi* and *Raji*.¶¶ The name belongs to a town and a province as well.\*\*\* It is said to have been the home of Z. and of his mother. The Av. refers to this place in two passages, Ven. I. 15 and this present passage. Jack.††† discussing our passage: “This construction evidently signifies that the *Dāxyuma*, or governor, is everywhere the supreme head, but there is acknowledged one who stands above him as representative of the church, as well as state, the chief pontiff Zoroaster (*Zarathuštra*), or ‘the supreme Zoroaster’ (*Zarathuštrōtama*), as he is elsewhere termed (e.g. Yas. XXVI. 1.†††, Yt. X. 115, etc.). In the papal

\* West, S.B.E., XXXVII, p. 480.

† Skt. Par. II, note No. 114.

‡ This phrase is not

quoted in any Gāth. passage either by Barth or Kan.

|| Note that Haug takes *ratu* here, for

once at least, as the spiritual master. ¶ Ij. Vis., p. 93, fn. 2.

\*\* Wb. 1505. †† Cf. *marāzē*

above, verse 6. ‡‡ But the ś is added often if the prior member ends in s; see Jack., A.G., § 887, note 1. |||| Haug, p. 188, fn. 3. ¶¶ Wb. 1497.

\*\*\* Modern راج (Ras) in the province of Āzarbaijān. ††† Z., pp. 202ff; he gives there the whole discussion about *Raya*. ‡‡‡ Sol. III above.

see of Rayā, however the temporal power (*Dāxšuma*) and the spiritual lordship (*Zarathuštra*) are united in the one person. For some reason Rayā is plainly the seat of the religious government. The Pahlavi version (ad loc.) speaks of it in connection with Zoroaster as being 'his own district' (*mafā-i-nafāman*); the Sanskrit of Nēriyōsang glosses the allusion by asserting that Zoroaster was the fourth lord in this village, because it is his own—*तस्मिन् यामे यत् स्वीयं आसीत् गुरुवतुषीभूत्*. Rayā is plainly a centre of ecclesiastical power".

*zarathuštrōit*—5/1 of *°trōiš*.

19. Reich. thinks this verse is obscure and attempts no translation. The cases seem to be very much involved here also.

*manas-paoiryō*—The words are separate in some MSS. The word has already occurred in verse 12 above. The meaning assigned here to this comp. by Barth. is the same as he assigns to it there. The phrase also occurs in Vis. XIX. 1: *spəntō-dātāiš dāmān . . . dāmān manas-paoirya aḡavanō*. The first answer here is variously rendered by different scholars. The righteous original mind (Haug); the one who holds the holy thought to be before all other things (Mills); the first holy thought (Kan.); thinking truly of ancient sages (Har.);\* *सुक्तात्मना ध्यात्वा प्राक्तनेन (किल गुरुष्वीमर्देन बभूव) ॥* (Nair.). The real difficulty is to reconcile the cases here. In other respects the rendering of Haug is the best. It probably refers to *Vohu Manō* who is of course the ruler of all good thoughts, his "gift" to those who work for the Lord.

*māθra spəntā*—The bounteous word of reason (Mills).

*staotāiš* etc.—Through praise (Kan.); (that done) by praising creatures first in righteousness (Haug); it is that done with praises and by the creatures who regard Righteousness as before all other things (Mills). Mills adds an explanation of the word "praises" that it implies "ritual strictness based upon practical piety"†. Nair. says *स्तुत्या पुण्येन च प्राक्तनायाः दृष्टेः । (किल इजिनिः अपरं च पुण्यं यत् दृष्ट्वा क्रियते) ॥* It may be that the ins. here is used in the sense of nom. (Reich. § 427)‡. Barth. quotes this passage (Wb. 1589) without trans. and with a query (?).

20. *cim*—2 1 m.|| Whom. Nair. says *कस्मै* and thus also Kan. and Reich., "to whom". Haug says "what" and accordingly he trans. the answer, "the righteous (Ahuna Vairya) both spiritual and earthly". Mills takes the *cim* differently and trans., "whom did he announce?" and the answer is, "some one who is holy and yet both heavenly and mundane", and he explains this "some one" as "*Saošyānt*"¶. Kan. and Reich. trans. the answer, "to the spiritual and material righteous one". I think Mills is nearest the true sense: of the three questions in this verse the

\* Quoted by Kan., Ij. Vis., p. 93, ftn. 3. † S.B.E., XXXI, p. 266, ftn. 2. ‡ See also *kūi* in verse 16 above. || Barth., Wb. 422 (last two lines). It is also neu., Reich., § 401. ¶ S.B.E. XXXI, p. 266, ftn. 3.

first (*cim*) refers to the subject-matter of the revelation, the second (*cvq̄s*) refers to the status of the revealer and the third (*cvantəm*) refers to the position of the person to whom the revelation is vouchsafed.

*cvq̄s*—1/1 Barth., Wb. 601 says “in what capacity,” or “in which character”\*. This question refers to the revealer—Ahura Mazda. “What was he who proclaimed?” (Haug). Nair. says किमर्थम् . . . (कस्मै कामाय . . .)॥

*χṣāyamnō*—Cf. Yas. LX. 8 (Sel. IV).

*cvantəm*—2/1 m.† What kind of person was he to whom, etc. Mills takes it as an amplification of the first question. “Of what character (. . . the coming one)”. Haug takes it as practically a repetition of the second question, for he says “As what (did he proclaim it)?”

*avasō-χṣaθram*—Cf. Yas. IX.9 (Sel. IV). I have incorporated the rendering of Mills into mine. The ruler is a Sage-Ruler (राजर्षि) who has attained fullness of earthly power but has at the same time Wisdom enough not to use his power but according to the law of Aša.

21. *frasraoθram*—Loud chanting. Cf. *frasrūti*, Yas. IX. 14 (Sel. I). This word and the following three correspond to the *marāt*, *dr̥ṇjayāt*, *sr̥āvayāt* and *yazāite* of verse 6 above‡. Nair trans, these four by प्रकटाध्ययनेन, प्रकटं गायया and प्रकटं इजिष्या.

*framaraθram*—Low murmuring repetition (Barth., Wb. 987).

*fragāθrem*.—Singing aloud (Barth., Wb. 977). This is to be distinguished from the *chanting*. An exactly similar difference is to be found between the Sama Veda and the other words.

*fr̥āyāštīm*—Adoration or consecration (Barth., Wb. 1018). Mills says “its use in the full Yasna”.

#### Yasna XX.

1. Kanga—Khordeh Avesta ba Māenī (5th ed.), pp. 135-137.

2. „ —Yaçna Vispered (Gujarāti trans, 1886), pp. 94-95.

3. Mills—S.B.E., XXXI, pp. 266-268.

This Hā is also known by the name of *Frāmraoθ* from the first word. This constitutes a commentary on the Ašem. There is another passage in the Av. which praises the Ašem. That is the so-called Yašt XXI||. It is really the first section among the existing fragments of the Hādoxt Nask.¶

1. This verse is rather involved in construction. No two authorities are agreed in their translations.

Kan. puts a stop after *Mazdā*<sup>2</sup>; he takes the words *a š ə m* <sup>4</sup> . . . *asti*<sup>7</sup> with the following sentence, and as obj. of *frāmraoθ* he takes “the prayer Ašem” understood.

\* Qualis, in welcher Eigenschaft. † Barth., Wb. 601. ‡ Ib. 1003f. ¶ In Westergaard's edition. ¶ See Kan., G.b.M., pp. 386ff.

*para . . . cinasti*—See above Yas. XIX. 13 for the construction.

*aḥmāi*—I take “this” to mean earthly happiness.

*χ<sup>v</sup>aētave χ<sup>v</sup>aētātē*—This phrase occurs twice in the Av. and apparently both times in the same sense. The other passage is Yas. XXXIX. 5; *vayhēuš χ<sup>v</sup>aētūš χ<sup>v</sup>aētātā vayhēuš ašahyā θwā pairijasāmaidē*. Both words are from χ<sup>v</sup>a (ख) oneself, the first is the form with *-tu*-suff. (खतु) and the second is *-tāt*-suff. (खतानि) Barth. trans. this phrase as “possessions belonging to the (proper) possessor”\*. Kan. trans. “kinship with the kindred”, Mills says “property to an owner”. I take it to be “the nearest-possession of one’s-very-self”; and I take the 2/1 *ōtom* in apposition with *vahištē*”.

*āēšōm*—This is the first of the three “teachings”. See below verse 3. The verse being involved I give here the other renderings for comparison.

1. Kan. :

*Āšōm vohū vahištē asti†*—(uttering these words, the worshipper) acknowledges for Him the highest good just as if he were accepting the kinship of his kindred. *vohū vahištē asti*—(uttering these words, the worshipper, as it were) puts into practice the holy law.

2. Mills:‡

To this *Āša*, the holy ritual sanctity, one attributes the qualities of “good” and “best”, as one attributes property to an owner; thus this sentence *vohū vahištē asti* is substantiated (at once).

He adds by way of explanation: “It is carried into effect; possibly ‘rendered fit for praising’ (?)”||

3. Barth. (Wb. 1859).

(The words) *ašōm vohū vahištē asti* are so to be understood that to him the best good shall be the portion, i.e. like possessions to the possessor.

[Die Worte *ašōm v. v. a.* sind so zu verstehen, dass ihm das beste Gut zu teil wird, nämlich dem Zugehörigen als Zugehör.]

2. This verse too is excessively involved. I am very doubtful indeed of my own rendering which may be taken for what it is worth.

*uštātāitya*—7/1. Kan. (Dict. 113) trans. it as health, prosperity, happiness, etc. Barth. (Wb. 418) thinks that the word means “*ušta* -hood”¶ and thinks that in this passage it refers to the sentence *uštā asti*, etc. of the *Āšōm*. The word also occurs in Yas. XXI. 4 below when Barth. understands the first verse of *Gāθ*. *Ušt.* (Yas. XLIII. 1).\*\* Nair. says शुभप्रदति in both the passages. I am inclined to think that the word has a double signification here and in the other passage as well. Besides the meaning

\* See trans. quoted below. Barth., Wb. 1859. † See above, p. 193, about the construction as taken by Kan. ‡ Mills divides the verse by a stop at *asti*?, just as in the text here. || S.B.E. XXXI, p. 267, fn. 1. ¶ *Ušta*-tum. \*\* The first two lines of which are quoted in Yas. XXI. 3 (see below). Of. also *uštārotim* in Yas. LX. 6. (Sel. IV).



given by Barth., it means also "the winning of happiness", which is to be got by actively following the teaching given in the verse beginning *uštā ahmāi yahmāi uštā kahmāi-ci* (Yas. XLIII. 1).<sup>\*</sup> The religion of Z. teaches Karma-yoga, i.e., salvation through active good work for humanity. The same lesson is taught by the Yaθā (Sel. VII. a). It is mentioned that after death the soul of the holy man sits near the head (of the body ?) during the first three nights chanting the Ustavaiti Gāθā :

*asne vaγdanāi niškidaite Ustavaitim Gāθām srāvayō uštatatam nimraompō :*  
 "uštā ahmāi yahmāi . . ."<sup>†</sup>

*yathanā*—Geld. separates the words, but he notes this v.l. Cf. Yas. XII. 4 (Sel. V.) above. Barth. reads the words separately and explains *nā* as an enc. 1/1 of *nar*, a man. He says the word here has no meaning, but is merely a particle (Wb. 1030 and 1052).

*stāitya*—3 l (for 5/1 ?). Kan. says "strength" or "endurance" and compares the word *स्थिति*||. The word implies strength of the soul. It occurs only in one other place.||

† The trans. are so various that they may be given here :

1. Kan :

*uštā . . . ahmāi* (in repeating these words, worshipper) associates firmly every righteous man with every righteous man (i.e. righteous people mutually share each other's happiness)\*\*, just as every righteous man accepts happiness from every righteous man.

2. Mills :

*uštā . . . ahmāi* ; by this attribution of blessedness (the praiser) assigns every person (or thing) of a sacred nature to every holy person, and as one usually (?) and regularly (?) assigns every person or thing (?) that is holy to every holy man.

Barth. makes no attempt to trans. any part of this verse anywhere in his Wb.

I am not at all sure of my own rendering. I think there is some amount of "straining" apparent in it. But I give it for what it is worth as emphasising the "active" aspect of the Z. faith.

3. This verse has also been translated variously though it is easier in construction. I have made some changes in Geld.'s text and have indicated them in the footnotes on p. 170.

The first sentence is an exact parallel in its construction to *uštātāityu . . . para-cinasti* of the previous verse except that *para-cinasti* here stands at the beginning instead of at the end. I think that here we should construe *aṣāi vahištai aṣem* with this sentence, these words being taken both as a

<sup>\*</sup> The first two lines of which are quoted in Yas. XXI, 3 (see below). Cf. also *ustabōritim* in Yas. LX 6. (Sel. IV). <sup>†</sup> Hāθ. II. 2. <sup>‡</sup> See also Barth., Wb. 1240. || Dict., p. 537.  
<sup>¶</sup> *Frashang-i-Oim* quoted by Barth. (Wb. 1605). <sup>\*\*</sup> Ij. Vis., p. 94, fn. 6.

quotation as well as forming part of the commentary. I propose to make *aṣāi vahištai* as corresponding to *uštātāitya* of the previous verse and to take *aṣəm* as a proper noun defining the *māθrəm*. Thus the trans. would run:

*yaṭ aṣāi vahištai aṣəm*: (this phrase) affirms the whole hymn [*Aṣəm* on account of the best Righteousness (taught therein)] (to be) superior to every (other) hymn.

Kan. takes the *māθrāi* to mean "the knower of the *māθra*" and trans. the first sentence thus:

"(Repeating these words, the worshipper, as it were) accepts all the hymns for every knower of the hymns, just as he accepts power for Righteousness, etc."

Mills says:

"By these words the worshipper ascribes the entire *Māθra* (to *Aṣa Vahišta*) and ascribes all to the *Māθra*, as one ascribes the kingdom to Righteousness, etc."

*zbayan̄te*—4 1 pres. pt. *√zbay* (𐬀𐬵𐬀), to invoke.

*ṣəmāvōya*—4 3, युष्मद्\*. Mills very strangely trans. "to us".

*θrāyō-ṭkaēša*—The "threefold teaching" is 1. *aṣəm* etc., 2. *uṣtā*, etc., and 3. *yaṭ*, etc. For the construction see above *pañca-ṭkaēša* (Yas. XIX. 14). Kan. takes this as I do.

5. This is identical with Yas. XIX. 21 except for the name of the *bayṣm Aṣəm Vahištəm* here refers to the prayer *Aṣəm*. See Barth., Wb. 238f.

#### Yasna XXI.

1. Kanga: *Yaçna* and Vispered (Gujarāti trans., 1886), pp. 95-97.

2. Mills: S.B.E., XXXI, pp. 268-269.

This is the commentary on the third hymn—*Yeḡhe hātām*. Mills notes that the original form is Yas. LI. 22† and notes that the commentary here is not upon the original *Gāθ.* verse but upon its later version.‡

1. *yesnīm* (v.l. *yas°*)—Mills trans. "Yasna"; Kan. says "worthy of praise", Barth. says: "belonging to the Yasna". Mills trans. "a word for the Yasna"||.

*Mazdā*—6/1.

*dāta*—All trans. this as law¶, that which is fixed or settled. Kan. (Dict., p. 259) takes the word as 3/1. Nair. says योदते स्वामिने\*\* विद्यमानेभ्यः इजिदिम्. I propose to take the word as 3/1 of the p.pt. of *√dā*, to create.††

*Ahurahe*—Geld. apparently expects another word here; for he says in a footnote "so all MSS. except . . .". Did he expect *aphəuš*?

\* Jack., A.G. § 390. † The passage is quoted and discussed above p. 66. ‡ S.B.E., XXXI, p. 268, fn. 2. ¶ Wb. 1274. ¶ Barth., Wb. 726. \*\* Evidently reading *Ahurāi* (v.l. noted by Geld). †† See Kan., Dict., p. 259 (2. *dāto*).

*yaba haḍbiš jijiṣām*—Geld. takes these words with the next verse but not so Barth\*. Barth. takes *jijiṣām* as an abstract noun (f.) meaning "life". Kan. takes it as an adj. meaning "desirous of life" (6/7 of pres. pt. desid.). The word also occurs in Yas. XXXV. 8. Kan. takes *haḍbiš* as 3/3 of *haṇ* (pres. pt. of *ah*, to be) but trans. as if it were *hātām* (6/3)†. Mills construes like Kan., but trans. "among those who are destined to live", which he explains as meaning "fit to live, clean"‡. Yas. XXXV. 8 also has *hātām jijiṣām*. Nair. trans. here कुटुम्बीनां जीवितस्य आकांक्षी and in the other place he says वर्तमानैभ्यः जीवनं इच्छतः. I take *haḍbiš* lit. as 3 3 "with the Truth".

2. *Ārmaiti-paoiryayām* (अ०).—Those who have Ārmaiti at their head (Mills). This evidently refers to the last three of the Holy Immortals whose names are fem.‖ Kan. trans. the name *Ārmaiti* and renders the phrase as "those who are first in piety". Barth. (Wb. 337) takes similarly. This apparently is supported by Nair. who says संपूर्णमनसा प्राक्तनानाम्. But see the Pah. version.

*vahmēm*—Homage (Mills); glorification (Kan.). Cf. Yas. LVII. 6 (Sel. 11) above.

*Aməšaēibyo* refers, of course, to the Holy Immortals.

*θrāyō*—refers to the three lines composing the hymn.

*cim* etc. The text here seems to have been disturbed. This question should belong to verse 4 which should have come immediately after verse 2. Verse 3 should have been verse 4. For *cim* see above Yat. XIX. 20. *cim aoi* should be rendered "with reference to whom", "about whom".

*paiti*—Kan. takes it as equivalent of *paitiš* 1 1 (for 1/3) and trans. "lords"¶. Mills trans. as a prep. "to".

*yasnahe*—Mills renders "in the course of the Yasna".

3. *uštā . . . Ahurō*.—This is the first verse of Gāθ. Ušt. (Yas. XLIII. 1) and it is repeated at the end of each Hā of that Gāθā.\*\* I have indicated the spelling of the Gāθ. text in the footnotes on p. 172.

*yahmāi*—4/1 for 5/1 due to case attraction.

*vasa-xšayās* (Barth.†† separates the words in quoting the Gāθ. text).—The meaning is "ruler-at-will".

4. With this verse compare Yas. XX. 2 above.

*paitivaca*—3/1 Answer (Mills); sentence (Kan.); sentence or dictum (Barth., Wb. 833). The noun *paitivac* is used only here. Probably this refers to the *uštā ahmāi yahmāi* etc.

\* Wb. 609. See also Geld. text, note 4. † Ij. Vis., p. 96, fn. 2.  
 ‡ Dar. quoted at p. 67 above. ¶ Ij. Vis., p. 96, fn. 7.

† S.B.E., XXXI, p. 269,  
 \*\* See Yas. XLIV below.

Sel. XVI. †† Wb. 1383.

*paityāmraot* (अ०.)—Answered (Mills)\*; proclaimed (Kan.). Barth. notes that it takes two accusatives of the thing proclaimed and of the person to whom the proclamation is made (instead of the dat.).†

*uštātātē . . . uštātāitya* etc.—This is an involved sentence like Yas. XX. 2 above. Barth. (Wb. 418) understands *uštātāitya* to mean the verse quoted above in 3. This is a very satisfactory explanation. Kan. takes the word to mean merely “happiness”; Mills renders it as “state of Salvation”, which certainly is nearer the sense of the word *uštātāi*‡. There is a play on the two meanings of the word.

*vahištēm*<sup>18</sup> . . . *ašaone*<sup>23</sup>—Kan. trans. thus: “The Supreme (Ahura Mazda) proclaimed (the holy man to be) the best” and he adds‡ that he is not at all clear about this sentence. Mills takes many words as implied here and trans. as follows: “(Question. Who answered thus? Answer.) The best One. (Question. What did He answer? Answer.) The best thing. (That is) the best One, Mazda, answered•the best and the holy (answer) for the better and the holy man.”

This is a needlessly complicated and a very unnatural translation.

Barth. says|| :

“The Supreme Mazda has proclaimed the holiest believer (i.e. Z.) unto every holy believer.”

I propose to take *vahištēm*<sup>18</sup> and *vahištēm*<sup>24</sup> *ašavanēm*<sup>25</sup> to refer to the *māθra* (Yas. XLIII. 1) quoted above. The word *ašavan* is frequently used for various hymns especially for Gāthic verses, for Yasna Haptaṅhāiti and Staota Yasna¶. In the very next verse (5) the word is so used for *Yejhē Hātām*.

5. *hufrāyaštām*—Well-consecrated (Barth., Wb. 1830), Nair. says शुद्धप्रबोधन-रजितितया। Kan. says “well-praised”, Mills says “prominent”.

\* Mills overlooks the ā. † Wb. 1194. ‡ Ij. Vis., p. 97, fn. 4. || Wb. 1194. ¶ Barth. Wb. 252 (under *ašavan* I. 3. n).

## APPENDIX A.

### THE PAHLAVI VERSION OF THE BAYĀN YAŠT.

As could be seen the text of the Bayān Yašt (Yasna XIX-XXI) is very involved in places and is perhaps a corrupt version by later compilers at a period when much of the ancient Avesta lore had perished. Still there must have been remnants of traditional exegesis which had come down a long line of teachers and pupils and this is embodied in the Pah. version. I here give it *in extenso* from the English trans. by West (S.B.E., XXXVII, pp. 453-464). I do not give the numbers as given by West but the verses according to the Av. text: the numbers of West are indicated in brackets at the end of each verse. Nair., as has already been stated in the notes, has followed the Pah. very closely. The comparison between our modern philological and the ancient Pah. version composed purely from the ritualistic and orthodox point of view would be of extreme interest to the student.

Bakō Nask.\*

Pah. Yas. XIX—Bakō I.

[The beginning of the Ahunavairya of the Bakan.]†

1. Zarahuštra inquired of Ahuramazda thus: “(O) Ahuramazda, propitious spirit, creator of the world of embodied existences (and) righteous! which were those words, (O) Ahuramazda! that (were) spoken by thee for me (1-2).

2. before the sky, before the water, before the earth, before the [well-yielding]‡ cattle, before the plants, before the fire which is Ahuramazda’s son, before the righteous man [Gayomard] before the demons, [who remain] noxious creatures and mankind, before all embodied existence [the creation of sovereignty] (and) before all the excellence created by Ahuramazda, [which is owing to] the manifestation of righteousness?” (3)

3. And Ahuramazda spoke thus: They were the apportionment of the Ahunavairya, (O) Spitama Zarahuštra! [That spirit who would make the religion current, who has formed that religion from the Ahunavairya] which was spoken out by me for thee; (4)

4. before the sky, etc. (as in 2). (5)

5. Whoever chants that apportionment of the Ahunavairya, (O) Spitama Zarahuštra without talking [that is, he does not speak out in the middle of any of its difficult Avesta] (and) not without anxiety [that he

\* The Dinkart (IX. 47-49) gives an account of the contents of the Bakō Nask (the 4th of the 21). See also Dar., S.B.E., IV, p. xxxiv. † The brackets represent the italics in West. See next footnote. ‡ Words in square brackets [ ] have no equivalents in the Av. (S.B.E., XXXVII, p. 453, fn. 23). These are probably parts of the Pah. exegesis.

(may) slumber], (it is) like a hundred above any other authority of those of the Gāθās, when (one) chants (them) without talking, (or) not without anxiety; [thus it becomes (fit) for the ceremonial]. Whoever chants (it) while talking, (or) without anxiety [thus it becomes fit for the ceremonial] (it is) like ten above any other authority of those of the Gāθās. (6-8)

6. Whoever in that embodied existence of mine, (O) Spitama Zaraθuštra, recalls the apportionment of the Ahunavairya, [that is, seeks for (it),] and, further, mutters that which he recalls, [that is, shall accomplish (it) easily,] and, further, chants that which he mutters, [that is, fully understands its ritual,] and, further, reverences that which is chanted, [that is, shall celebrate the ceremony,] his soul I pass on to the best existence, three times over the Cinvaṭ bridge, I who am Ahuramazda, [that is, on that day (in) which he shall faithfully provide the ceremony it shall lead his soul three times unto (the world) yonder, and shall cause its happiness therein,] to the best existence, the best righteousness, and the best light. (9-11)

7. Also whoever in that embodied existence of mine, (O) Spitama Zaraθuštra, mutters the apportionment of the Ahunavairya, [that is, shall accomplish (it) easily,] (and) drops, [that is, cuts off,] either as much as a half, or as much as a third, or as much as a fourth, or as much as a fifth, [at a fifth the foundation (of the sin) is laid, at a half it becomes quite complete, and when he shall cut off the whole (it is) a *Tanāpūhar* (sin),\*] I twirl away the soul of him, I who am Ahuramazda, from the best existence, [that is, I would put it out] to such an extent and width is the twirling away as (that of) this earth, (and) even so the extent of this earth is as much as its width. (12-15)

8. This saying is proclaimed [a revelation] possessing an Ahu (and) possessing a Ratu [from which this is manifest, namely, the possession of a ruler and high priest. This, too, is said, that (it was)] before that sky (was) created, before the water, before the earth, before the plants, before the creation of the four-legged ox [which (was) the sole-created ox], before the creation of the two-legged righteous man [who (was) Gayomard], (and) before that sun of definite form [the body of the sun] (was) created as an acquirement of the archangels.† (16-20)

9. It (was) [likewise] proclaimed to me by the spirituality of propitiousness, [it likewise became possible for the spirituality of propitiousness to say (what was) said to Zaraθuštra,] concerning the whole material (existence) of the righteous who are, who have been, and who (will) arise, as to the progress of work, [that is, while they shall perform for it that which is specified by it, and good works shall arise through them,] (that) this work, among the living, is for Ahuramazda, [that is, that which they may perform, suitable for Ahuramazda, they shall so perform as is declared by this *far-gard*‡]. (21-23)

\* Defined in Dinkart (VIII. 20. 65) as threatening a person with an uplifted weapon. † The Holy Immortals. ‡ Section. For this word see below introductory note to Sel. X.

10. This, too, is the most expressive [most in effect] of those statements which (were) ever spoken forth [till now], (or which one) speaks forth [at present], (or shall) speak forth (even henceforth); for it is (through) such a statement [such in effect] as that, (if) the whole embodied existence learnt it (and) having learnt, [that is, they shall accomplish (it) easily,] they retain (it) [that is, they should rely upon it,] abstinence from passing (away) would be quite masterful, [that is, they become immortal]. (24-26)

11. This, too, is our saying spoken forth, [preserved among the revelation mentioned (in) this *fargard*,] which is learnt [that is, they shall accomplish (it) easily,] and (one) recites, [that is, he utters it in a ceremonial,] thus (for) any one whatever of the beings whose righteousness is best, [that is, should he do it for a ceremonial, he becomes (fit) for it; it is when he utters this in a ceremonial (that) his soul becomes immortal]. (27)

12. As (it is) here spoken forth, [that a ruler and high-priest are to be maintained; as these things are so spoken, (and) as this law is so,] even when it gives him an Ahu and a Ratu, [that is, it gives up (his) person to the priestly assembly] so it is thereby taught to him (that) the thought of Ahuramazda is the creature (with) the first thinking, [that is, the Gāthic lore is set going by him;] whatever teaches this [is the person of him who is king of kings, who] is the greatest [of men] of every description, [that is, it possesses a person in the king of kings;] (and) so it is taught (that) the creatures are for him, [where the Gāthic lore is set going by him]. (28-30)

13. Whatever is a good emanation for Ahuramazda, [that is, has an origin in his personality,] is through (the word) *vayhēuš* [which in the division becomes the beginning of] the third assertion here, whose recital is "he gives through Vohūman"\* [that is, the recitation which he utters properly is accomplished by him,] and, besides, here is that which Vohūman has taught, [that is, the reward and recompense which they give Vohūman, they attribute also to him;] whatever is a further indication by Vohūman,† [that is, anything which he may accomplish properly as a token, and is performed by him,] became so through this summing up [that is, its end occurred] in *šyaoθenanānām*; here among the existences was the summing up, [that is, it was its end]. (31-33)

14. What it teaches to the creatures of him who is Ahuramazda, is thus: he (who is) like him is he who is his own creature, [that is, even these people it tells something so, (and) thus they attain again, through purity, to the possession of Ahuramazda, just as Ahuramazda produced (them) through purity]. (By) "the dominion is for Ahuramazda"‡ it has taught, that he has made Ahuramazda his ruler, over his own person, [who shall perform that which is revealed by the Avesta;] and this is taught, (that) through him is the ministration of the poor, [that is, happiness is thereby caused by him,] which is friendship (for) the Spitama; [and the religion of Spitama became] (those) five assertions, [that is, the decrees in it were five,]

\* *dandā Manayhō*.† The word *Manayhō*.‡ *Xiθrem Ahurii*.

(which) were the whole enunciation of the saying, (and) the whole saying was that of Ahuramazda.\* (34-37)

15. For the sake of development Ahuramazda, [for cherishing the creatures] pronounced the Ahunavairya, and in its development there was a summing up, [that is, its end occurred]. Quickly, when destruction arose, [that is the destroyer,] and rushed in, even among the wicked he uttered [(as) resistance] this interdict:—"Neither our thoughts, nor teachings, [(as) I have not taught that which thou hast taught,] nor wisdoms, [for I consider wisdom as virtuousness, and thou considerest (it) as viciousness,] nor wills, [for my will is a virtuous wish, and thine a vicious (one),] nor words, [for I speak that which is virtuous, and thou speakest that which is vicious,] nor actions, [for my actions are virtuous, and thine are vicious,] nor religions [for my religion is the Gāthīc lore, and thine is witchcraft,] nor souls are themselves in unison, [for (as to) those who rely upon my things, and those who rely upon thy things, their souls are not in one place"]; he who said this, that even their souls exist, must thus say that (they are) not souls in unison (with) ours]. (38-43)

16. Also this saying, which Ahuramazda uttered, (has) the three degrees, the four classes, [priest, warrior, husbandman, and artisan,] the five chieftainships, [house-ruler, village-ruler, tribe-ruler, province-ruler and supreme Zarahuštra,] and its summing up is with liberality, [thus it is possible to make (it) completely for their own, when they deliver themselves up to the priests]. Which are the degrees of it? Good thoughts, good words, and good deeds; [they are, indeed, virtuous among the degrees of religion]. (44-45)

17. Which are the classes? The priest, warrior, husbandman, and artisan, who are the whole day (and) night with a righteous man, who are thinking rightly, speaking rightly, and acting rightly, who (have) recognised a priestly authority, [that is, possess a high priest,] who (have) taught the religion, [that is] have provided a ceremony,] (and) who, through their actions, are a furtherance of the world of righteousness, [owing to the work they accomplish]. (46-49)

18. Which are the chiefs? The house-ruler, village-ruler, tribe-ruler, province-ruler and Zarahuštra is the fifth (in) those provinces which are other than the Raya of Zarahuštra; (with) four chieftainship is the Raya of Zarahuštra. Which are the chiefs of that? The house-ruler, village-ruler, tribe-ruler, and Zarahuštra is the fourth; [that is, when he was in his own province, he also produced its period (of prosperity), who arises fourth]. (50-52)

19. How (was it) when through good thought, [that is, the religion remained in the degree of good thought]? When it arose first in a righte-

---

\* West says of this passage (op. cit., p. 459. fn. 1), "As the Pahlavi text of the foregoing interpretation is a commentary upon an Avesta commentary on an obscure Avesta text, it must be expected to be difficult to translate with certainty". These remarks may apply to the whole of this Bakō Nask.



ous thinker, [it arose in Gayomard, and he thought for it]. How, when through good words? When (it was) the bounteous text, [doing good]. How, when through good deeds? When (it was) the praise even of righteousness (by) the first creature, [that is, they shall perform the ceremonial, and also other good works, through the Gāθā lore]. (53-55)

20. Ahuramazda proclaimed; for what (was it) proclaimed by him? For the righteous spiritual and worldly (existence), [(for) the benefit of the spiritual and worldly (existence)]. Owing to what desire [owing to what necessity] (was) the said announcement proclaimed by him? [So that he shall become] the privileged developer [he who is a resolute ruler]. For how many righteous [it is requisite to utter (it)]? [So that (one may) become] a developer, [even he who may be] an irresolute ruler, [for whom they reveal this words. So that the glory of the Kayāns\* such as (it is) with good rulers, should be even so with evil rulers; with good rulers for this purpose, that so they shall produce more benefit; and with evil rulers for this purpose, that so they shall produce less harm]. (56-58)

21. ....

Pah. Yas. XX.—Bakö II.

[The beginning of the second subdivision].†

1. It was a proclamation of Ahuramazda, the *ašəm vohū vahistəm asti*; besides perfect excellence is taught by it to him, [that is, benefit is produced by it for him,] who shall make progress his own, [that is, shall produce, that which is necessary to produce,] through *vohū vahistəm asti* thus become the summing up of the assertion, [that is, it become its end]. (1)

2. *uštā asti uštā ahmāi* has, besides, taught the righteous of every kind the happy progress which is necessary to arise for the righteous of every kind, [so that, happiness (may) be caused thereby]; whatever endurance of man [(or) diligence] it is necessary for the righteous of every kind, to occasion is, besides, taught to the righteous of every kind, [so that one's happiness (may) be caused thereby]. (2)

3. *hyaṭṭ ašāi vahistāi ašəm* has, besides, taught (at) all [the duty and good works which are revealed in] the text are the whole text, [for him whose Avesta and Zand|| are easy, so that, through its Avesta and Zand, he can make manifest all the duty and good works of that whole text,] which teaches (that) the dominion is for righteousness¶, [so that, (one) may exercise authority through virtuousness, that is, it should be the opinion that it teaches or dominion through virtuousness, so that (one may) possess authority through virtuousness;] which also teaches the truth to that righteous invoker, [so that he may make a true decision;] (and) which also teaches the truth to you that are fraught with advantage, [so that it may

\* The Kayanian Princes. † The brackets are not given by West. ‡ So the reading given in West.

|| See note on *mtu-izaintū* (Yas. LVII, 8, Sel. II), p. 68 above. ¶ "Just as the Ahunavairya says that 'the dominion is for Ahuramazda'" (West, op. cit., p. 462, fn. 6).

produce true judgment]. (These) were the three assertions, [that is, three decrees were in it,] (and) the whole saying was a proclamation, the whole saying was that of Ahuramazda. (3-7)

4. Ahuramazda proclaimed; (as above in Yas. XIX. 20). (8-10)

5. . . .

Pah. Yas. XXI.—Bakö III.

[The beginning of the third subdivision].\*

1. A saying of the righteous *Žarašustra*, to be revered, was: "Whoever of those existing is thus in worship as regards (the good)". Here what is taught by it is the worship of Ahuramazda, [that (it is) that which (one) should provide for,] which is the law of Ahuramazda, [that is, his virtuous law,] whereby the reverence (of) existence is taught, [that is, that which he would most occasion, which is the ever-asking for progeny (by) mankind; and he mentions that thing to them,] (through) which (it) is possible for them to live well. (1)

2. Here, besides, the reverence of those males (and) females of the righteous, through complete devotion†, who (was) the first, is taught by it, which is the obeisance (for) the archangels, [that is, it would occasion the propitiation of the archangels]. (These) were the three assertions, [that is, three decrees were in it,] (and) it was (in) every way a saying to be revered. Unto whom was the reverence? (Unto) the archangels in that worship. (2-3)

3. And Ahuramazda spoke thus: "Happy is he whose happiness is the happiness of any one whatever, and (may) Ahuramazda grant it, through predominance of will, [through his requirement]". (4-5)

4. What reply did he speak through that utterance of words, [what (was) the thing he spoke about]? He spoke the reply of happy progress, the happy progress of the righteous of every kind, who are, who have been, and who (will) arise. The developer told [that man, as] the development, (in) reply; (and) [the reward as] the development that Ahuramazda mentioned (in) reply (was): "That development [I call] righteous, [which] is a development for the righteous. (6-8)

5. . . .

\* The brackets are not given by West.  
op. cit., p. 463, fn. 3).

† "The archangel *Ārmaiti*, or *Spendarmad*" (West,

IX.

## IX.

### Airyēmā-iśyō—Yasna LIV.

1.\* ā<sup>1</sup> Airyēmā<sup>2</sup> iśyō<sup>3</sup> rafēdrāi<sup>4</sup> jantū<sup>5</sup>  
 nərəbyas<sup>6</sup>-cā<sup>7</sup> nāiribyas<sup>8</sup>-ca<sup>9</sup> Zaraθuštrahe<sup>10</sup>  
 Vanhēuš<sup>11</sup> rafēdrāi<sup>12</sup> Mananhō<sup>13</sup>:  
 yā<sup>14</sup> daēnā<sup>15</sup> vairīm<sup>16</sup> hanāt<sup>17</sup> mīždem<sup>18</sup>  
 + ašahyā<sup>19</sup> yāsā<sup>20</sup> ašim<sup>21</sup>  
 yām<sup>22</sup> iśyām<sup>23</sup> Ahurō<sup>24</sup> masatā<sup>25</sup> Mazdā<sup>26</sup>

2. Airyamanem<sup>1</sup>-Išīm<sup>2</sup> yazamaide<sup>3</sup>, amavantem<sup>4</sup>, vereθrājanem<sup>5</sup>,  
 vit̥baēšəṇhem<sup>6</sup>, mazištem<sup>7</sup>, ašuhe<sup>8</sup> sravanhām<sup>9</sup>:  
 Gāθā<sup>10</sup> spəntā<sup>11</sup> ratuxšaθrā<sup>12</sup> ašaonīš<sup>13</sup> yazamaide<sup>14</sup>:  
 Staota<sup>15</sup> Yesnya<sup>16</sup> yazamaide<sup>17</sup>, yā<sup>18</sup> dātā<sup>19</sup> anhēuš<sup>20</sup> paouruyehyā<sup>21</sup>.

---

\* Geld. has this in four lines, 1, 2, (3, 4), (5, 6).

## IX.

### Airyēmā-iśyō—Yasna LIV.

1. May the ever-welcome<sup>3</sup> Airyaman<sup>2</sup> come<sup>b</sup>.hither<sup>1</sup> for the rejoicing<sup>4</sup> of the men<sup>6\*</sup>, and<sup>7</sup> of the women<sup>8\*</sup> as-well,<sup>9</sup> of Zaraθuštra<sup>10†</sup>, for the rejoicing<sup>12</sup> of the Good<sup>11</sup>-Mind<sup>13</sup> (may he come hither).

Who<sup>14</sup> (-ever, of these men and women) earns<sup>17</sup> the precious<sup>16</sup> reward<sup>15‡</sup> through (his or her good) heart<sup>16</sup>, (for him or her) do I beg<sup>20</sup> the blessing<sup>21</sup> of Aša<sup>19</sup>, (the blessing) (most-)to-be-desired<sup>22</sup> which<sup>22</sup> Ahura<sup>24</sup> Mazda<sup>26</sup> doth bestow<sup>25</sup>.

2. We adore<sup>3</sup> the Airyēmā<sup>1</sup>-iśyō<sup>2</sup> (hymn), the powerful<sup>4</sup>, (and) victorious<sup>5</sup> against-the-foe,<sup>6</sup> the greatest among the Words<sup>9\*</sup> of Aša<sup>8</sup>

We adore<sup>14</sup> the holy<sup>11</sup> Gāθās<sup>10</sup>, (which) teaching-of-righteousness<sup>13‡</sup> (are) ruling-as-Ratus<sup>12</sup>. ‡

We adore<sup>17</sup> the Staota<sup>16</sup> Yesnya<sup>16</sup> (hymns), which<sup>18</sup> (are) the laws<sup>19</sup> (revealed) by the ancient<sup>21</sup> Rulers<sup>20||</sup>.

---

\* Orig. dat. † I.e. His followers.

‡ Sc., for leading the life of holiness. Verse 2.

\* Orig. gen. † ašonī: lit. possessing Aša.

‡ Spiritual guides the world; the Gāθās are explaining the law of Aša are appropriately called Ratus. || Orig. 6/1.

## NOTES.

1. Kanga: Yaçna and Vispered (Gujarati trans., 1886), pp. 125-126.
2. Reichelt: Avesta Reader; text p. 76, notes at p. 177.
3. Mills: S.B.E., XXXI, p. 293.

The first verse is one of the important hymns of the Avesta and it is used in the marriage blessing.\* The Yazata invoked is Airyaman (अर्यमन्). "This Indo-Iranian divinity originally conveys the idea of comradeship and occurs mostly in the Vedas and casually in the Avesta in connection with the wedding rites. The fifty-fourth chapter of the Yasna is consecrated to Airyaman. He is invoked to come down to the wedding for the joy of the faithful. In regard to the attributes given to Airyaman we may add in this connection that his standing epithet is 'the beloved' †. Airyaman is also a healer of diseases and he is invoked to drive away diseases and death and his help is asked against magic and witchcraft. He is "the angel, presiding over the medical art" ‡. In Ven. XX. 11, this hymn (Yas. LIV. 1) is given in full and it is then used as a charm for driving away the *yātu* and *pairikā* and *jahi* and all manner of sickness and death (Ven. XX. 10-12). A further description of Airyaman is found in Ven. XXII where Ahura Mazda asks him to overcome the diseases spread by Anrō Mainyu. || It may be noted that the name *airyaman* in Gāh. for the priestly class. ¶ The praises of this hymn are given in Dinkart, IX. 46, where it is mentioned that Saošyants will recite this hymn at the "resurrection", "and up the dead are arrayed by it; through its assistance they give life back unto the body, and the embodied life they then possess is such that they do not die". \*\*

1. *Airyēmā*—1/1. The word lit. means "friend". †† Barth., Wb. 198-199 compares the Mod. Pers. word ایرمان (*ērman*), guest.

*išyō*—Adj. Desired (friend) (Mills); liked or beloved (Kan.); Dar. (S.B.E., IV, p. 229) says "vow fulfilling".

*rafəδrāi*—Dat. inf. √*rap*. For protection or help (Barth., Wb. 1509f.); for graces (Mills); Kan. says "happiness" and following Justi derives it from √*rap* which he connects with Skt. रम्. ‡‡

*ā . . . jantu*—√*gam*. आगन्तु. The palatalising seems to be due to the I.E. form \**gem-* ||.

*nərebyas-cā . . . Zarathuštrahē*—Kan. understands that the followers

\* See the Skt. version of the Parsi marriage service in Coll. Skt. Par., I. pp. 43-48. This hymn (1st verse) is given at p. 46, verse 30. Nair. trans. slightly differently in his इजिषि (Coll. Skt. Par., II. p. 125). † Dhalla, Z. Theo., p. 119. ‡ Haug, p. 237. || See Introductory note by Dar. to this *Fargard* of the Ven., S.B.E., IV, p. 235. ¶ Barth., Wb. 198, see also note on the four classes given above on Yas. XIX. 17 (Sel. VIII). \*\* Trans. by West, S.B.E., XXXVII, p. 303. †† Grass, Wb. 118. See also Mlt., E.Z., p. 117. ‡‡ See Geld., *Studien Zum Av.*, p. 29ff. for a criticism of this view. |||| Barth., Wb. 494ff. (note 1).

of Z. are meant here. So also Mills who trans. the last word as "who are taught of Z." Geld.\* thinks it means the family circle of Z., for he thinks it is the wedding hymn of Z.'s daughter. Note the final long vowels in this verse indicating older language. The second verse is obviously a later addition. Note also the 4/3 ("byas-cā"), used for 6/3† by case-attraction.

*Vaṇhēus . . . Managhō*—6/1. Geld. trans. "holy community".

*yā*—Mills takes this as 3/1 and construes it as referring to the *Managhō* above (or to the whole of the previous clause) and trans. "whereby the conscience, etc.". Kan. takes *yā* to refer to Airyaman which is decidedly bad grammar. The others refer it to *daēnā* and construe "the *daēnā* which etc.". This last manner of construing is decidedly supported by the metre: the verse divides into two halves of three *pādas* each, each containing 12 syllables.‡ See below, however, for a further discussion of this word.

*daēnā*—Religion (Dar.); those who accept the (Z.) faith (Kan.); conscience (Mills); soul (*Seele*) (Geld.); Self (Mlt.). See above Yas. XXVI. 4 (Sel. III).

*vairim*—Pleasing; sacred (Mills); desirable (Dar.).

*hanāt*—*han* (चन्) to earn. In the Av. it is most often used with *miždem*.

*miždem*—Reward. Skt. मोक्ष, Mod. Pers. مزد (*muzd*) reward.

*aṣahyā*—6/1 Gāθ. In Y.A. it would be *aṣahe*.

*yāsā*—Cf. *ā . . . yāsaguha* Yas. IX. 2 (Sel. 1). This form is 1/1 ātm.

*aṣim*—Barth.|| explains the word to mean reward of an action performed (whether good or bad). Here of course used for good reward.

*masatā*—Barth. takes this as *s*-aor. of *mad*, to apportion, to mete out, and compares Goth. *mitan*.¶ Kan. trans. "regards as great"; Mills trans. "may grant" and adds\*\* "or can *masatā* (sic) equal 'with his liberality, or majesty', leaving *jantu* to be understood with Ahuro?"

The trans. of this verse are various by the various writers, though they do not differ so much as do those of Yaθā, Aṣem and Yeṇhō-Hātām.††

1. Kan: ††

May Airyaman, the desired One, come to (give) joy unto the men and women of Zaratustra, (and) for (giving) joy to the holy mind.

(I.e. may he come in order to give joy to the holy minded men and women).|| ||

\* Op. cit., p. 33, fn. 2. † See *Vaṇhēus . . . Managhō* (6/1) in the next line. ‡ See Appendix on Avesta metre below. Geld., prints this verse in four lines 1, 2, (3, 4), (5, 6). || Wb. 241. ¶ Ib. 1113. \*\* S.B.E., XXXI, p. 293, fn. 3. †† Sel. VII a, b, and c. ‡ Ven. XX. 11 (Guj. trans., 1884, pp. 261 f.) In 1j. Vis. he gives the same trans. but omits his parenthetical explanations. |||| I have given merely the substance (not a trans.) of the parenthetical explanations here.

Who (Airyaman) makes those who accept the faith (of Z.) fit for receiving rewards.

(I.e., all who believe faithfully in the Z. religion are regarded by Airyaman as fit for rewards.)

I seek the Truth of Truth (i.e. Perfect Truth),\* which (is) to-be-desired, (which) Ahuramazda (Himself) has acknowledged to be great.

(I.e., Truth is such a thing that God Himself has given it a high place and has regarded it as worthy of reverence.)

The one strong recommendation for this is that it keeps up the sense line by line. The rendering of *daēnā* as a collective seems far fetched, *masatō* is not found in Kan.'s Diet. at all. But he evidently follows Har.† and takes it from *'maz*.

2. Dar. (S.B.E., IV, p. 229):

May the vow-fulfilling Airyaman come here, for the men and women of Zarahuštra to rejoice, for Vohu-Manō to rejoice; with the desirable reward that Religion deserves. I solicit for holiness that boon that is vouchsafed by Ahura!

3. Geld. (*Studien zum Avesta*, I, p. 33).

May the dear Friendship appear for a call‡ upon the men and women of Z., for a call upon the (whole) faithful company. To every soul who earns the precious reward, I wish the granting of Righteousness, which is to be longed for, which Ahura Mazda shall accord.

4. Mills:

Let the Airyaman, the desired friend and peersman, draw near for grace to the men and to the women who are taught of Z., for the joyful grace of the Good Mind, whereby the conscience may attain its wished-for recompense. I pray for the sacred reward of the ritual order which is (likewise so much) to be desired; and may Ahura Mazda grant it (or cause it to increase).

5. Barth: (Wb. 199, 1288, 378 and 1113).

May the dear Airyaman come hither to protect|| the men and women of Z., to protect the Good Mind. Whichever Self¶ earns the precious reward, to him I offer the prize of righteousness, (which is) to be desired, which Ahura Mazda shall award.

Reich. is exactly the same except that he puts the word *daēnā* untranslated (§ 19).

6. Mlt. (E.Z., p. 390) strikes out a new line rather plausibly:

Let the dear Brotherhood come for support of Z.'s men and women,

\* संपूर्व राक्षी.

† *Manuel de la Langue de l'Avesta*, Anthologie, p. 182.

‡ Zum Beach.

§ Zur Unterstützung.

¶ Welches Ich.



for support of Good Thought. Whatever Self may win the precious men of Right, for this one I beg the dear Destiny that Ahura Mazda bestowed.

The word "Brotherhood" deserves some attention. It seems kin to Geld.'s rendering "Friendship".\* He takes *ašim* to be a proper name and trans. "Destiny", and suggests that *masatā* is, as pointed out by Barth. (*Flexionslehre*, 27) from a root *mas* to bestow (not in Wb.)†

7. The Pahl. rendering (Pahl. Ven. XX. 11) is given by Haug (p. 393):

The longing for Airyaman is for me the arrival of joy [that is, it is necessary for thee to come with joy], (and) they compel (him) to act for the men and women of Z. Vohumanō is joyful, [that is, it is necessary for thee also to come, that they may compel thee to act with joy]. He who is desirous of religion becomes worthy, with the reward here (in this world). and that also there (in the other world). The reverent supplication for righteousness is Aša Vahišta [that is, my reverence is through him]; may he become the dignity of Ahura Mazda, [the *mobad*-ship of the *mobads*].

8. In the marriage-service where this verse occurs the Skt. rendering is given by a priest दीनिदाह ‡

आ अर्यमा इष्यः प्रमोदाय गच्छतु । नृभ्यश्च नारीभ्यश्च जरयुश्चस्य । येन धर्मशीलजनान्  
वयस्सनेन किल प्राप्नुम पारितोषिकम् ॥

अतस्य याचे अति यां इष्यां स्वामी सहिता किल ददातु महाज्ञानी ॥

9. Nair. in his इजिनि (Coll. Skt. Par., II, p. 125) trans. thus:

स आदेशाभिलाषः प्रमादाय प्राप्नोत नरोभ्यो नारीभ्यश्च जरयुश्चिष्यभ्यः । उत्तमं च प्रमोदय  
मनः । ( किल गच्छन्नोपि इदं कार्यं करोतु ) । ये दीने अभिलाषकाः ( किल ये नारीनराः दीनि-  
शीलाः ) अनुत्तमाः प्रसादस्य । ( परलोकीयस्य ) । पुण्यस्य अभीष्टवो भक्तिशीलं ( शिष्यम् ) । येषां  
अभीष्टया स्वामिनो महत्त्वं महाज्ञानिनः । किल मे दीनिः तनो प्रवर्तते ॥

I now give my own rendering. There is a general agreement with regard to the first three *pādas*. The last three are really complicated. In the first place I propose to take *yā*<sup>14</sup> to be 1.3 n. because it refers to the two genders (*nara* and *nāri*).|| This *yā* would be subject of *hanāi*, *daēnā* I propose to take as 3 l. The fifth *pāda* I have marked as metrically defective and I propose to fill it out thus:

*ašahyā (təm vaṇuñim) yāsā ašim.*

This completing of the *pāda* has been suggested by Yas. LI. 21.¶ which also gives the clue for interpreting this verse. It is also Gāthic (Gāθ. Vohu.) and it runs as follows:—

\* See op. cit., p. 117 for details. † lb., p. 390, fn. 5. ‡ वैवाहस्य [विवाहस्य] पदमानो  
(contract, solemn promise) संस्कृतभाषाया[ं] पश्चिमी भाषायां[ं] दीनिदाहवचनेन  
अवतारिता ॥ Thus runs the beginning. See Coll. Skt. Par., I, pp., 43ff. This verse is numbered  
30 there at . 46. || Reich. §§ 6045 606. ¶ Sel. XXXVI, Part 2.

ārmatōiš nā spəntō hvō  
 cistīš, υχδāiš, šyaobana,  
 daēnā ašəm spəntvai  
 volhū xšaθrəm managhā  
 Mazdā dadāt Ahurō  
 təm vaxuhīm yāsā ašīm

Barth. trans. this verse thus : \*

Through Piety one becomes holy. Such a man advances Righteousness through his thinking, his words, his deeds and his Self. By Good Thought Mazda Ahura will give the Dominion. For this precious blessing do I beg.

Hence my trans. runs thus.

May the ever-welcome Airyaman come hither for the rejoicing of the men, and of women as well, of Zaratustra for the rejoicing of the Good Mind (may he come hither). Who (ever of these men and women) earns the precious reward, (for him or her) do I beg the blessing of Aša, (the blessing) (most-) to-be-desired which Ahura Mazda doth bestow.

It may also be noted in passing that the blessing (aši) of Aša is frequently mentioned in the Gāthās.†

2. Note that this verse is distinctly later in point of language. It seems a mere ritualistic addition.

*viθbaēšəghəm*—Keeping away from hatred (Kan.); the opponent of assulting malice (Mills); directed against enemies (Birth).‡

*sravanhām*—6/3. Among the words (i.e. hymns).

*spəntā*—Prosperity bringing (Kan.); bounteous (Mills); holy (Barth.)||.

*ratu xšaθrā*—Who rule supreme in righteousness (Kan.); that rule supreme in the ritual (Mills); possessing in themselves the strength of the Ratu, i.e. ruling as Ratu (Barth.)¶. This epithet used for the Gāthās occurs in several places and in only one place (Vis. XI. 1) the word is used in this sense for Ahura Mazda.

*Staota Yesnya*—Neu. plu. This name is used to designate 33 chapters of the Yasna. What these chapters are is not very certain, but they evidently represent the oldest portion of the Yasna. Geldner thinks that "the Gāthā dialect is indispensable" for the Staota Yesnya.\*\* They include at any rate the five Gāthās, the Yasna Haptaghāiti, and Hās 14,†† 15, 54, 56 and 58 (Barth., Wb. 1589), and, of course, the three chief prayers Yaθā, Ašəm and Yeñhē-Hātām.

*yā*—Neu plu.

\* Gāth., p. 111; see also Mlt., E.Z., p. 387. † Of, e.g. Yas. LI. 10, also Yas. XXI. 4 (Sel. XXXIV, Part 2). ‡ Wb. 1447. || Ib. 1619 ff. (B. 2 b). ¶ Ib. 1502. \*\* See Av. Fah. Anc. Per., p. 39. †† The *Evangelists* mention that the *Staota Yesnya* begins, with the words: *vīdī tō Amōā Spəntā*, i.e. with Yas. XIV. 1.

*dātā*—Laws (Kan.); productions (Mills).

*aṇhəuš*—6/1 of *ahu*. Kan. trans. "life", Mills says "world". Could it not mean here "ruler" or "lord" and refer to the ancient Sage-kings who gave the law of Mazda to pre-Zoroastrian Irān?

*paouruhyā*—6/1. Ancient. "The later Avesta notes the antiquity of the older",\* as is also done in the Veda, पुर्यभिर्द्दिविभिः (RV., I. 1, 2), etc.

---

\* Mills, S.B.E., XXXI, p. 293, fn. 4.



X.

## X.

### The Vara of Yima—Vendidād II. 20-43.

1. (20). hañjamanem<sup>1</sup> frabarata<sup>2</sup> yō<sup>3</sup> daδvā<sup>4</sup> Ahurō<sup>5</sup> Mazdā<sup>6</sup> haθra<sup>7</sup>  
mainyoibyo<sup>8</sup> Yazataēibyo<sup>9</sup>, srūtō<sup>10</sup> Airyene<sup>11</sup>-Vaējahi<sup>12</sup>, vañ-  
huyā<sup>13</sup>. Dāityayā<sup>14</sup>.  
hañjmanem<sup>15</sup> frabarata<sup>16</sup> yō<sup>17</sup> Yimō<sup>18</sup>-Xšaētō<sup>19</sup> hvāθwō<sup>20</sup> haθra<sup>21</sup>  
vahištaēibyo<sup>22</sup> mašyākaēibyo<sup>23</sup>, srūtō<sup>24</sup> Airyene<sup>25</sup>-Vaējahi<sup>26</sup>, vañ-  
huyā<sup>27</sup> Dāityayā<sup>28</sup>.
  
2. (21). ā<sup>1</sup> tat<sup>2</sup> hañjamanem<sup>3</sup> paiti<sup>4</sup>-jasat<sup>5</sup> yō<sup>6</sup> daδvā<sup>7</sup> Ahurō<sup>8</sup> Mazdā<sup>9</sup>  
haθra<sup>10</sup> mainyoibyo<sup>11</sup> Yazataēibyo<sup>12</sup>, srūtō<sup>13</sup> Airyene<sup>14</sup>-Vaējahi<sup>15</sup>  
vañhuyā<sup>16</sup> Dāityayā<sup>17</sup>.  
ā<sup>18</sup> tāt<sup>19</sup> hañjamanem<sup>20</sup> paiti<sup>21</sup>-jasat<sup>22</sup> yō<sup>23</sup> Yimō<sup>24</sup>-Xšaētō<sup>25</sup>  
hvāθwō<sup>26</sup> haθra<sup>27</sup> vahištaēibyo<sup>28</sup> mašyākaēibyo<sup>29</sup>, srūtō<sup>30</sup> Airyene<sup>31</sup>-  
Vaējahi<sup>32</sup>, vañhuyā<sup>33</sup> Dāityayā<sup>34</sup>.
  
3. (22). aaṭ<sup>1</sup> aoṣta<sup>2</sup> Aburō<sup>3</sup> Mazdā<sup>4</sup> Yimā<sup>5</sup>:  
Yima,<sup>6</sup> erīra,<sup>7</sup> Vivanhana<sup>8</sup>! avi<sup>9</sup> ahūm<sup>10</sup> astvañtem<sup>11</sup> aγem<sup>12</sup>  
zimō<sup>13</sup> jañhentu<sup>14</sup>, yahmat<sup>15</sup> haca<sup>16</sup> staχ<sup>17</sup> mūrō<sup>18</sup> zyā<sup>19</sup>. ava<sup>20</sup>  
ahūm<sup>21</sup> astvañtem<sup>22</sup> aγem<sup>23</sup> zimō<sup>24</sup> jañhentu<sup>25</sup>, yahmat<sup>26</sup> haca<sup>27</sup>  
paurvō<sup>28</sup> snaoδō<sup>29</sup>-vafra<sup>30</sup>\* snaēžāt<sup>31</sup> barežištaēibyo<sup>32</sup> gairibyo<sup>33</sup>  
bāṣnubyo<sup>34</sup> areduyā<sup>35</sup>.
  
4. (23). θrižat<sup>1</sup>-ca<sup>2</sup> iða<sup>3</sup> Yima,<sup>4</sup> gēuś<sup>5</sup> apa<sup>6</sup>-jasat,<sup>7</sup> yaṭ<sup>8</sup>-ca<sup>9</sup> aṇhaṭ<sup>10</sup>  
θwyāstemuōṣu<sup>11</sup> asaṇhām<sup>12</sup>, yaṭ<sup>13</sup>-ca<sup>14</sup> aṇhaṭ<sup>15</sup> bareṣnuš<sup>16</sup> paiti<sup>17</sup>  
gairinām<sup>18</sup>, yaṭ<sup>19</sup>-ca<sup>20</sup> jāfnuṣva<sup>21</sup> raonām<sup>22</sup> paχrumaēṣu<sup>23</sup> nmāna-  
ōṣu<sup>24</sup>.
  
5. (24). † parō<sup>1</sup> zimō<sup>2</sup> aētañhā<sup>3</sup> | dañhēuś<sup>4</sup> † aṇhaṭ<sup>5</sup> beretō<sup>6</sup> vāstrem<sup>7</sup>:—  
tem<sup>8</sup> āfš<sup>9</sup> paurva<sup>10</sup> vazaīdyā<sup>11</sup> | pasca<sup>12</sup> vītaχti<sup>13</sup> vafrahe<sup>14</sup>. |  
abda<sup>15</sup>-ca<sup>16</sup> iða<sup>17</sup>, Yima<sup>18</sup>, aṇhe<sup>19</sup> astvaite<sup>20</sup> sadayāt<sup>21</sup> yaṭ<sup>22</sup> iða<sup>23</sup>  
pasōu<sup>24</sup> anumayehe<sup>25</sup> paḍem<sup>26</sup> vaōnāite<sup>27</sup>.

\* Geld. has *snaoδō vafra*; Kau. makes these two words into a compound (Dict., p. 541).

† Geld. gives this as verse with the *pīdas* divided as marked by the upright lines. ‡ Geld. reads *dañhā*; I have followed Barth.

## X.

### The Vara of Yima—Vendidād II. 20-43.

1. (20). An assembly<sup>1</sup> did call-together<sup>2</sup> (He) who<sup>3</sup> (is) the Creator<sup>4</sup>, Ahura<sup>5</sup> Mazda<sup>6</sup>, together-with<sup>7</sup> the celestial<sup>8</sup> Yazatas<sup>9\*</sup>, in Airyana<sup>11</sup>. Vaēja<sup>12</sup> of-high-renown<sup>10</sup>, (on-the-banks-)of-the-hallowed<sup>13</sup> Dāityā<sup>14</sup>.

An assembly<sup>15</sup> did (likewise) call-together<sup>16</sup> (he) who<sup>17</sup> (was) Yima<sup>18</sup> the King<sup>19</sup>, the magnificent<sup>20</sup>, together-with<sup>21</sup> the holiest<sup>22</sup> (among) mortals<sup>23\*</sup>, in Airyana<sup>25</sup> Vaēja<sup>26</sup> of-high-renown<sup>24</sup> (on-the-banks-)of-the-hallowed<sup>27</sup> Dāityā<sup>28</sup>.

2. (21). To<sup>1</sup> that<sup>2</sup> assembly<sup>3</sup> did-come-to-confer<sup>4 5</sup> (He) who<sup>6</sup> (is) the Creator<sup>7</sup> Ahura<sup>8</sup> Mazda<sup>9</sup>, together-with<sup>10</sup> the celestial<sup>11</sup> Yazatas<sup>12\*</sup>, in Airyana<sup>14</sup> Vaēja<sup>15</sup> of-high-renown<sup>13</sup> (on-the-banks-)of-the-hallowed<sup>16</sup> Dāityā<sup>17</sup>.

To<sup>18</sup> that<sup>19</sup> assembly<sup>20</sup> did-come-to-confer<sup>21, 22</sup> (he) who<sup>23</sup> (was) Yima<sup>24</sup> the King<sup>25</sup>, the magnificent<sup>26</sup>, together-with<sup>27</sup> the holiest<sup>28</sup> (among) mortals<sup>29\*</sup>, in Airyana<sup>31</sup> Vaējo<sup>32</sup> of-high-renown<sup>30</sup> (on-the-banks-)of-the-hallowed<sup>33</sup> Dāityā<sup>34</sup>.

3. (22). Thereupon<sup>1</sup> Ahura<sup>3</sup> Mazda<sup>4</sup> said<sup>2</sup> unto Yima<sup>5</sup>:

Yima<sup>6</sup>, (thou) fair<sup>7</sup> son-of-Vivaghvat<sup>8</sup>! upon<sup>9</sup> the wicked<sup>12</sup> material<sup>11</sup> world<sup>10</sup> shall descend<sup>14\*</sup> the winters<sup>13</sup>, (and) through<sup>16</sup> these<sup>16†</sup> (shall come) fierce<sup>17</sup> deadly<sup>18</sup> cold<sup>19</sup>. Upon<sup>20</sup> the wicked<sup>23</sup> material<sup>22</sup> world<sup>21</sup> shall come<sup>26</sup> winters<sup>24</sup>, (and) through<sup>27</sup> these<sup>26†</sup> first-of-all<sup>28</sup> shall fall<sup>31</sup> deep<sup>29</sup> snow<sup>30</sup> (extending) from the highest heights<sup>32</sup> of the mountains<sup>33</sup> to the depths<sup>34</sup> of the waters<sup>35</sup> (of Arədvi).

4. (23). And<sup>2</sup> (all the) three kinds<sup>1</sup> of animals<sup>5</sup> here<sup>3</sup>, O Yima<sup>4</sup>, shall disappear<sup>6-7</sup> (those) which<sup>8\*</sup> live<sup>10†</sup> in the most-terrific<sup>11</sup> of wildernesses<sup>12†</sup> and<sup>14</sup> (those) which<sup>13</sup> live<sup>15†</sup> on<sup>17</sup> the tops<sup>16</sup> of mountains<sup>18</sup>, and<sup>20</sup> (those) which<sup>19</sup> (live domesticated) in the river<sup>22</sup>-valleys<sup>21</sup> (even though protected) in well-built<sup>23</sup> stalls<sup>24||</sup>.

5. (24). Before<sup>1</sup> (that) cold<sup>2</sup> there is<sup>5\*</sup> (at present) production<sup>6†</sup> of food<sup>7</sup> in<sup>†</sup> this<sup>3</sup> land<sup>4</sup>; (and there is) water<sup>9</sup> in plenty<sup>10</sup> for irrigating<sup>11||</sup> it<sup>8</sup> after<sup>12</sup> the melting<sup>13</sup> of the (winter's) snow<sup>14</sup>.

But<sup>16¶</sup> (later on), O Yima<sup>18</sup>, (the land) here<sup>17</sup> shall appear<sup>21</sup> uninhabitable<sup>15\*\*</sup> for (all) corporeal<sup>20</sup> life<sup>19</sup>; (even) here<sup>23</sup>, where<sup>22</sup> the footprints<sup>26††</sup> of lowing<sup>25</sup> cattle<sup>24</sup> are<sup>††</sup> (at present) to be seen<sup>27</sup>.

Verse 1 and 2. \* Orig. 4/3. Verse 3. \* Lit. "come". † Lit. "through which" (sg.). Verse 4. † Lit. "are". ‡ Lit. "places". \* -ca<sup>9</sup> has been omitted. || Lit. "strong houses". Verse 5. \* Lit. "was". † Orig. inf. ‡ Lit. "of". || Lit. "overflow". ¶ Lit. "and". \*\* Lit. "unreadable" (unbsterblich, Barth., Wb. 96). †† Orig. sg.

6. (25). āaṭ<sup>1</sup> tem<sup>2</sup> varem<sup>3</sup> kerenava<sup>4</sup> caretu<sup>5</sup>-drājō<sup>6</sup> kem<sup>7</sup>-ciṭ<sup>8</sup> paiti<sup>9</sup> caθruṣanām<sup>10</sup>; haθra<sup>11</sup> taoχma<sup>12</sup> upa<sup>13</sup>-bara<sup>14</sup> pasvām<sup>15</sup>-ca<sup>16</sup> staora-nām<sup>17</sup>-ca<sup>18</sup> mašyānām<sup>19</sup>-ca<sup>20</sup> sūnām<sup>21</sup>-ca<sup>22</sup> vayām<sup>23</sup>-ca<sup>24</sup> āθrām<sup>25</sup>-ca<sup>26</sup> suχrām<sup>27</sup> saociṇtām<sup>28</sup>.

āaṭ<sup>29</sup> tem<sup>30</sup> varem<sup>31</sup> kerenava<sup>32</sup> caretu<sup>33</sup>-drājō<sup>34</sup> kem<sup>35</sup>-ciṭ<sup>36</sup> paiti<sup>37</sup> caθruṣanām<sup>38</sup> narām<sup>39</sup> aiwi-χšōiθne<sup>40</sup>, caretu<sup>41</sup>-drājō<sup>42</sup> kem<sup>43</sup>-ciṭ<sup>44</sup> paiti<sup>45</sup> caθruṣanām<sup>46</sup> gavām<sup>47</sup> gāvayanem<sup>48</sup>.

7. (26). haθra<sup>1</sup> āpem<sup>2</sup> frātut<sup>3</sup>-caya<sup>4</sup> hāθrō<sup>5</sup>-masaṇhem<sup>6</sup> aḏwanem<sup>7</sup>,  
haθra<sup>8</sup> mareγā<sup>9</sup> avastaya<sup>10</sup>;  
[avi<sup>11</sup> maṭ<sup>12</sup> zairi<sup>13</sup>-gaonem<sup>14</sup>, maṭ<sup>15</sup> χ<sup>v</sup> aifyeite<sup>16</sup> ayyamnem<sup>17</sup>].  
haθra<sup>18</sup> ninānā<sup>19</sup> avastaya<sup>20</sup>, § + katem<sup>21</sup>-ca<sup>22</sup> fruskembem<sup>23</sup>-  
ca<sup>24</sup>

fravārem<sup>25</sup>-ca<sup>26</sup> pairi<sup>27</sup>-vārem<sup>28</sup>-ca<sup>29</sup>.

8. (27). haθra<sup>1</sup> vispanām<sup>2</sup> narām<sup>3</sup> nāirinām<sup>4</sup>-ca<sup>5</sup> taoχma<sup>6</sup> upa<sup>7</sup>-bara<sup>8</sup>,  
yōi<sup>9</sup> henti<sup>10</sup> aiñhā<sup>11</sup> zemō<sup>12</sup> mazišta<sup>13</sup>-ca<sup>14</sup> vahišta<sup>15</sup>-ca<sup>16</sup> sraōšta<sup>17</sup>-  
ca<sup>18</sup>. haθra<sup>19</sup> vispanām<sup>20</sup> gēus<sup>21</sup> sareḏanām<sup>22</sup> taoχma<sup>23</sup> upa<sup>24</sup>-bara<sup>25</sup>,  
yōi<sup>26</sup> henti<sup>27</sup> aiñhā<sup>28</sup> zemō<sup>29</sup> mazišta<sup>30</sup>-ca<sup>31</sup> vahišta<sup>32</sup>-ca<sup>33</sup> sraōšta<sup>34</sup>-  
ca<sup>35</sup>.

9. (28). haθra<sup>1</sup> vispanām<sup>2</sup> urvaranām<sup>3</sup> taoχma<sup>4</sup> upa<sup>5</sup>-bara<sup>6</sup>, yōi<sup>7</sup> henti<sup>8</sup>  
aiñhā<sup>9</sup> zemō<sup>10</sup> barezišta<sup>11</sup>-ca<sup>12</sup> hubaoiḏitema<sup>13</sup>-ca<sup>14</sup>. haθra<sup>15</sup> vispa-  
nām<sup>16</sup> χ<sup>v</sup> areḏanām<sup>17</sup> taoχma<sup>18</sup> upa<sup>19</sup>-bara<sup>20</sup>, yōi<sup>21</sup> henti<sup>22</sup> aiñhā<sup>23</sup>  
zemō<sup>24</sup> χ<sup>v</sup> arezišta<sup>25</sup>-ca<sup>26</sup> hubaoiḏitema<sup>27</sup>-ca<sup>28</sup>.

tē<sup>29</sup> kerenava<sup>30</sup> miθwaire<sup>31</sup> ayyamnem<sup>32</sup> vīspem<sup>33</sup> ā<sup>34</sup> ahmāt<sup>35</sup> yaṭ<sup>36</sup>  
aēte<sup>37</sup> narō<sup>38</sup> varefšvō<sup>39</sup> aṇhe<sup>40</sup>.

10. (29). mā<sup>1</sup> aθra<sup>2</sup> frakavō<sup>3</sup>, mā<sup>4</sup> apakavō<sup>5</sup>, mā<sup>6</sup> apāvayō<sup>7</sup>, mā<sup>8</sup> hareḏiš<sup>9</sup>,  
mā<sup>10</sup> driwiš<sup>11</sup>, mā<sup>12</sup> daiwiš<sup>13</sup>, mā<sup>14</sup> kasviš<sup>15</sup>, mā<sup>16</sup> vīzbāriš<sup>17</sup>, mā<sup>18</sup>  
vīmītō<sup>19</sup>-dantānō<sup>20</sup>, mā<sup>21</sup> paēsō<sup>22</sup> yō<sup>23</sup> vīteretō<sup>24</sup>-tanuš<sup>25</sup>, māḏa<sup>26</sup>-  
cim<sup>27</sup> anyām<sup>28</sup> daχstanām<sup>29</sup>, yōi<sup>30</sup> henti<sup>31</sup> Aṇrahe<sup>32</sup> Mainyēus<sup>33</sup>  
daχstem<sup>34</sup> mašyāiš<sup>35</sup>-ca<sup>36</sup> paiti<sup>37</sup> niḏātem<sup>38</sup>.



6. (25). Therefore<sup>1</sup> shalt thou construct<sup>4</sup> one<sup>2\*</sup> enclosure<sup>5</sup> a-caratu<sup>5</sup>. long<sup>6</sup> in<sup>9</sup> each<sup>7-9†</sup> of the four-sides<sup>10</sup>; thither<sup>11</sup>, shalt thou carry<sup>13-14</sup> the offspring<sup>12</sup> of (small) animals<sup>15</sup> and<sup>16</sup> of (large) cattle<sup>17</sup> and<sup>18</sup> of men<sup>19</sup> and<sup>20</sup> of dogs<sup>21</sup> and<sup>22</sup> of birds<sup>23</sup> and<sup>24</sup> (the seed) of the fires<sup>25‡</sup> brilliant<sup>27</sup> (and) flaming<sup>28</sup>.

And<sup>29</sup> thou shalt also construct<sup>32</sup> one<sup>30\*</sup> enclosure<sup>31</sup> a-caratu<sup>33</sup>. long<sup>34</sup> in<sup>37</sup> each<sup>35-36†</sup> of the four-sides<sup>38</sup> as a dwelling<sup>40||</sup> for human-beings<sup>39||</sup>, (and also one) a-caratu<sup>41</sup>. long<sup>42</sup> in<sup>45</sup> each<sup>43-44†</sup> of the four-sides<sup>46</sup> as a stall<sup>48</sup> for cattle<sup>47¶</sup>.

7. (26). Therein<sup>1</sup> cause thou the waters<sup>2\*</sup> to flow<sup>3-4</sup> along a course<sup>7</sup> a-haθra<sup>5</sup>. in-length<sup>6†</sup>; near-this<sup>8‡</sup> shalt thou lay-out<sup>10</sup> the fields<sup>9</sup>, [(so that) always<sup>12</sup> golden<sup>13</sup>. hued<sup>14</sup>, (and)|| inexhaustible<sup>17</sup> (grain) might be obtained<sup>11,16¶</sup>]. Therein<sup>18</sup>, (too), shalt thou establish<sup>20</sup> dwelling-places<sup>19</sup>, (each) house<sup>21\*\*</sup> with-a-pillared-portico<sup>23</sup> and<sup>24</sup> an (inner) courtyard<sup>25</sup> and<sup>26</sup> an-encircling<sup>27</sup>. wall<sup>28</sup> as well<sup>29</sup>.

8. (27). Therein<sup>1</sup> shalt thou carry<sup>7-9</sup> the offspring<sup>6\*</sup> of all<sup>2</sup> men<sup>3</sup> and<sup>5</sup> of (all) women<sup>4</sup>, who<sup>9</sup> are<sup>10</sup> upon this<sup>11</sup> earth<sup>12</sup> the greatest<sup>13</sup> and<sup>14</sup> the best<sup>15</sup> and<sup>16</sup> the finest<sup>17,†</sup> Therein<sup>19</sup> shalt thou carry<sup>24-25</sup> the offspring<sup>23\*</sup> of all<sup>20</sup> kinds<sup>22</sup> of animals<sup>21,‡</sup> which<sup>24</sup> are<sup>27</sup> upon this<sup>23</sup> earth<sup>29</sup> the greatest<sup>30</sup>, and<sup>31</sup> the best<sup>32</sup> and<sup>33</sup> the finest<sup>34,†</sup>

9. (28). Therein<sup>1</sup> shall thou carry<sup>5-6</sup> the seed<sup>4</sup> of all<sup>2</sup> trees<sup>3</sup> which<sup>7</sup> are<sup>8</sup> upon this<sup>9</sup> earth<sup>10</sup> the tallest<sup>11</sup> and<sup>12</sup> the sweetest-scented<sup>13,\*</sup> Therein<sup>15</sup> shalt thou carry<sup>19-20</sup> the seed<sup>18</sup> of all<sup>16</sup> fruits<sup>17</sup>, which<sup>21</sup> are<sup>22</sup> upon this<sup>23</sup> earth<sup>24</sup> the best-of-savour<sup>25</sup> and<sup>26</sup> the sweetest-scented<sup>27,\*</sup>

(All) these<sup>29</sup> (human beings and animals) shalt thou take<sup>30†</sup> in-pairs<sup>31</sup>, (and shalt preserve) each<sup>33‡</sup> (pair) safe-from-harm<sup>32</sup> through<sup>34</sup> that<sup>35</sup> (time), (during) which<sup>36</sup> these<sup>37</sup> people<sup>38</sup> shall be<sup>40</sup> within the vara<sup>39</sup>.

10. (29). \* (There should be) here<sup>2</sup> neither<sup>1</sup> the bulging-chested<sup>3</sup>, nor<sup>4</sup> the humpbacked<sup>5</sup>, nor<sup>6</sup> the impotent<sup>7</sup>, nor<sup>8</sup> the lunatic<sup>9</sup>, nor<sup>10</sup> the pitted-faced<sup>11,†</sup> nor<sup>12</sup> the emaciated<sup>13</sup>, nor<sup>14</sup> the undersized<sup>15‡</sup>, nor<sup>16</sup> the crooked(-limbed)<sup>17</sup>, nor<sup>18</sup> (any) possessing-deformed<sup>19</sup>. teeth<sup>20</sup>, nor<sup>21</sup> the leprous<sup>22</sup> who<sup>23</sup> (have the disease) spread<sup>24</sup> over-the body<sup>25</sup>; nor-indeed<sup>26</sup> (one showing) any<sup>27</sup> of the other<sup>28</sup> (outward) signs<sup>29</sup>, which<sup>30</sup> are<sup>31</sup> the marks<sup>34||</sup> of Anrō<sup>32</sup>. Mainyuš<sup>33</sup> put<sup>34</sup> upon<sup>37</sup> mankind<sup>35,¶</sup>

Verse 6. \* Lit. "that". † Lit. "whichever". ‡ -ca<sup>20</sup> omitted. || Dat. inf. \* Orig. 63. Verse 7. \* Orig. sg. † Lit. "measurement". ‡ haθra. || mat<sup>15</sup> omitted. ¶ Lit. "eaten". \*\* -ca<sup>22</sup> omitted. Verse 8. \* Lit. "s-e-d". † -ca<sup>18</sup> and -ca<sup>35</sup> omitted. ‡ Orig. sg. Verse 9. \* -ca<sup>14</sup> and -ca<sup>28</sup> omitted. † Lit. "make". ‡ Lit. "all". Verse 10. \* For Kanga's version see verse 18 (37) below. (p. 233). † Barth. suggests that this word may refer to the marks of small-pox (Wb. 778). ‡ Barth. gives a word *kaaviika* (Ven. XVII, 34) which he trans. as "mean" (Wb. 461). || Orig. sg. ¶ -ca<sup>35</sup> omitted.

11. (30.) fratemem<sup>1</sup> daiñhēus<sup>2</sup> nava<sup>3</sup> pereθwō<sup>4</sup> kerēnava<sup>5</sup>, maðemō<sup>6</sup> xšvaš<sup>7</sup>, nitēmō<sup>8</sup> tišrō<sup>9</sup>, fratemem<sup>10</sup> pereθwō<sup>11</sup> hazanrem<sup>12</sup> narām<sup>13</sup> nairinām<sup>14</sup>-ca<sup>15</sup> taoχma<sup>16</sup> upa<sup>17</sup>-bara<sup>18</sup>, maðemō<sup>19</sup> xšvāš<sup>20</sup> sata<sup>21</sup>, nitēmō<sup>22</sup> tišrō<sup>23</sup> satu<sup>24</sup>. aiwi<sup>25</sup>-ca<sup>26</sup> tē<sup>27</sup> vərəfšva<sup>28</sup> suwrya<sup>29</sup> zara-naōnya<sup>30</sup>; api<sup>31</sup>-ca<sup>32</sup> tēm<sup>33</sup> varem<sup>34</sup> mareza<sup>35</sup> dvarem<sup>36</sup> raocanem<sup>37</sup> x<sup>38</sup>āraoxšnem<sup>39</sup> antare<sup>40</sup>-naēmāt<sup>41</sup>.
12. (31.) āat<sup>1</sup> mēsta<sup>2</sup> Yimō<sup>3</sup>:  
 “kuθa<sup>4</sup> tē<sup>5</sup> azem<sup>6</sup> varem<sup>7</sup> kerēnavāne<sup>8</sup>, yā<sup>9</sup> mē<sup>10</sup> aoχta<sup>11</sup> Ahurō<sup>12</sup> Mazdā<sup>13</sup>?”  
 āat<sup>14</sup> aoχta<sup>15</sup> Ahurō<sup>16</sup> Mazdā<sup>17</sup> Yimāi<sup>18</sup>:  
 “Yima<sup>19</sup>, srīra<sup>20</sup>, Vivanhana<sup>21</sup>! aiñhā<sup>22</sup> zemō<sup>23</sup> pāšnābya<sup>24</sup> višpara<sup>25</sup>, zastaēi<sup>26</sup>bya<sup>27</sup> viχadā<sup>28</sup>, mēnaye<sup>29</sup>n ahe<sup>30</sup> yaθa<sup>31</sup> nū<sup>32</sup> mašyāka<sup>33</sup> xšivisti<sup>34</sup> zemō<sup>35</sup> višavayeinte<sup>36</sup>.”
13. (32.) āat<sup>1</sup> Yimō<sup>2</sup> avaθa<sup>3</sup> kerēnaot<sup>4</sup> yaθa<sup>5</sup> dim<sup>6</sup> ištāt<sup>7</sup> Ahurō<sup>8</sup> Mazdā<sup>9</sup>; aiñhā<sup>10</sup> zemō<sup>11</sup> pāšnābya<sup>12</sup> višpara<sup>13</sup>, zastaēi<sup>14</sup>bya<sup>15</sup> viχadāt<sup>16</sup>, mēnaye<sup>17</sup>n ahe<sup>18</sup> yaθa<sup>19</sup> nū<sup>20</sup> mašyāka<sup>21</sup> xšivisti<sup>22</sup> zemō<sup>23</sup> višavayeinte<sup>24</sup>.
14. (33.) āat<sup>1</sup> Yimō<sup>2</sup> varem<sup>3</sup> kerēnaot<sup>4</sup> caretu<sup>5</sup>-drājō<sup>6</sup> kem<sup>7</sup>-ci<sup>8</sup> paiti<sup>9</sup> caθrušanām<sup>10</sup>; haθra<sup>11</sup> taoχma<sup>12</sup> upa<sup>13</sup>-bara<sup>14</sup> pačvām<sup>15</sup>-ca<sup>16</sup> staoranām<sup>17</sup>-ca<sup>18</sup> mašyānām<sup>19</sup>-ca<sup>20</sup> sūnām<sup>21</sup>-ca<sup>22</sup> vayām<sup>23</sup>-ca<sup>24</sup> āθrām<sup>25</sup>-ca<sup>26</sup> suχrām<sup>27</sup> saocinām<sup>28</sup>.  
 āat<sup>29</sup> Yimō<sup>30</sup> varem<sup>31</sup> kerēnaot<sup>32</sup> caretu<sup>33</sup>-drājō<sup>34</sup> kem<sup>35</sup>-ci<sup>36</sup> paiti<sup>37</sup> caθrušanām<sup>38</sup> narām<sup>39</sup> aiwi-xšōiθne<sup>40</sup>, caretu<sup>41</sup>-drājō<sup>42</sup> kem<sup>43</sup>-ci<sup>44</sup> paiti<sup>45</sup> caθrušanām<sup>46</sup> gavām<sup>47</sup> gāvayanem<sup>48</sup>.
15. (34.) haθra<sup>1</sup> āpēm<sup>2</sup> frata<sup>3</sup>č-caya<sup>4</sup> hāθrō<sup>5</sup>-masanhem<sup>6</sup> ađwanem<sup>7</sup>, haθra<sup>8</sup> mareyā<sup>9</sup> avastaya<sup>10</sup>;  
 avill<sup>11</sup> mat<sup>12</sup> zairi<sup>13</sup>-gaonem<sup>14</sup>, mat<sup>15</sup> X<sup>16</sup> airyeite<sup>17</sup> ašyamnem<sup>18</sup>.  
 haθra<sup>19</sup> nmanā<sup>20</sup> avastaya<sup>21</sup> § + katem<sup>22</sup>-ca<sup>23</sup> fraskembem<sup>24</sup>-ca<sup>25</sup>.  
 fravārem<sup>26</sup>-ca<sup>27</sup> pairi<sup>28</sup>-vārem<sup>29</sup>-ca<sup>30</sup>.
16. (35.) haθra<sup>1</sup> višpanām<sup>2</sup> narām<sup>3</sup> nairinām<sup>4</sup>-ca<sup>5</sup> taoχma<sup>6</sup> upa<sup>7</sup>-bara<sup>8</sup>č, yōi<sup>9</sup> hentī<sup>10</sup> aiñhā<sup>11</sup> zemō<sup>12</sup> mazišta<sup>13</sup>-ca<sup>14</sup> vahišta<sup>15</sup>-ca<sup>16</sup> sraēšta<sup>17</sup>-ca<sup>18</sup>. haθra<sup>19</sup> višpanām<sup>20</sup> gēus<sup>21</sup> sraēdanām<sup>22</sup> taoχma<sup>23</sup> upa<sup>24</sup>-bara<sup>25</sup>č, yōi<sup>26</sup> hentī<sup>27</sup> aiñhā<sup>28</sup> zemō<sup>29</sup> mazišta<sup>30</sup>-ca<sup>31</sup> vahišta<sup>32</sup>-ca<sup>33</sup> sraēšta<sup>34</sup>-ca<sup>35</sup>.

11. (30). Within the first<sup>1</sup> part<sup>2</sup> (of the *vara*) thou shalt make<sup>6</sup> nine<sup>8</sup> passages<sup>4</sup>, in the middle<sup>6</sup> six<sup>7</sup>, (and) in the lowest<sup>8</sup> three<sup>9</sup>. To the first<sup>10</sup> (set of) passages<sup>11</sup> thou shalt bring<sup>17-18</sup> a thousand<sup>12</sup> offspring<sup>16</sup> of men<sup>13</sup> and<sup>15</sup> of women<sup>14</sup>, to the middle<sup>19</sup> six<sup>20</sup> hundred<sup>21</sup>, (and) to the lowest<sup>22</sup> three<sup>23</sup> hundred<sup>24</sup>. Thou shalt, moreover<sup>26</sup>, seal<sup>25,23</sup> these<sup>27</sup> with (thy) golden<sup>30</sup> signet<sup>29</sup> (-ring); and<sup>32</sup> thou shalt equip<sup>31,35</sup> that<sup>33</sup> *vara*<sup>34</sup> with doors<sup>36\*</sup>, (and) with windows<sup>37\*</sup> (which shall be) self-luminous<sup>38</sup> on the inner<sup>39</sup> side<sup>40</sup>.

12. (31). Thereupon<sup>1</sup> Yima<sup>3</sup> thought<sup>2</sup> (within himself) :

"How<sup>4</sup> indeed<sup>5</sup> shall I<sup>6</sup> make<sup>8</sup> the *vara*<sup>7</sup> about which<sup>9</sup> Ahura<sup>12</sup> Mazda<sup>13</sup> has spoken<sup>11</sup> to me<sup>10</sup> ?"

Then<sup>14</sup> spoke<sup>15</sup> Ahura<sup>16</sup> Mazda<sup>17</sup> to Yima<sup>18</sup> :

"Yima,<sup>19</sup> (thou) fair<sup>20</sup> son of Vivanghvat<sup>21</sup> ! crush-up<sup>25</sup> this<sup>22</sup> earth<sup>23</sup> with (thy) heels<sup>24</sup> (and) knead<sup>27</sup> (it) with (thy) two hands<sup>26</sup>, just-indeed<sup>28-29</sup> as<sup>30</sup> potters<sup>32\*</sup> verily<sup>31</sup> knead<sup>35</sup> the wet<sup>33†</sup> clay<sup>34†</sup>."

13. (32). Then<sup>1</sup> Yima<sup>2</sup> did<sup>4</sup> as-much<sup>3</sup> as<sup>5</sup> Ahura<sup>8</sup> Mazda<sup>9</sup> wished<sup>7</sup> him<sup>6</sup> (to do), he crushed-up<sup>13</sup> this<sup>10</sup> earth<sup>11</sup> with (his) heels<sup>12</sup>, (and) kneaded<sup>15</sup> (it) with (his) two hands<sup>14</sup>, just-indeed<sup>16-17</sup> as<sup>18</sup> potters<sup>20\*</sup> verily<sup>19</sup> knead<sup>23</sup> the wet<sup>21†</sup> clay<sup>22†</sup>.

14. (33). And<sup>1\*</sup> Yima<sup>2</sup> constructed<sup>4</sup> (that) enclosure<sup>3</sup> a-*caratu*<sup>5</sup>-long<sup>6</sup> in<sup>9</sup> each<sup>7</sup> <sup>3†</sup> of the four-sides<sup>10</sup>; thither<sup>11</sup> he carried<sup>13</sup> <sup>14</sup> the offspring<sup>12</sup> of (small) animals<sup>15</sup> and<sup>16</sup> of (large) cattle<sup>17</sup> and<sup>18</sup> of men<sup>19</sup> and<sup>20</sup> of dogs<sup>21</sup> and<sup>22</sup> of birds<sup>23</sup> and<sup>24</sup> (the seed) of the fires<sup>25†</sup> brilliant<sup>27</sup> (and) flaming<sup>28</sup>.

And<sup>29\*</sup> Yima<sup>30</sup> (also) constructed<sup>32</sup> (one) enclosure<sup>31</sup> a-*caratu*<sup>33</sup>-long<sup>34</sup> in<sup>37</sup> each<sup>35</sup> <sup>36†</sup> of the four-sides<sup>38</sup> as a dwelling<sup>40†</sup> for human-beings<sup>39</sup>, ¶ (and also one) a-*caratu*<sup>41</sup>-long<sup>42</sup> in<sup>45</sup> each<sup>43</sup> <sup>44†</sup> of the four-sides<sup>46</sup> as a stall<sup>48</sup> for cattle<sup>47</sup>. ¶

15. (34). Therein<sup>1</sup> he caused the waters<sup>2\*</sup> to flow<sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup> along a course<sup>7</sup> a-*hāgra*<sup>5</sup>-in-length<sup>6†</sup>; near this<sup>3†</sup> he laid out<sup>10</sup> the fields<sup>9</sup>, [(so that) always<sup>12</sup> golden<sup>13</sup>-hued<sup>14</sup>, (and)] in-exhaustible<sup>17</sup> (grain) might be obtained<sup>11</sup> <sup>16¶</sup>. There<sup>18</sup>, (too) he established<sup>20</sup> dwelling-places<sup>19</sup>, (each) house<sup>21¶</sup> with-a-pillared-portico<sup>23</sup> and<sup>24</sup> an (inner) courtyard<sup>25</sup> and<sup>26</sup> an-encircling<sup>27</sup>-wall<sup>28</sup> as well<sup>29</sup>.

16. (35). Therein<sup>1</sup> did he carry<sup>7</sup> <sup>8</sup> the offspring<sup>6\*</sup> of all<sup>2</sup> men<sup>3</sup> and<sup>5</sup> of (all) women<sup>4</sup>, who<sup>9</sup> were<sup>10†</sup> upon this<sup>11</sup> earth<sup>12</sup> the greatest<sup>13</sup> and<sup>14</sup> the best<sup>16</sup> and<sup>15</sup> the finest<sup>17</sup>. † Therein<sup>19</sup> did he carry<sup>24</sup> <sup>25</sup> the offspring<sup>23\*</sup> of all<sup>20</sup> kinds<sup>22</sup> of animals<sup>21</sup>, || which<sup>26</sup> were<sup>27†</sup> upon this<sup>28</sup> earth<sup>29</sup> the greatest<sup>30</sup> and<sup>31</sup> the best<sup>32</sup>, and<sup>33</sup> the finest<sup>34†</sup>.

Verse 11. \* Orig. 2/1. Verses 12 and 13. \* Lit. "men". † Orig. 7/1. Verse 17. \* Lit. "then". † Lit. "whichever". ‡ -ca<sup>26</sup> omitted. ¶ Dat. inf. ¶ Orig. 6/3. Verse 15. \* Orig. sg. † Lit. "measurement". ‡ *hagra*. ¶ *Mat*<sup>15</sup> omitted. ¶ Lit. "eaten". \*\* -ca<sup>23</sup> omitted. Verse 18. \* Lit. "seed". † Orig. pres. ‡ -ca<sup>18</sup> and -ca<sup>15</sup> omitted. ¶ Orig. sg.

17. (36). haθra<sup>1</sup> vispanām<sup>2</sup> urvaranām<sup>3</sup> taoχma<sup>4</sup> upa<sup>6</sup>-baraṭ<sup>4</sup>, yōi<sup>7</sup> hen<sup>ti</sup><sup>8</sup> aīghā<sup>9</sup> zemō<sup>10</sup> barezišta<sup>11</sup>-ca<sup>12</sup> hubaoiḍitema<sup>13</sup>-ca<sup>14</sup>. haθra<sup>15</sup> vispanām<sup>16</sup> χ<sup>v</sup>areθanām<sup>17</sup> taoχma<sup>18</sup> upa<sup>19</sup>-baraṭ<sup>20</sup>, yōi<sup>21</sup> hen<sup>ti</sup><sup>22</sup> aīghā<sup>23</sup> zemō<sup>24</sup> χ<sup>v</sup>arezišta<sup>25</sup>-ca<sup>26</sup> hubaoiḍitema<sup>27</sup>-ca<sup>28</sup>.

tē<sup>29</sup> kerenaot<sup>30</sup> miθwaire<sup>31</sup> ayyamnem<sup>32</sup> vispem<sup>33</sup> ā<sup>34</sup> ahmāt<sup>35</sup> yat<sup>36</sup> aēte<sup>37</sup> narō<sup>38</sup> varefšvō<sup>39</sup> aṇhen<sup>40</sup>.

18. (37). nōit<sup>1</sup> aθra<sup>2</sup> frakavō<sup>3</sup>, nōit<sup>4</sup> apakavō<sup>5</sup>, nōit<sup>6</sup> apāvayō<sup>7</sup>, nōit<sup>8</sup> hareḍiś<sup>9</sup>, nōit<sup>10</sup> driwiś<sup>11</sup>, nōit<sup>12</sup> daiwiś<sup>13</sup>, nōit<sup>14</sup> kasviś<sup>15</sup>, nōit<sup>16</sup> vižbāriś<sup>17</sup>, nōit<sup>18</sup> vimitō<sup>19</sup>-dantānō<sup>20</sup>, nōit<sup>21</sup> paēsō<sup>22</sup> yō<sup>23</sup> vitere<sup>24</sup>-t-nuś<sup>25</sup>, naēḍa<sup>26</sup>-cim<sup>27</sup> anyām<sup>28</sup> daχstānām<sup>29</sup>, yōi<sup>30</sup> hen<sup>ti</sup><sup>31</sup> Aṇrahe<sup>32</sup> Mainyēuś<sup>33</sup> daχstem<sup>34</sup> mašyāiś<sup>35</sup>-ca<sup>36</sup> paiti<sup>37</sup> niḍātem<sup>38</sup>.

19. (39). fratemem<sup>1</sup> daiḡhēuś<sup>2</sup> nava<sup>3</sup> pereθwō<sup>4</sup> kerenaot<sup>5</sup>, maḍemō<sup>6</sup> χšvaś<sup>7</sup>, nitēmō<sup>8</sup> tišrō<sup>9</sup>. fratemem<sup>10</sup> pereθwō<sup>11</sup> hazayrem<sup>12</sup> narām<sup>13</sup> nā.rinām<sup>14</sup>-ca<sup>15</sup> taoχma<sup>16</sup> upa<sup>17</sup>-baraṭ<sup>18</sup>, maḍemō<sup>19</sup> χšvaś<sup>20</sup> sata<sup>21</sup>, nitēmō<sup>22</sup> tišrō<sup>23</sup> sata<sup>24</sup>. aiwi<sup>25</sup>-ca<sup>26</sup> hō<sup>27</sup> varefšva<sup>28</sup> suwrya<sup>29</sup> žara-naēnya<sup>30</sup>; aipi<sup>31</sup>-ca<sup>32</sup> hō<sup>33</sup> varem<sup>34</sup> marezaṭ<sup>35</sup> dvarem<sup>36</sup> raocanem<sup>37</sup> χ<sup>v</sup>āraoχšnem<sup>38</sup> antare<sup>39</sup>-naēmāt<sup>40</sup>.

20. (39). Dātarō<sup>1</sup> gaēθanām<sup>2</sup> astvaitinām<sup>3</sup> ašāum<sup>4</sup>, cayō<sup>5</sup> āaṭ<sup>6</sup> aēte<sup>7</sup> raocā<sup>8</sup> aṇhen<sup>9</sup>, ašāum<sup>10</sup> Ahura<sup>11</sup> Mazda<sup>12</sup>, yō<sup>13</sup> avaθa<sup>14</sup> ā<sup>15</sup>-raocayēte<sup>16</sup> aētaēšva<sup>17</sup> varefšva<sup>18</sup>, yō<sup>19</sup> Yimō<sup>20</sup> kerenoit<sup>21</sup> ?

21. (40). āaṭ<sup>1</sup> aoχta<sup>2</sup> Aburō<sup>3</sup> Mazdā<sup>4</sup>:

χ<sup>v</sup>aḍāta<sup>5</sup>-ca<sup>6</sup> raocā<sup>7</sup> stiḍāta<sup>8</sup>-ca<sup>9</sup>: hakeret<sup>10</sup> zī<sup>11</sup> iriχtahe<sup>12</sup> saḍ-aya<sup>13</sup>-ca<sup>14</sup> vaēnaite<sup>15</sup> staras<sup>16</sup>-ca<sup>17</sup>, mā<sup>18</sup>-ca<sup>19</sup> hvare<sup>20</sup>-ca<sup>21</sup>; taē<sup>22</sup>-ca<sup>23</sup> ayare<sup>24</sup> mainyente<sup>25</sup> yat<sup>26</sup> yāre<sup>27</sup>.\*

\* The words taē-ca . . . yāre are included by Geld. in verse 41.

17. (36). Therein<sup>1</sup> did he carry<sup>5-6</sup> the seed<sup>4</sup> of all<sup>2</sup> trees<sup>3</sup> which<sup>1</sup> were<sup>3\*</sup> upon this<sup>9</sup> earth<sup>10</sup> the tallest<sup>11</sup> and<sup>12</sup> the sweetest-scented<sup>13</sup>.† Therein<sup>15</sup> did he carry<sup>19-20</sup> the seed<sup>13</sup> of all<sup>16</sup> fruits<sup>17</sup> which<sup>21</sup> were<sup>22\*</sup> upon this<sup>23</sup> earth<sup>24</sup> the best-of-savour<sup>25</sup> and<sup>28</sup> the sweetest-scented<sup>27</sup>.†

(All) these<sup>29</sup> did he take<sup>30</sup>† in-pairs<sup>31</sup> (and did preserve) each<sup>33</sup>|| (pair) safe-from-harm<sup>32</sup> through<sup>34</sup> that<sup>35</sup> (time), (during) which<sup>36</sup> these<sup>37</sup> people<sup>39</sup> were<sup>40</sup> within the vara<sup>39</sup>.

18. (37). (There<sup>6</sup> were) here<sup>2</sup> neither<sup>1</sup> the bulging-chested<sup>3</sup>, nor<sup>4</sup> the hump-backed<sup>5</sup>, nor<sup>6</sup> the impotent<sup>7</sup>, nor<sup>8</sup> the lunatic<sup>9</sup>, nor<sup>10</sup> the pitted-faced<sup>11</sup>,\* nor<sup>12</sup> the emaciated<sup>13</sup>, nor<sup>14</sup> the undersized<sup>15</sup>,† nor<sup>16</sup> the crooked (limbed)<sup>17</sup>, nor<sup>18</sup> (any) possessing-decayed<sup>19</sup>-teeth<sup>20</sup>, nor<sup>21</sup> the leprous<sup>22</sup>, who<sup>23</sup> (have the disease) spread<sup>24</sup>-over-the body<sup>25</sup>, nor-indeed<sup>26</sup> (one showing) any<sup>27</sup> of the other<sup>28</sup> signs<sup>29</sup>, which<sup>30</sup> are<sup>31</sup> the marks<sup>34</sup>‡ of Aprō-Mainyuš<sup>33</sup> put<sup>35</sup> upon<sup>37</sup> mankind.<sup>36</sup>||

Kan. takes all the words here in a moral sense; I give here a trans. of his Gujarati rendering (Ven., p. 64):—

In there<sup>2</sup> (in the enclosure) (there was) no<sup>1</sup> pride<sup>3</sup>, nor<sup>4</sup> laziness<sup>5</sup> (or back-biting), nor<sup>6</sup> unholiness<sup>7</sup>, nor<sup>8</sup> tyranny<sup>9</sup>, nor<sup>10</sup> misery<sup>11</sup>, nor<sup>12</sup> deception<sup>13</sup>, nor<sup>14</sup> meanness<sup>15</sup>, nor<sup>16</sup> dishonesty<sup>17</sup>, nor<sup>19</sup> crooked<sup>19</sup>-teeth<sup>20</sup> (i.e. evil-speaking), nor<sup>21</sup> leprosy<sup>22</sup> which<sup>23</sup> spreads<sup>24</sup>-over-the-body<sup>25</sup>, nor-indeed<sup>26</sup> any<sup>27</sup> of the other<sup>28</sup> characteristics<sup>29</sup>, which<sup>30</sup> are<sup>31</sup> the characteristics<sup>34</sup> of Aprō<sup>32</sup>-Mainyuš<sup>33</sup> and<sup>36</sup> lead<sup>33</sup> to<sup>37</sup> death<sup>36</sup> (lit. connected with death¶).

19. (38). Within the first<sup>1</sup> part<sup>2</sup> (of the vara) he made<sup>5</sup> nine<sup>3</sup> passages<sup>4</sup>, in the middle<sup>6</sup> six<sup>7</sup>, (and) in the lowest<sup>8</sup> three<sup>9</sup>. To the first<sup>10</sup> (set of) passages<sup>11</sup> he brought<sup>17-18</sup> a thousand<sup>12</sup> offspring<sup>16</sup> of men<sup>13</sup> and<sup>15</sup> of women<sup>14</sup>, to the middle<sup>19</sup> six<sup>20</sup> hundred<sup>21</sup>, (and) to the lowest<sup>22</sup> three<sup>23</sup> hundred<sup>24</sup>. He, moreover<sup>26</sup>, sealed<sup>25,28</sup> these<sup>27</sup> with (his) golden<sup>30</sup> signet<sup>29</sup>-(ring) and<sup>32</sup> he did equip<sup>31,35</sup> that<sup>33</sup> vara<sup>34</sup> with doors<sup>36</sup>\* (and) with windows<sup>37</sup>\* (which were) self-luminous<sup>35</sup> on the innerside<sup>40</sup>.

20. (39). O holy<sup>4</sup> Creator<sup>1</sup> of the material<sup>5</sup> worlds<sup>2</sup>, which<sup>5</sup> then<sup>6</sup> were<sup>9</sup> those<sup>7</sup> lights<sup>8</sup>, O holy<sup>10</sup> Ahura<sup>11</sup> Mazda<sup>12</sup>, which<sup>13</sup> thus<sup>14</sup> lighted<sup>16</sup> up<sup>16</sup> with-in these<sup>17\*\*</sup> enclosures<sup>18</sup>,\*\* which<sup>19</sup> Yima<sup>20</sup> constructed<sup>21</sup> ?

21. (40). Thereupon<sup>1</sup> Ahura<sup>3</sup> Mazda<sup>4</sup> said<sup>2</sup> :

(Those) lights<sup>7</sup> (were) both<sup>6\*\*</sup> natural<sup>5</sup> and<sup>7</sup> artificial<sup>8</sup> : once<sup>10</sup> only<sup>11</sup> (in the year) the stars<sup>16</sup>, and<sup>17</sup> the moon<sup>18</sup>, and<sup>19</sup> the sun<sup>20</sup>†† are seen<sup>15</sup> to set<sup>12</sup>‡ and<sup>14</sup> to rise<sup>13</sup>††; and<sup>23</sup> they<sup>22</sup> think<sup>25</sup> what<sup>26</sup> (is) a year<sup>27</sup> (to be) a day<sup>24</sup>.

Verse 17. Lit. "are".

† -ca<sup>14</sup> and -ca<sup>28</sup> omitted.

‡ Lit. "make".

|| Lit.

"all". Verse 18. \* Barth. suggests that this word may refer to the marks of small-pox; Wb. 778. † Barth. gives a word *kaṇiḥka* (Ven. XVIII, 34) which he trans. as "mew" (Wb. 461).

‡ Orig. sg.

|| -ca<sup>36</sup> omitted.

¶ Kan. reads *maṣaṣ*.

Verse 19. \*

Orig. sg.

Verse 20. \* The plu. referring to the three portions of the vara.

Verse 21. \* Lit. "and".

+ -ca<sup>22</sup> omitted. ‡ Orig. verbal nouns.

22. (41). caθwaresatem<sup>1</sup> aiwi<sup>2</sup>-gāmanām<sup>3</sup> dyaēibya<sup>4</sup> haca<sup>5</sup> nerebya<sup>6</sup>  
dva<sup>7</sup> nara<sup>8</sup> us<sup>9</sup>-zayeinte<sup>10</sup> miθwana<sup>11</sup> stri<sup>12</sup>-ca<sup>13</sup> nairyas<sup>14</sup>-ca<sup>15</sup>; aθa<sup>16</sup>  
aētaēšām<sup>17</sup> yōi<sup>18</sup> gōuš<sup>19</sup> sareḍanām<sup>20</sup>. taē<sup>21</sup>-ca<sup>22</sup> narō<sup>23</sup> sraēsta<sup>24</sup>  
gaya<sup>25</sup> jvaīnti<sup>26</sup> aētaēšva<sup>27</sup> varefšva<sup>28</sup>, yō<sup>29</sup> Yimō<sup>30</sup> kerenaot<sup>31</sup>.

23. (42). Dātare<sup>1</sup> gaēθanām<sup>2</sup> astvaitinām<sup>3</sup> ašāum<sup>4</sup>! kō<sup>5</sup> avaθa<sup>6</sup> daē-  
nām<sup>7</sup> māddayasnīm<sup>8</sup> vi<sup>9</sup>-baraṭ<sup>10</sup> aētaēšva<sup>11</sup> varēfšva<sup>12</sup>, yō<sup>13</sup> Yimō<sup>14</sup>  
kerenaot<sup>15</sup>?

āat<sup>16</sup> aoxtu<sup>17</sup> Ahurō<sup>18</sup> Mazdā<sup>19</sup>: viš<sup>20</sup> Karšipta<sup>21</sup>, Spitama<sup>22</sup> Zara-  
θuštra<sup>23</sup>.

24. (43). Dātare<sup>1</sup> gaēθanām<sup>2</sup> astvaitinām<sup>3</sup> ašāum<sup>4</sup>! kō<sup>5</sup> aēsām<sup>6</sup> asti  
aṇhu<sup>7</sup>-ca<sup>8</sup> ratuš<sup>10</sup>-ca<sup>11</sup>?

āat<sup>12</sup> mraot<sup>13</sup> Ahurō<sup>14</sup> Mazdā<sup>15</sup>: Urvatat-narō<sup>16</sup>, Zaraθuštra<sup>17</sup>,  
tūm<sup>18</sup>-ca<sup>19</sup> yō<sup>20</sup> Zaraθuštrō<sup>21</sup>.

22. (41). (Every) fortieth<sup>1</sup> winter<sup>2-3\*</sup> unto<sup>5</sup> (each) pair<sup>4</sup> of human-beings<sup>6</sup> were born<sup>9-10</sup> two<sup>7</sup> human<sup>8</sup>(-beings), twins<sup>11</sup>, a girl<sup>12</sup> and<sup>13</sup> boy<sup>14†</sup> thus<sup>16</sup> (also was it) with those<sup>17‡</sup> (various) kinds<sup>20</sup> of animals<sup>19||</sup>. And<sup>22</sup> (all) these<sup>21</sup> human beings<sup>23</sup> lived<sup>26¶</sup> a happy<sup>24\*\*\*</sup> life<sup>25</sup> in those<sup>27</sup> enclosures<sup>28</sup> which<sup>29</sup> Yima<sup>30</sup> had constructed<sup>31</sup>.

23. (42). O holy<sup>4</sup> Creator<sup>1</sup> of the material<sup>3</sup> world<sup>2</sup>! Who<sup>5</sup> brought<sup>9-10</sup> the religion<sup>7</sup> of Mazda-worship<sup>8</sup> in-that-place<sup>6</sup>, in those<sup>11</sup> enclosures<sup>12</sup>, which<sup>13</sup> Yima<sup>14</sup> had constructed<sup>15</sup>?

Thereupon<sup>16</sup> Ahura<sup>18</sup> Mazda<sup>19</sup> said<sup>17</sup>: (It was) the bird<sup>20</sup> Karšipta<sup>21</sup>, O Spitama<sup>22</sup> Zaratuštra<sup>23</sup>.

24. (43). O holy<sup>4</sup> Creator<sup>1</sup> of the material<sup>3</sup> world<sup>2</sup>! Who<sup>5</sup> was<sup>7\*</sup> among these<sup>6†</sup> the Chief<sup>3</sup> and<sup>9</sup> (who) the Spiritual-Lord<sup>10</sup>?‡

Thereupon<sup>12</sup> Ahura<sup>14</sup> Mazda<sup>15</sup> said<sup>13</sup>: “Urvatat-nara<sup>16</sup>, O Zaratuštra<sup>17</sup> (was the Chief) and<sup>19</sup> thou<sup>18</sup>, who<sup>20</sup> (art) Zaratuštra<sup>21||</sup> (the Spiritual, Lord).”

---

*Verse 22.* \* Orig. 6/3. † -a<sup>15</sup> omitted. ‡ Orig. 6/3, and *yōi* omitted. || Orig. sg.  
¶ All the verbs are present in form \*\* Lit. “best.”. *Verse 24.* \* Orig. pres. † Orig. 6/3.  
‡ -ca<sup>11</sup> omitted. || Zaratuštra as already mentioned before was the name of the highest spiritual leader of Irān.

## NOTES.

1. Kanga: Vendidad (Guj. trans., 2nd ed., 1884\*), pp. 61-67.
2. Darmesteter: S.B.E., IV, pp. 15-21.
3. Reichelt: Avesta Reader, pp. 37-43 (text) and pp. 138-141 (notes).
4. Pt. Vidhuśekhara Bhattācharya: Bengali trans.†

The Vendidad (*Vidaēvadāt*), as the name implies, is a collection of "rules against the Daēvas", rules, that is, for the various departments of activity in the life of a Zoroastrian, which are calculated to keep him away from the path of the Daēvas. Most of this book deals with the ceremonies of physical purification, and the methods of protection against the attacks of various types of Druj, which represent the various impurities.‡ Interspersed here are various legends and myths, some of them going back to a very remote antiquity and representing the undivided Aryan (i.e. Indo-Iranian) period. The legend of Yima, the son of Vivanhvāt (यम, son of विवह्वान् ||), is of this latter class. As given in the second Fragard of the Ven. this story falls into two clearly marked divisions, 1-19 and 20-43. The first part tells us that Ahura Mazda asked "the fair Yima, the son of Vivanhvāt," to spread the law of Mazda among the mortals of this earth. Yima, however, pleaded his unworthiness to undertake the salvation of human souls and so he was asked to protect his subjects (both man and beast) from all the ills of flesh. In this he was eminently successful and his rule of over nine hundred years was the Golden Age of Iranian mythology.§ When nine hundred years of the rule of Yima had passed, Ahura Mazda appeared unto him again and gave him warning of an approaching disaster. This warning and the steps Yima took to guard those under his charge form this catastrophe form the subject-matter of the second half of this Fragard.

The disaster predicted by Ahura is the approach of snow and winter over the fair face of Airyana Vaēja where Yima ruled. He is commanded to build a *vara*, or enclosure, in which he should preserve those who deserve protection, and from these who were thus preserved the earth was to be repopled. The story of Manu and the Deluge,\*\* and of Noah and his Ark†† at once suggest themselves as parallels. The story of the Deluge does represent a great catastrophe in the history of the human race, otherwise we would not get it practically among all the nations of the world.‡‡ But there is one very significant difference between the Avestic tradition and the other legends of the Deluge, viz. that the former speaks of ice and

\* The first ed. (1874) contained a glossary and a valuable note replying to the criticism brought by the Rev. Dr. Wilson of Bombay against the contents of the Vendidad. See Int. † The whole of Vendidad II has been translated lately by this learned Pandit in शान्तिनिकेतन, Vol. II, No. 3 (Aṣṭā, 1327), pp. 146-156. The magazine is published at Rabindranath Tagore's Brahmacharyaśrama at Bolpur. The title of the article is पारसीकप्रसंग. ‡ See Int. § RV., X. 14. 1. ¶ Cf. Yas. IX, 4-5, Sel. I. \*\* Śat. Br., I. 6. 3; Mbh., Vana., 187; Matsya Purāṇa, I., and Bhāg. Purāṇa, VIII. 24. †† Genesis, vi-viii. ‡‡ Donnelly in his *Atlantis* gives a detailed account of all these.



snow destroying a fair land and its people, while the others speak of a deluge of waters. This difference of treatment in what, at first sight, appears to be the same tradition is deserving of some notice. But no Western writer seems to have drawn any conclusion from this difference at all. We would probably be justified in taking the Deluge legend and the Avestic story of Yima as distinctly separate traditions but with some features in common. At any rate the localities might have been distinct and that is the most important point to consider. The Deluge might reasonably be taken to embody the memory of a gigantic catastrophe which impressed our remote ancestors very deeply indeed—so deeply that the tradition itself has come down through all the succeeding millenia.\* This event might well have been the catastrophic flooding of the Mediterranean basin, about which event there is no doubt among geological authorities.† And it may also be noted that this event took place about the end of the last glacial period. Chronology in these matters is very doubtful and experts put this great flood at any thing up to 30,000 years ago. In any case the main point is that human beings did then exist upon earth. Probably both the events—the Deluge and the Ice-Age—were somehow connected and we may be almost certain that in the mind of the humanity of that period the events were in close association. This would sufficiently account for the similarity of treatment, though I believe the Avesta legend records an event quite distinct from that of the Deluge.

Only one writer, as far as I know, B. G. Tilak, has attempted any reasonable explanation of this in his book on *The Arctic Home in the Vedas*.‡ He holds this avestic tradition to be “a distinct reminiscence, however fragmentary, of the ancient Aryan home”. He takes the first two chapters of the Ven. as connected together and forming one whole; “they have no connection with the subsequent chapters of the book, and appear to be incorporated into it simply as a relic of old historical or traditional literature”. The first Fragard enumerates the sixteen lands created by Ahura Mazdā and describes how in opposition Anro Mainyu created different ills or plagues to disturb the good creation of Ahura. The first land mentioned is Airyana Vaejā which Anro Mainyu strove to overcome with snow and ice. Scholars have identified these lands with the existing provinces of Persia.¶ But Tilak thinks that this enumeration is not merely geographical, but more or less a *historical* one; in other words, he thinks that this enumeration mentions the lands *successively* occupied by the Iranian peoples in the course of their long wanderings from their ancient Airyana Vaejā, and it also gives the causes why each land had to be vacated in turn. There is nothing intrinsically impossible in such a view of the matter. Of course, there must have been alterations made in these

\* Of course the actual writing down of this story must have been ages after the event actually took place. † See H. G. Wells, *The Outline of History* (1920), XI, § 8. (Vol. I, pp. 70-71). ‡ Chapter XI. I give only the more important points of this intensely fascinating and (to me) very convincing chapter. The quotations given here are from this chapter. Tilak (op. cit., p. 359) gives a good comparative table of these identifications by various scholars.

traditions and names might have got mixed up or the order might have got somewhat changed, but the essential idea holds good. Finding similar names in modern Persia would not justify us in taking it as identical with "the cradle of the Āryas", any more than finding Windsor and Surrey and other names in New Zealand would do for identifying that country with the ancient home of the English race. As Tilak has put it "but for the preconceived notion that the original home of the Iranians cannot be placed in the far north . . . no scholar would have cared to put forward such guesses".

The whole story of the overwhelming of the ancient land by the powers of the Evil One is clearly stated, in Ven. I. 3-4:

3. "The first of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was the Airyana Vaējō, by the Vānuhi Dāitya.

Thereupon came Anrō Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter-created the serpent in the river and winter, a work of the Daēvas.

4. "There are ten winter months there, two summer months; and those are cold for the waters, cold for the earth, cold for the trees. Winter falls there, the worst of all plagues".\*

The latter verse states in unequivocal terms the climatic catastrophe which made the whole region absolutely incapable of bearing life.† The allusion to the serpent is also noteworthy—he is the Vṛtra of the Vedas who used to lock up the waters.‡ This passage, therefore, with the legend of Yima given in the second Fragard may be taken as conclusive in support of the Arctic theory.||

Coming to the second Fragard itself we see here first the clear warning given to Yima about the approaching encroachment of snow and winter—snow which would extend upto "fourteen-fingers above the mountain tops", according to the Pahlavi commentators. I translate the passage as meaning that snow and ice would extend from the high mountain tops upto the depths of the ocean.¶ Then Yima according to the instructions received, builds his *vara*, and in this *vara* the sun and other heavenly bodies rose but once a year, "and a year seems only as a day".\*\* This latter point is no mere poetic imagination but it embodies a long forgotten truth about the ancient home, which even the writer of the Fragard may or may not have clearly understood.††

\* Dar., S.B.E., IV, pp. 3-4. † The Lab. gloss, quoted by Dar, (loc. cit.), states: "it is known (in the ordinary course of nature) there are seven months of summer and five of winter". The Pab. writer was evidently thinking of the climate of Persia in the Sassanian period. ‡ Tilak, op. cit., Chap. IX. || There are other supporting passages (notably one regarding the keeping of dead bodies in the house during long winter nights—even upto a month at a time, Ven., V. 10-13), which are mentioned by Tilak, loc. cit.

¶ See the notes on verse 3, pp. 231 f. \*\* Ven. II, 40 (see below). †† Possibly there was some vague understanding of the fact of a Polar home. Nair., who certainly had inherited a long tradition, transcribes all proper names of Avesta into *devanāgarī* letters, more or less accurately, but he translates the name *Hara-bareza* by the Skt. मेरु. Both these names indicate the centre of the ancient land, i.e. the North Pole.

The whole of this direct traditional evidence contained in these two Fragards may be now summed up:

1. The land of Airyana Vaēja enjoyed salubrious climate and was a land of plenty and prosperity, first created among the countries of the world to cradle the Aryan race.

2. This land was made uninhabitable by the oncoming of horrible winters and deep snow and ice, which destroyed all life.

3. The *vara* (or enclosure) of Yima was so situated that it had a year equal to a day.

It would seem difficult to *avoid* the obvious conclusion that this is a tradition of the destruction of the Polar home which once possessed genial climate and where mankind grew and flourished till the glacial period completely destroyed this paradise. But the fact remains, nevertheless, that this conclusion has not been arrived at by any of the earlier scholars. And when the snow came and covered up the land the people were pressed southwards\* to other lands and very probably we have the story of their migrations in the first Fragard.

There is another point in this story which is also common to the traditions of all countries—the destruction of the world owing to sins accumulating and the preservation of the best in the dying race in order that after the destruction is complete a new and regenerated race might take the place of the old one. The choice of the “colonists” into the *vara* made by Yima under Divine guidance is very interesting from the point of view of eugenics and of race-preservation. Just at the present day, when the old order lies dead and a new order is struggling fiercely to come into being, this old old story of Yima’s choosing the right type of people for future generations is of deep interest. It shows us that at the birth of every new civilisation there is a careful selection of the best of a race, who survive to carry on the work of God at a higher level. Thus, in spite of wholesale destructions from time to time, humanity as a whole has gone forward. The present need of the world, owing the Great War and the resulting unrest and chaos, seems to be a wise selection of people possessing the qualities which are to build up the newer and greater race that is to be. The qualifications which guided Yima in the choice are surprisingly like what our modern thinkers say are needed to-day. Even in the infancy of our Aryan race we had thought out the same problems that are pressing us to-day and this echo of a long forgotten past has its special message for us to-day.

As regards language, the *Vendidad* is almost entirely in prose. But the prose is vigorous and the evident ease with which it is handled points to a

---

\* It is significant that before the ice-age came upon Airyana Vaēja, Yima had to extend his domains thrice on account of the growing numbers of his people and each time he extended them southwards, Ven. II, 10, 14 and 18.

long history of the development of prose style in ancient Irān. Unfortunately we do not possess specimens illustrative of the development. But we can conclude from what we know of the development of prose style in other languages, that in Avesta too the earliest prose was very clumsy, and that gradually it developed into an instrument of great power. We possess specimens of the oldest Avestic prose, like the passages in Yas. XIX-XXI\* which show the clumsy beginnings. It is evidently an instrument rarely and therefore awkwardly, wielded. We do not possess pieces which may be put down in a regular historical sequence of development. The Vendidād is the final stage of prose in the extant Av. literature. It shows here considerable development. The style is vigorous and direct and the sentences are well-balanced and express their meaning clearly. There is no confusion of sentences as with the earlier examples and hence the Vendidād forms in some respects the easiest of the Av. texts.

1. (20).† Dar. omits the verse before this because it belongs to the commentary, and he numbers this verse as 21. Kan. too numbers this verse 21 because he puts down as 20 the verse from the commentary. Geld. does not give that verse in his text nor does Spiegel.‡ Reich. gives only half this verse (the first para) and says the rest is a later addition.¶

*hanjamaṇam*—See Yas. XII, 5 (Sel. V) above.

*frabarata*—When ātm. √bar with *frā* means to call together, to bring about.

*dādvā*—The Creator.

*haθra*—Together with. This governs the ins. (cf. सन्ना जनेन RV., VII. 93. 5) or sometimes the dat. (as here) or the loc.¶

*mainyaoibyo*—The word is here used in the sense of “celestial” or “divine”. In Parsi Guj. the word मौनी is used in the same sense, e.g. मौनोई जेहान (the heaven-world).

*grūtō*—Kan. takes it as an adj. to *Mazdā*, Dar. trans. “in Ai. Vaē of high renown”. The case is irregular as Dar. takes it, but the trans. of Kan. does not seem to fit in with the following phrase.

*vaghūyā Dāityā*—The Dāityā was one of the holy rivers of Irān. The epithet *vaguhi* is often added on to the name. This river is said to be the chief of the rivers.\*\* The Bun. mentions (XX, 13) that “the Dāitik river is a river which comes out of Airān-Vēj and goes out through the hill-country.”†† Justi identifies this with the Araxes.‡‡ Dar. also thinks that it is the Araxes, he says|| that this river was named *Vaguhi* and that the name signified “the Vaguhi of the law (the Vaguhi by which

\* Sel. VIII above. † The numbers in brackets refer to the “verses” in Ven. II. ‡ Kan., Ven., p. 61, ftn. ¶ A.R., p. 130. ¶ Barth., Wb. 1762. \*\* Bun., XXIV, 14. †† West, S.B.E., V, pp. 78-79. He gives the Av. references on p. 78 (ftn. 8) but he thinks “this may not be a river, though this phrase has, no doubt, led to locating the river Dāitik in Airān Vēj”. ‡‡ Ib., p. 79, ftn. ||| S.B.E. IV, p. 4, ftn.

Z. received the Law)". Z. performed his first act of worship in Irān on the banks of this river and here he received his first disciple, his cousin Maiḍyōi-māṇha. Hence the river has got its sacredness in Z. literature. Jackson thinks it was perhaps a border stream between two territorial divisions".\* But he identifies the stream with Safēd Rūd (the Amardos of Ptolemaeus' Geography). The case is 6/1 but trans. "on the banks of".

*mašyākaēibyō*—The word is a derivative of *mašya* and means the same thing. Cf. *अक*-suff. in Skt. (Whit. § 1181).

2. (21). *paiti-jasaṭ*—Dar. trans. simply "came". Kan. trans. "came to confess", or "came to meet" (संभे सव्यो).

3. (22). *Vivayhana*—A patronymic from *Vivahvant* (विवस्वत्)†. The name of Yima's father occurs only a few times in the Av.‡, chiefly in this Fragment of the Ven. and in Yas. IX.

*avi*—upon.

*ayam* goes with *ahum*, but Dar. takes this as an adj. to *zimō*. He seems to have been thinking of the word *Malkōšān* in the Pah., which he traces to the Av. *Mahrkūšā*, a demon mentioned only once in a Fragment.|| *Malkōs* however is mentioned several times in Pah. literature as a demon who will produce intense cold and all living things will perish and thereafter the "Vara of Yima" will again be of use for repeopling the earth.¶

*zimō* (v.l. *zamō*, Reich., also Barth.)—1/3. Barth. thinks that *zamō* is the better reading.\*\* The noun is *zyām* m. (see Jack., A.G., § 318, note 2).

*jaghəntu* (v. l. *ti*)—3 1 s.aor. imp. in the sense of fut.††

*staχrō*—Orig. adj. meaning "hard" or "firm", applied especially to the winter's frost with its iron grip. The word occurs here and in Wester. Fr. VIII. 2, where it also means "strong" or "hard"—*zaya avaḥa staχrō yaṭ* (the winter is hence strong). Reich here also trans. "a strong.... winter." Dar. says "fierce... winter." Cf. O.H.G. *stahal*, steel.‡‡

*mrūrō* (μπ.)—Deadly.

*zyā*—1/1 of *zyām*.

*snaoδō*—1/1. Clouds (collective noun||), Barth. Kan. takes the word as compared with the *vāfra* following and trans. "thick snowflakes" (Dict., p. 541). Dar. also takes similarly. Kan. says that the word is originally in the sense of falling or dripping (, / *snud*, स्नुद्)¶¶ and the derivatives of this word are especially used for snow. The word *snaoδa* may have originally meant a "snow-drift" and hence come to signify excessive

\* Z., pp. 196-197; see also p. 211. † Barth., Wb. 1451. ‡ Modi, Dict., p. 174. § Wester. Fr. VIII. 2; the same passage has the word *mōirōs* which is probably the same word; see Barth., Wb. 1147 and 1176. ¶ *Didāstān-i-Dīnāh*, XXXVII, 94-95, also *Dīnkart*, I, 24 and VIII, 3-4; see also S.B.E., XVIII, p. 109, fn. 2 and p. 479. \*\* Wb. 1700; also Reich., § 280. †† Jack., A.G., § 603. ‡‡ Barth., Wb. 1581. ||| *Gewölkk*, Barth., Wb. 1826, he compares Bal. *nōd*. ¶¶ Used in Yt. XIX, 80 (see Kan., Yt. b. M., p. 376, fn.), in the sense of dropping tears.

or powerful. The word is used, besides here, in three other compounds *snaodo-manah*, °*vacah* and °*šyaothna*, all in Vyt. 31. Barth. (Wb. 1626f.) calls these spurious and meaningless; but Kan. (Dict., 540-41) trans. these as, "of effective thought", "of effective word" and "of effective deed", respectively.

-*vafra*—Snow. Mod. Pers. برف (*barf*).

*snaēzāt*—Subj. √*snaēg* (Barth., Wb. 1626), to fall as snow. Kan. postulates √*sniz* to snow (स्निज्).\* The O. H. G. *snīwit*, Lith., *snēga* and Lat. *nix* (°*snix*) are cognate words. Is this √*snaēg* also connected with *snaoda* above?

*bāṣnubyō* (𐬨𐬀𐬎)—Depth or height. Note that it is 4 3 while the previous two words are 5 3. Reich. however calls this an "ablativus comparationis" (§ 481).

*arəduyā*—Dar. takes this as a measure of length and trans. the phrase *barəzištaēbyō* . . . *arəduyā* thus: "even an *aredvi* deep on the highest tops of mountains". Apparently he followed an explanation given in Pah. which says, "even where it (the snow) is least, it will be one *vitasti* two fingers deep" i.e., as Dar. explains, 14 fingers deep.† Sp. takes *arəduyā* to be "height" or "mountain" (a sort of variant of *arəḍva*?) and Har. also takes it the same way.‡ But the *arəḍvi* is found so often in Av. as the name of the great waters from which all the rivers of the earth take their rise. The word is cognate with 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀, 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀, and Grk. ἄρδω. In later times the worship of the goddess *Aredvi-sūra Anāhita* gained great strength all over Persia and in other lands. Yt. XI is dedicated to her, as also one Nyāyīš.

4. (23). *θrižat-ca* (𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀)—Barth. takes this as 1/1 n. of °*zan̥t*, ¶ and trans. "a third". Kan. takes it as adv. (orig. 5 1) and trans. "from three regions".\*\* Dar. omits the word altogether. There is also a word *θrižvat* found in Ven. IX. 39, which is rendered by "thrice" or "threefold".†† I am inclined to take both these words to mean the same thing and would like the trans. here "of three kinds". Pt. Vidhusekhara seems to support this view, for he suggests that out of five kinds of animals††† the three kinds mentioned here shall be saved.

\* Dict., p. 542. † S.B.E., IV, p. 16, fn. 1. The idea is that snow would reach to a height of at least 14 fingers above the highest mountains (cf. अत्यतिष्ठदशङ्गुलम् RV., X. 90. 1). ‡ Quoted by Modi, p. 16. 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 seems to have acquired the sense of sweetness (sweet liquids) in the RV. The epithet 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 is used in three places in the sense of "giver of good things" (Grass., Wb. 289); cf. also 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 चिददूषा (RV., VIII. 77. 11). ¶ Wb. 812. \*\* Dict., p. 233, †† Jack., A.G., § 376 †† Mentioned in Yas. LXXI. 9, these are *upāpa* (those living in water), *upama* (those living upon land), *fraptərəjāt* (possessed of wings, lit. progressing by flying), *varan-carat* (moving about free, i.e. wild, as opposed to domesticated, animals) and *cayra-ṭhak* (those which gather together on the meadows, i.e. domesticated animals). The types of these last are mentioned in Bun., (XIV. 6) to be goat, sheep, camel, pig, horse and ass; cf. Yt. XII. 7, 9, 11, 15, 23, (Barth., Wb. 580).

*apajasat*—Shall disappear, lit. shall come away from; cf. Hād. II. 16. Dar. says, “shall take shelter in”. Barth., though he gives the sense given here for the passage from Hād., trans. this differently as “shall escape (with their lives)”,\* and also quotes Ven. VII. 39† where the word bears the latter sense. Kan. also trans. similarly.

*θwyāstamaēšu*—Most terrific. The Pah. commentary most curiously thinks that the sandy and salt deserts round Ispahan are meant.‡ The word is from ♦ *θwi* (= मि), the θ being prefixed partly to avoid confusing with the particle *wi* (or *vi*) and partly under the influence of *θbiš*; cf. *θwaēšāt* above in Yas. LVII, 18 (p. 75).

*asayhām*—The word means “place” or “region”. It is trans. in Skt. where it occurs elsewhere as स्थान. Barth. compares आशा (= दिशः).||

*jāfsnušva*—7.3. The word always occurs with *raonām* and means the valley (of a river).¶ Barth. connects *jafra* (deep), Mod. Pers. جاف (zharf), depth. Kan. connects *jap* (जम्), to gape; cf. “a yawning chasm.”

*raonām*—Kan. is curiously misled by the sound and trans. the word as “ravine” (sic)¶ and takes it from a root *rū* (= रू), to cut or separate. The word however means a river.

*paxrumaēšu*—Dar. construes the last two words with *apajasat* and trans. “shall take shelter in underground houses”. Kan. and Barth. trans. the word as “strong”, but Kan. construes like Dar. Barth. takes the last two words in apposition to *jāfsnušva* and trans. the whole phrase *yašt*<sup>19</sup>-ca<sup>20</sup> . . . *nmanaēšu*<sup>24</sup> thus: “and those who live in the valleys of the rivers in strong houses” and explains that this refers to domesticated animals kept in well-built stalls as opposed to the animals of the deserts and of the mountains.\*\*

The idea in this verse seems to be that all creatures shall be destroyed, those that roam free in the forests and in the mountains, as well as the domesticated animals, which are kept by human beings in their settlements along the river valleys, and which are protected from the rigors of winter by well-built stables and stalls.

5. (24). Geld. prints this verse in two parts, the first four *pādas* as verse, the rest as prose. The sense apparently follows this arrangement. The first part describes the state of affairs *before* the coming of the terrible winter and the second tells us what it would be after the great cold had come. The trans. of various scholars differ considerably especially in the second half. The first half may have been an earlier fragment describing the ancient “cradle-land of the Āryas”.

*aētayhā*<sup>2</sup>—6/3 f., एतस्यः. Refers to *dañhāuš*. Dar. takes it with *zimō* and probably reads *dañhūs* 1/1.

\* Wb. 408.

† Sel. XII.

‡ S.B.E., IV, p. 16, fn. 2.

¶ Wb. 209.

¶ Diet. p. 443.

\*\* Wb. 819.

*bəratō*—Reich. takes it as loc. inf.\*

*vāstrəm*—Barth. takes it (in this passage only) to refer to fodder†, but it may equally well be applied to food for men as well as for cattle.

*təm*—Sc. *vāstrəm*.

*āfš*—1/1 of *āp*, water.

*paurva*—Kan. says "first of all"; Dar. trans. "before"; Barth. trans. "in abundance".‡

*vazaidyāi*—Dat. inf. √*vaz* (वृज्). Reich. trans. "shall flow" and says that the inf. is used with the force of the imp.‖ Kan. trans. "for irrigating".

*vitaxti*—Melting. Cf. also Ven. VI. 38.

*abda-ca*—This word has been translated in three ways. Kan. says "clouds" (अब)‖ and, taking *sadayāt* from √*sad* (सद), to destroy,\*\* construes, "here, in the corporeal world, clouds shall cause destruction". Reich. trans. the word as "wonderful" and Dar. also trans. similarly: "a place wherein the footprint of a sheep may be seen will be a wonder in the world". The word *abda* does mean "wonderful" in two passages††, but the etymology is doubtful.‡‡ Barth. takes the word here as from *a-pada*‖ and trans. *unbetretbar* (where no foot can tread). He compares अपद in AV. where it is translated "no place to step upon".‡‡ Barth. thinks the trans. of Dar. to be due to a misreading of the Pah.

*sadayāt*—Caus. from √*sad*\*\*\* Shall appear.

*pasēuš anumayehe*—Of lowing cattle. Barth. and others take the words to mean "sheep". In Pah. *anūmōyē* means "sheep", the bleating animal; ††† but very likely this was a later specialisation of meaning. Kan. trans. "an animal of small size" (√*mā*, to measure). He takes *yaṭ . . . vaēnāite* as an independent sentence and trans., "here (people) shall see the footsteps of small animals".‡‡‡ This does not fit in at all with the context.

*vaēnāite*—3/1 subj. atm. The atm. giving a passive sense.

6. (25). *vareṃ*—From √*var*, वृ, to enclose, to conceal. The meaning is an enclosure, a place fenced in and kept apart.‖‖‖ Here it would mean the place of safety to which Yima has to lead the creatures who were to be saved from destruction. RV. also has the words वर and वरस् in the sense of "space".‡‡‡

*carətu-drājō*—A *carətu* in length. The Pah. com. explains this as

\* § 363. † Wb. 1414. ‡ Wb. 854 ff. ‖ § 703 and A.E., p. 140. ¶ Dict., p. 58. \*\* Ib., p. 521. †† Yt. XIX. 10 and Yt. V. 34 (*abdo-tema*). ‡‡ Barth., Wb. 96. ‖‖ Ib., loc. cit., *2a-bda* ¶ S.B.E., XLII, p. 167. \*\*\* Barth., Wb. 1559 f; Jack., A.G., § 685a. ††† S.B.E., XXXVII p. 50, fn. 3. The word is from √*mā*, to bleat; cf. RV. I. 164. 28. ‡‡‡ He adds, by way of explanation: "people shall see the footsteps of animals on the ground after the waters of the deluge have subsided". ‖‖‖ Barth., Wb. 1360 and 1363. ¶¶¶ Grass., Wb. 1217-18.



*asprās drahnāk*,\* i.e. the length of a racecourse. The length is further explained as equal to two *hāθra*, which latter is said to be equal to 1000 double steps, about one mile English.†

*caθruša*—Side of a square.

*hāθra*—Thither (Kan.); Barth. takes it merely to mean “and” or “also”.‡

*taoxma*—Seed. Pers. تخم (*tukhm*), pedigree.

*staoranām*—This word is used for large animals (camel, ox, horse and ass) as opposed to *pasu*, which is a small animal. Goth. *stiur*, Eng. *steer*, Pers. سَور (*sutor*), a war horse.||

*suxra*—Red or brilliant, 𐬯𐬀𐬎. Pers. سرخ (*surkh*), scarlet.

*saociñtām*—Blazing, burning with a brilliant flame.

*aiwi-χšōiθne* (𐬀𐬯𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬌)—Inf. √*si* with *aiwi* (𐬀𐬯𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬌), to dwell. For dwelling. The form *χšāēθni* (7/1) is found in Ven. III. 24,¶ used in the sense of “inhabitant” or “dweller”.

*gāvayanēm*—Lit. what is used for cattle. Hence “a stall” or “a stable”. Ven. XIV. 14 has *nmānēm gāva*°.

7. (26). *frataṭ-caya*—2/1 caus. imp. of √*tak* with *frā*, to flow.\*\* Kan. (Dict., p. 180) takes it from √*ci* with *frā* and trans. “cause to collect”. The insertion of the *t* is due to the peculiarity that the *c* is often written as *t-c* (or *tc* or *δc*).†† This peculiar spelling was probably due to the fact that the *c* often sounds like *š* ‡‡ and in order to get the original *c* sound a *t* has to be prefixed (cf. the German combination *tsch* and *dsch* for *c* and *j* sounds). The wrong division of the word as found in the mss. is due to a false impression that the *-taṭ* marks the ending of a word.|||| Probably the analogy of *urvaṭ-caya* (which occurs in Yt. XIII. 11, 22, 28 in the sense of “to nourish”) is also at work in this case.¶¶ The word *frataṭ-carəta*, a part. adj. is also found in several places.\*\*\*

*hāθrō-masayhēm*—One *hāθra* in length. Note that the water-supply is to extend along half the length of a side of the square *vara*.

*marəyā*—Meadows (Barth.); bazars (Kan.); birds (Dar.). Kan. (Dict., p. 409) distinguishes the fem. *əyā* from the *marəya* (m.), bird, 𐬨𐬀𐬎. He compares the former with Eng. *market*. Barth. sharply distinguishes *marəya*, bird, from this word, and compares Pers. مرغ (*margh*), a meadow.

*avastaya*—2/1 caus. imp. √*stā* with *ava*, to establish, to lay out.

*avi . . . aḡyamnēm* is probably a later interpolation in the nature of a comment.

\* Quoted by Barth., Wb. 582.

† S. B. E., IV, p. 16, fn. 5; see also Barth., Wb. 180: 3. The

word is used also for a measure of time.

‡ Wb. 1762.

¶ Ib., 1590-91.

¶¶ Ib., 189

\*\* Barth., Wb. 625f.

†† Reich., § 61.

So also, *j* is written as *dj*.

‡‡ This peculiarity is very

noticeable among the Parsi priests to-day.

|||| See Jack., A. G., § 81 and also note 2 thereon.

¶¶ See Kan., Dict., p. 180 and Barth., Wb. 1535.

\*\*\* Barth., Wb. 1012.

*avi* . . .  $\chi^v$ *airyeite* (v.l. *oyete*, Kan.)—3/1 pass. of  $\chi^v$ *ar* with *avi*, to eat.\*

*maṭ*—Here used in the sense of “always”. Cf. *maṭ saoci-buye* (Yas. LXII. 3), eternally blazing (fire).

*zairi-gaonəm*—See Yas. IX. 16 above, Sel. I.

*ajyamnəm*—See Yas. IX. 21 above, Sel. I.

This line *avi* . . . *ajyamnəm* has been trans. differently by Dar. and Kan. The former says (taking with the previous *pāda*), “there thou shalt settle birds, on the green that never fades, with food that never fails”. Kan. trans., “there shalt thou establish markets full of green-coloured (i.e. fresh) (fruits) and fresh food (i.e. food which cannot get decayed)”.

*nmānā* . . . *katəm-ca*—Barth. says “houses . . . room”, by the latter word he understands a “storeroom” or “cellar”†; Kan. also takes similarly. Dar. trans. “dwelling-places consisting of a house”. See *katayō*, Yas. IX. 22 (p. 41 above).

*fraskəmbəm* (𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬌)—Portico supported on pillars.‡ Dar. trans. “with a balcony”. Kan. merely says “with pillars”. Cf. 𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬌 which is probably a dialect variant of 𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬌.¶

*fravārəm* (𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬌)—With an enclosure (Barth.); ¶ Kan. says “with a long wall”. Dar. trans. “with a courtyard”.

*pairi-vārəm*—Dar. says “with a gallery”. With an enclosing wall (Barth.),\*\* also Kan.

8. (27). *yōi*<sup>9</sup>—Mas., because “the rel. agrees with the strongest gender” (Reich., § 604). The *yōi*<sup>26</sup> below is 1 3 m. instead of neu. probably owing to attraction of the previous *yōi*.

*sraēšta-ca*—Dar. explains that these are “the best specimens of mankind, to be the origin of the more perfect races of the latter days”.††

*sarədanəm*—Kind, sort. The word also occurs in O. Pers. (Beh. IV) as *θard*.

9. (28). *hubaoiḍitəma*—The sweetest smelling. The Pah. com. adds by way of explanation, “the highest of size, like the cypress and the plane tree; the sweetest of odour, like the rose and the jessamine”.‡‡

$\chi^v$ *arədanəm*—Lit. that which could be eaten, hence food in general. Here it seems to be used in the sense of vegetable food (fruits and grains) as opposed to animal food. The word is chiefly used for the food of human beings.¶¶ Dar. says “fruit” relying on the Pah. com. which he quotes: ¶¶ “the best of savour, like the date; the sweetest of odour, like the citron”.

$\chi^v$ *arəzišta-ca*—The most tasty (Barth.)\*\*\*; the best of savour (Dar.) fittest to be eaten (Kan.).

\* Barth., Wb. 1866. † Ib. 432. ‡ Ib. 1062. ¶ Grass., Wb. 1585. ¶¶ Wb. 990.

\*\* Ib. 806. †† S.B.E., IV, p. 17, fn. 1. ‡‡ Quoted by Dar., loc. cit., fn. 2. ¶¶ Barth., Wb. 1866f. ¶¶ Loc. cit., fn. 3. \*\*\* Wb. 1874.

*tē*—2/3n., referring to the various *taoxma*, of human beings and animals, mentioned above, hence neu. (Reich., § 604).

*miθwaire*—2, 2 adj. n. In pairs.

*ajyamnəm*—2/1 n. The varied numbers used here are rather confusing but the sense is quite clear, the construction being *ad sensum*. Here the sg. implies *each pair*. The meaning here is “safe from harm”. See Yas. IX. 4.

*varəfšva*—7/3, of *vara* with postposition *-ā*. Barth. regards this word as corrupt. He thinks that the confusion is due to the *varəfšva* in verse 30 below, which is a different word.\* The plu. is rather unexpected probably due to the plu. *narō*.

10. (29). In this verse Kan. takes all the words in a moral sense, but Dar. and others give to most of them a physical meaning. This is a very significant passage, as it shows the eugenic considerations which guided Yima in the choice of the human beings whom he had to take into his *vara*. As Dar. says he chose only “the best specimens of mankind, to be the origin of the more perfect races of the latter days . . . in order that the new mankind may be exempt from all moral and physical deformities”.†

*frakavō*—Pride (Kan.); humpbacked (Dar.); with a hump on the chest (Barth.). Barth. thinks the word *kava* (n.) means a hump and he compares the Skt. कवच but with a query mark.‡ Kan. says that the meaning is uncertain.¶ The word also occurs in Yt. V. 92-93 where some of the other words of this passage also occur. There too the meaning is evidently some defect in a human being but whether physical or moral is not very clear.¶ Skt. कव means niggardly or stingy, from √कृ.\*\*

*apakavō*—Kan. trans. “idleness” but adds in a parenthesis “back-biting” (speaking ill behind another’s back), the latter certainly is a better sense apparently from √कु with अप. Dar. says “bulged forward”. Barth. says, “having a hump on the back”. This word also occurs in Yt. V. 92-93.

*apāyavo* (अप.)—Impurity or unrighteousness (अपवित्राई) (Kan.); impotent (Dar.). Barth. does not trans. the word but merely says that it is the name of some defect or illness and for etymology he marks a query.†† Reich. (A.R., p. 215) gives the derivation as from *apa* + “*āyava* and trans. “castrated”. Kan. in his Dict. (p. 35) gives other meanings from other scholars as well: stupidity (Haug); enmity (Har.); quarrel or hatred (Justi).

*harədiš* (हर.)—Tyranny (Kan.); lunatic (Dar.); Barth. supports the latter and thinks that the name *Harədāspa* (Yt. XIII. 117) may mean “he who possesses a refractory or stubborn horse”.‡‡

\* Wb. 1363f., note 2; see p. 239 below. † S.B.E., IV, p. 17, fn. 1 and 5. ‡ Wb. 442; but see Grass., Wb. 318. ¶ Dict., p. 340. ¶ It may be noted that in the Yt. Kan. trans. like Dar. (Yt. b. M., pp. 35-36). \*\* Grass., Wb. 318. †† Wb. 80. ‡‡ Ib. 1789-90.

*driwiš*—Poverty or misery (Kan.); malicious person (Dar.); mole or birth-mark (Barth.).\* A daēva of this name is mentioned in Ven. XIX. 43, where a famous list of the important lieutenants of Anrō-Mainyuš is given.

*daiwiš*—Deception (Kan.); he evidently connects it with  $\sqrt{daw}$ , दम्; cf. *davāiθyā*, Yas. IX. 18. (p. 37 above). Dar. says “liar”. Barth. thinks it to be the name of a wasting disease.† This name is also in the daēva-list mentioned above.

*kasviš*—Meanness (Kan.); spiteful (Dar.). Barth. here also says that it is the name of a defect or disease.‡ The word occurs again in the list of daēvas and also in Yt. V. 92-93.||

*vīzbārīš* (āp.)—Lit. crookedness, dishonesty (Kan.); from  $\sqrt{zbar}$  (cf. *zbarataēibyō*, Yas. IX. 29, p. 47 above). Jealous (Dar.); Barth. takes it in the sense of crookedness of the body.¶

*vīmūtō-dantānō*—Evil-speaking (Kan.); he adds the parenthetical explanation that lit. it means “possessing crooked teeth”. Barth. takes it lit., and Dar. trans. “possessing decayed teeth”. The word also occurs in Yt. V. 92-93.

*paēsō*—Leprous. Pers. پيس (pis), leprosy, Skt. पित्त.

*vītarōto-tanuš*—Spread over the body (Kan.); but this trans. is in Yt. V. 92-93 where the whole phrase, *māpaēsō . . . tanuš*, occurs. In this passage he trans. “may there not be a body wasted away to below the usual size”, without making it clear how he got at this trans. Dar. trans. “(a leper) to be pent up”; and quotes Herodotus (I. 138) to point out that lepers lived segregated outside the towns in ancient Persia.\*\* Barth. trans. similarly, “one whose body must be isolated”.††

*māda*—Not here (Kan.); he explains this as *mā* + *āda*. Barth. takes *āda* as merely an asseverative particle and trans. as an emphatic “not indeed”.‡‡ *mācim* also is found (ved. माकि). Note that in verse 37 the words are *nōiē* and *naēda-cim*.

*daṣṣtanāṃ*—Characteristics or qualities (Kan.); brands (i.e. marks), (Dar.); signs or outward symbols (Barth.).|| Elsewhere, where the word occurs, the Skt. trans. has चिह्नम्.

*mašyāiš*—Kan. following Westergaard¶¶ reads *mašyāis* and trans. “connected with death” (i.e. leading to death). But he gives the reading *mašyāiš* in a fn. Geld. has no mention of the v.l. adopted by Kan.

11. (30). *fratēməm daiṣhēuš*—The syntax of the cases in this verse is confused. Here 2/1 is used for 7/1. In the first portion of that place (the *vara*). Kan. takes *daiṣhu* here in the lit. sense of “country” and adds a long footnote\*\*\* to explain why the numbers in each of the three divisions

\* Wb., 778. † Ib., 680. ‡ Ib., 461. || In the latter place is reading is *makašyāis*, in one word. ¶ Wb. 1472. \*\* S.B.E., IV, 17, fn. 4. †† Wb 1441. ‡‡ Ib. 1168. ||| Ib. 676 f. ¶¶ Dict., p. 401. \*\*\* P. 64 of his trans.

(the first, the middle and the last) should have been regularly diminishing. He thinks that this refers to Yima's moving southwards at regular intervals during his rule:\* this would naturally leave the earliest portion of his land the most thickly populated. All this is rather far-fetched because clearly the *vara* is meant here. Dar. trans. "in the largest part of the place". Barth. calls this "the qualitative first".†

*parəθwō*—2/3 m. or f. Passages or roads. Dar. trans. "streets". *paratu* is the crude form. The word also means a bridge (cf. Yas. XIX. 6, p. 178. above).

*madəmō*—Bad syntax again, this ought to have been 7 1. This refers to the part of the *vara* second both in size and position.

*nitəmō*—The smallest; so all take it. I would like to take it as "the nethermost". All the three divisions were underground and one above the other; the smallest (as judged by the number of people it would contain) being also the lowest. There are three reasons for this suggestion: (1) Kan. consistently trans. *vara* as a cave (गुफा), and this is the ancient tradition Bun. XXXII. 5; (2) the word *kata* in verse 7 implies a dug-out chamber (kan. कत); (3) the mention of some sort of internal lighting arrangement also seems to show that ordinary daylight was excluded‡ (this verse and verse 40). Dar. thinks the three-fold division corresponded to the three castes.||

*āwi* . . . *varəšva*—2/1 imp. of *varəp* with *āwi*, to seal with a signet (ring). Skt. वरप is cognate. Kan. takes this word as 7 3 of *vara* (irregularly instead of *varəšva*).

*tē* refers to the three parts of the *Vara*.

*suwrya*—3/1. Seal (ring) (Dar.); this is the traditional meaning. The emblems of Yima's sovereign power, which were bestowed upon him by Ahura Mazda, were the seal and the sword verse 6 of this chapter (also verse 10). These are also mentioned by Firdausi.¶ Kan. unaccountably takes it here to be "a weapon". In his Dict. (pp. 528 f) he says that this weapon is the plough.\*\* Barth. for reasons not very clear takes the word to mean "an arrow" and he compares the word *surb*, arrow, in the *Shighnī* dialect of the Pamirs.††

*api-marəza*—Provide with, equip with. It governs two obj. *varam* and *dvaram*.

*dvaram*—द्वारम्. These doors are meant for going in and out.

*raocanam*—Light-giving (Barth.).‡‡ Kan. and Dar. trans. "window", lit. "an aperture for light" (cf. Urdu *roshandān*, skylight). Barth., however, says that in Ven. VII. 14 the word means "window", and he admits

\* Ven. II. 10, 14 and 18; see also the introductory note to this selection. † Wb. 979. ‡ Kan. however trans. quite differently in this verse; see notes below (see also S.B.E., IV, p. 20, fn. 1).  
 § S.B.E., IV, p. 18, fn. 1. ¶ Quoted by Dar., S.B.E., IV, p. 12, fn. 2. \*\* Yima is credited with having introduced agriculture into Irān. †† Wb. 1583. ‡‡ Wb. 766 and 1489.

that this is the traditional sense. But his trans. "light-giving" (if it implies admitting day-light) leaves the following words rather meaningless.

$\chi^{\text{h}}\text{ārao}\chi\text{ṣṇam}$  etc.—Cf. Yas. LVII. 21 (p. 77 above).

Kan. trans. the words,  $\text{aiwi}^{26}\text{-ca}^{26}$  to the end, thus: "Within thy enclosures, around each one, on the inner side construct doors and windows with thy golden weapon such that natural light may enter". But the syntax does not support this version.

12. (31).  $\text{kuṭa tē}$ —Kan. takes  $tē$  as  $\text{tava}$  and trans. "thy (Ahura's) vara". Barth. takes  $tē$  here as merely a strengthening particle.

$yā$ —3 1. About which. Reich. calls this "the instrumental of cause" (§ 451).

$\text{aiṣṭhā zəmō}$ —6 1 used for 2 1. This is a partitive gen. used objectively.\*

$\text{pāsnābya}$ —3 2. Heels, Skt. पाणि. This word is from  $\sqrt{\text{spar}}$ , (स्पर्) (see below), to kick with the foot; the initial  $s$  was lost very early, probably before the separation of the various I.-E. races.†

$\text{vispara}$ —Crush. From  $\sqrt{\text{spar}}$  with  $vī$ . Kan. trans. "turn about the soil with thy heels".

$\text{viṣadā}$ —From  $\sqrt{\text{xad}}$ , to dig. Dar. and Barth. trans. "knead" but Kan. has "dig".

$\text{mānayeṇ ahe yaṭa}$ —Barth. says the phrase means "just like".‡ A variant phrase is  $\text{mānayeṇ bā yaṭā}$ . Barth. explains this phrase as meaning lit. "they (people) might indeed think that", taking  $ahe$  in a mildly emphatic sense, "think of this". Kan. (Dict. p. 413) compares it with Pers. مانیدن ( $mānidan$ ) or مانسین ( $mānistān$ ) to resemble and says that the phrase lit. means "just as if they made a comparison of it"||. Kan. observes that  $\text{mānayeṇ}$  (3'3 impf. caus. par.) is often used by itself in an adverbial sense, "just as", the Pers. ماند ( $mānand$ ) is used exactly similarly.

$nū$ —A particle used after the first word in a clause.¶

$\chi\text{ṣivisti}$  (v.l.  $\chi\text{ṣvi}^{\text{v}}$ , Barth.)—Kan. trans. "fit for cultivation", but the word is not found in his Dict. Barth. takes it as 7/1 (written thus instead  $\chi\text{ṣusti}^{**}$ ) of  $\chi\text{ṣusta}$ , which means wetted or mixed with water. The root is  $\sqrt{\text{xṣud}}$ , to flow from which are derived the words  $\chi\text{ṣaodah}$  (n.), river, Skt. क्षौदः, and  $\chi\text{ṣudra}$ , fluidity or semen.

$\text{zəmē}$ —7, 1. Pronounced sometimes  $\text{zmē}$ ; †† the words  $\chi\text{ṣusta} + \text{zəm-}$  in 7/1 give the doubtful word  $\text{šutasme}$  (*Frahang-i Oīm*, 5) through  $\sqrt{\text{xṣustasme}}$ .

$\text{viṣavayeṇte}$ —3'3 pres. of  $\sqrt{\text{ḍyav}}$  ( $\text{ṣav}$ ) with  $vī$ , to knead.‡‡ Kan. takes it to mean "extend in breadth" from  $\sqrt{\text{xu}}$  with  $vī$ .||

\* Reich, § 497.  
† Barth., Wb. 1089.

† Grass, Wb. 808.  
\*\* Reich, § 33. 8.

‡ Wb. 1123.  
†† Ib. § 364, fn. 2 (p. 185).

‡‡ Taking the verb as causal.  
|| Barth., Wb. 1716.

|| Dict., p. 559.

Kan. trans. the last phrase *mānayan*<sup>29</sup> etc. thus: "Just as at present people increase the extent of cultivable land".

On this verse Dar. notes that the Shah. mentions how Jamshid taught the spirits under him how to knead clay "by mixing the earth with water".\* Reich. thinks that the *vara* is to be constructed "after the world becomes an ocean by the flood",† but there is no reason to think thus.

19. (38). *hō*<sup>27</sup>—Geld. notes v.l. in only two mss., in one *hē* and in the other *tō hō*, the *tō* being a later addition. But for *hō*<sup>33</sup> there is no v.l. noted in Geld. The syntax is wrong in both cases.

*varəfšva*—Geld. notes that one ms. "has appended *† secunda manu* to *varəfšva*" and another ms. has *vareṃšva* with the *m* corrected to a *f*.

20. (39). *cayō*—1/3 f. inter. pron.

*yō*<sup>18</sup>—Wrong gender and number, because *raocā*<sup>2</sup> is f. plu.

*varəfšva*—See ~~above~~ verse 28. The plural refers to the three parts of *vara*.

*yō*<sup>19</sup>—Wrong number.

21. (40). *χ<sup>u</sup>adāta*—Natural, lit. self-created. The Pah. trans. says that this refers to the eternal lights of the heavens, which are mentioned below.

*stidāta*—Artificial, lit. created in (or by) the world; hence the non-eternal artificial lights are meant. See note on *ā-stiś*, Yas. LX. 1 (p. 111 above).

*hakərət*—Once, चकत्.

*irixtahe*—6/3 n. The word is used for the rising of heavenly bodies (Kan.); Barth. however says it means "setting" of heavenly bodies.‡

*sadaya*—7/1f. Setting of heavenly bodies (Kan.); Barth. says "rising" (Wb. 1557). The latter derives it from *√sand*, to appear.

*vaēnaite*—Sg. for plu., perhaps each individually is meant. The atm. has here the passive sense—"are seen".

*taē-ca . . . yāra*—Dar. reads these words with this verse (40) where they really belong. Kan. and Barth. (also Reich.) follow Geld. and read them in 41.

*taē-ca*—1/3 m. Who these are is difficult to say, probably the people in the *vara*.

*ayara*—See note on *ayān-ca* in Yas. LVII. 17 (p. 74 above).

*yāra*—Year. The Iranian year was 12 months of 30 days each and 5 extra days at the end to make up the total.|| This passage is perfectly plain about the Polar home of the ancient Iranians. In fact nothing could be more explicit than the words here and this is the only possible explanation that would fit. It seems that Dar. had some inkling of the true signi-

\* S. B. E., IV, p. 18, fn. 2.

† A. R., p. 140; italics mine.

‡ Wb. 1529.

|| See Int. In

order to be accurate as regards the solar year one extra month was intercalated, every 120 years.

fiance of this passage, for he says by way of comment "as there is no daily revolution of the sun".\* Kan. is clearly puzzled over it and beyond repeating the statement gives no clearer sense.†

22. (41.) *cahwarasatəm*—2/1. Accusative denoting extent of time.‡

*aiwigāmanām*—The word means orig. winter and hence a year. Cf. Pers. *hangām* (hangām), time.

*nərəbya*—An एकशेषद्वंद्व.

*miθwana*—1/2. Twins, मिथुन.

*sraēšta gaya*—3/1; cognate instrumental, see Reich. § 452.

*jvainti*—जीवन्ति.

Dar. has a long quotation from the *Mainyō-i-Khard* which says that in those days the life of a human being was 300 years and that of cattle 150 years.

23. (42.) *avaθa*—There, in that place (Barth., Wb. 172).

*viš Karšipta*—Kan. takes it as one noun *Viškaršipta* and says that there was a prophet of that name in the *vara*.¶ In the Pah. commentary on Vis. I. 1 he is called the Ratu of all birds. In Bun., XIX. 16 it is said that "it knew how to speak words, and brought the religion to the enclosure which Yim made, and circulated it; there they utter the Avesta in the language of birds".\*\* In Bun., XXIV. 11 it is said to be the chief of the birds;†† Barth. derives the name from I.-E. \**kṛši* + *pter* and thinks it means "quickflier".‡‡ See Modi, pp. 52f.

24. (43.) *Urvataṭ-nara*—Lit. "friend of mankind" (?) He was the third (and youngest) son of Z. He was the chief of the agriculturists and was the head of the *vara* of Yima. Bun., XXXII, 5 says of him, "Aūrvataṭ nar was an agriculturist, and the chief of the enclosure formed by Yim which is below the earth".|| Dar. has got the following note:¶¶ "Urvataṭnara, as a husbandman, was chosen to be the *ahu* or temporal Lord of the *vara*, on account of the *vara* being underground. Z., as a heavenly priest, was, by right, the *ratu* or Spiritual Lord in Airyena Vaēja, where he founded the Religion by a sacrifice".

\* S.B.E., IV, p. 20, ftn. 2. † Ven., p. 66, ftn. ‡ Reich. § 439. ¶ S.B.E., IV, p. 20, ftn. 3. ¶¶ Ven., v. 67, ftn. \*\* S.B.E., V, p. 70 †† Ibid., p. 89. ‡‡ Wb. 435. || Ibid., p. 112. ¶¶ S.B.E., IV, p. 21, ftn. 1.